

تم تحميل الملف بواسطة : بوت مكتبتى التعليمية



انقر هنا للوصول إلى بوت مكتبتى التعليمية



بوت مكتبتى التعليمية : عبارة عن مكتبة إلكترونية تعليمية شاملة لغالبية ملفات المراحل الدراسية على تطبيق **تيليجرام** – يمكن الوصول لها عن طريق الرابط :

https://t.me/Science_2022bot

2025

اللغة الانكليزية

English

القسم العلمي Scientific section



Made by
Pixel educational team

هام جداً: يرجى القراءة قبل استعمال الكتاب

- هذه النوبة - ومع شموليتها - لا تعد بديلاً عن الكتاب الرسمي المقدم من وزارة التربية السورية وإنّما هي عرض للمعلومات بشكل مبسّط لمساعدة الطالب على فهم المنهاج بشكل أفضل. وعليه فإنّ المصدر الأساسي للدراسة هو كتاب اللغة الانكليزية Emar المقدّم من وزارة التربية السورية ونحن غير مسؤولين عن عدم الالتزام بمصدر الدراسة الأساسي, شاكرين حسن تفهمكم.
- هذه النوبة شاملة لجميع الأفكار الموجودة ضمن الكتاب وفيها الأفكار الهامة وغير الهامة التي قد ترد ضمن الامتحان لذلك يمكنك الاطمئنان أثناء الدراسة منها أن جميع الأفكار كاملة بإذن الله.
- تعود ملكية هذا العمل لكتابه الأساسيين من أعضاء فريق بكسل التعليمي وليس لأي جهة أخرى من أفراد أو فرق أو مكاتب أو مطابع أو أي كيان آخر وهو حصيلة ساعات من العمل الجاد من تجميع وكتابة وتنسيق وتدقيق للمعلومات حتى وصلت إلى هيئتها الحالية، لذلك يُمنع منعاً باتاً بيعه أو تداوله أو طباعته أو تصويره أو مسحه أو نسخه لأي غرض من الأغراض التجارية، ويسمح للطالب طباعة الكتاب للاستخدام الشخصي، وفي حال مخالفة الشروط السابقة يحق لنا كجهة مالكة لهذا العمل اتخاذ الإجراءات القانونية التي نراها مناسبة بحق المخالف. ونذكر بيوم الحساب عند الله تعالى لكل من استباح سرقة هذا العمل واستخدامه لأغراض تجارية من دون إذن المحررين الأساسيين للكتاب.
- وجب التنويه أن كلّ ما كُتب في هذا الكتاب هو من عمل الفريق فقط وتدقيق وإشراف المسؤول عن المادة المهندس حسن عواطه، فعند ورود أي خطأ يُرجى التواصل مع الفريق دوناً عن أي أحد.
- نحن أعضاء فريق بكسل لسنا إلا إخوة لكم، لسنا أساتذة ولا نريد التعدي على هذه المهنة الشريفة، وإنما طلابٌ مثلكم تدارسنا معكم أبحاث المادة بحكم المهارات التي وهبنا الله إياها في هذا المجال، لذلك فلتعلم أننا بشراً نصيب ونخطئ، فإن صادفت أي معلومة تظن أنها مغلوطة لا تتردد بالتواصل معنا على حساباتنا على التلغرام.
- المصادر المُستخدمة في كتابة النوبة موجودة في آخر الكتاب لمن يُحب أن يطلع عليها
- قد توجد بعض الملاحظات التي تتعارض بشكل مباشر أو غير مباشر مع مراجع اللغة العريقة ولكن كتبناها لأنها واردة بهذا الشكل في منهاجنا، أي: قد يوجد حالات لم نعتدها أو اعتبرناها خاطئة لأن كتاب Emar اعتبرها كذلك والعكس.

تعليمات هامة:

1. إذا كنت تستخدم النسخة الورقية فيمكنك تصوير جميع رموز الـ QR الموجودة بشكل طبيعي أما إذا كنت تستخدم النسخة الالكترونية فيمكنك الضغط على رمز الـ QR للانتقال للرابط المُراد.
2. لا تنسى تفقد ملف التصويبات الموجود في القناة قد يتم تحديثه وإضافة تعديلات على محتوى النوبة وتصحيح الأخطاء (إن وُجدت)
3. تابع قناتنا على التلغرام (@Pixel_English) ليصلك كل جديد من: نكشات - تصويبات - تدريبات ونماذج - طرق حل - أشياء هامة تخص الامتحان - ملفات - فقرات تفاعلية
4. يُنصح بمشاهدة الشرح على اليوتيوب للتأكد بأنك محيط بجميع الأفكار

Page number	Aspect	Title	Unit
1	English Basics	The components of the sentences	Unit 0 Basic skills
3	English Basics	The Pronouns	
4	English Basics	The Countable & The Uncountable nouns	
7	English Basics	The Auxiliaries	
9	English Basics	The Gerund (ing)	
11	English Basics	The articles	
13	English Basics	The Demonstratives	
14	English Basics	Some vs Any	
15	English Basics	The Prepositions	
18	English Basics	The Comparative & The Superlative	
19	English Basics	The Stative verbs	
21	English Basics	Quantifiers	
23	English Basics	The Capital letter	
24	English Basics	Question Making	

الكورس الامتحاني على اليوتيوب		
Aspect	Title	QR
Question Making	كيف تتعامل مع سؤال "اختر السؤال الصحيح أو اصنع سؤال"	
Find the mistake	كيف تتعامل مع سؤال "اختر الجملة الصحيحة"	
Order the sentences	كيف تتعامل مع سؤال "ترتيب الجمل (بديل الموضوع)"	
Grammar	كيف تتعامل مع أسئلة القواعد	

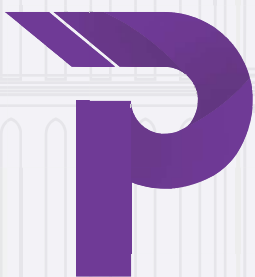
Page number	Aspect	Title	Unit		
30	Reading Student book	Future career	Unit 1 Life choices	Module 1: Learning for Life	
33	Reading Work book	A learned lesson is a good lesson			
36 - 37	Vocabulary	Word family & Phrasal verbs			
37	Every day English	Giving advice			
36	Pronunciation	Homophones			
40 ➔ 47	Grammar	Present tenses			
52	Reading Student book	Stop wishing, start doing	Unit 2 Success		
56	Reading Work book	Famous failure who refused to give up			
60	Vocabulary	Success idioms			
61	Every day English	Congratulations and expressing sympathy			
60	Pronunciation	ed- pronunciation			
64 ➔ 72	Grammar	Past tenses			
76	Reading Student book	History of medicine	Unit 3 Medicine	Module 2: Science	
81	Reading Work book	Medical inventions			
86	Vocabulary	Medical idioms			
87	Every day English	Asking for information			
87	Pronunciation	Empathic stress			
93	Grammar	Passive voice			
99	Reading Student book	History of engineering	Unit 4 Engineering		
103	Reading Work book	Medical technology engineering			
109	Vocabulary	Phrasal verbs & Prepositions of movement			
108	Every day English	Hesitation and uncertainty			
108	Pronunciation	Elision			
112	Grammar	Causative			
116	Review 1				
124	Reading Student book	Civil rights	Unit 5 Civil rights	Module 3: Politics	
128	Reading Work book	The right to education			
132	Vocabulary	Law idioms			
134	Every day English	Complaints and apology			
133	Pronunciation	Voiced and Voiceless consonants			
137	Grammar	Relative clauses			
143	Reading Student book	History of the United Nations	Unit 6 United nations		
147	Reading Work book	UNICEF			
151	Vocabulary	Prefixes			
152	Every day English	Modesty			
152	Pronunciation	Word stress with different syllables			
155	Grammar	Future forms			

Module 4: Biology		
Microorganism	Unit 7	162 Reading Student book Viruses and Bacteria
		166 Reading Work book Antibiotics
		180 Vocabulary Verb-noun collocations
		180 Every day English On the phone terms
		171 Pronunciation Silent letters
		175 Grammar Conditional sentences
Facts about human body	Unit 8	181 Reading Student book Human body
		185 Reading Work book How does the immune system work?
		189 Vocabulary Body idioms
		189 Every day English Asking for help
		190 Pronunciation Syllable stress
		193 Grammar Expressing wishes
		197 Review 2
Citizenship	Unit 9	205 Reading Student book Citizenship
		Deleted Reading Work book Syrian nationality law
		209 - 210 Vocabulary Adjectives followed by prepositions
		210 Every day English Accepting and declining offers
		211 Pronunciation Homographs
		218 Grammar Paired conjunctions
Culture shock	Unit 10	223 Reading Student book Culture shock
		226 Reading Work book Diary of Diana
		229 Vocabulary Idioms around the world
		229 Every day English Expressing surprise
		230 Pronunciation Question intonations
		236 Grammar Modals
Artificial Intelligence	Unit 11	243 Reading Student book Artificial Intelligence
		247 Reading Work book Robots
		251 - 252 Vocabulary Common verbs in science and technology
		253 Every day English Being tactful
		253 Pronunciation Strong and weak forms of auxiliary verbs
		257 Grammar Reported speech
Digital literacy	Unit 12	264 Reading Student book E-government
		269 Reading Work book E-learning
		274 Vocabulary Phrasal verbs
		274 Every day English Asking for giving and refusing permission
		275 Pronunciation Sound linking
		280 Grammar Inversion
		285 Review 3
Module 5: Culture		
Module 6: Technology		



Unit number

English Basics



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



Sentences components

تتكون الجمل في اللغة الانكليزية من ثلاثة مكونات أساسية : الفعل, الفاعل, التتمة :

- الفعل (Verb) : هو المكون الأساسي للجمل ولا يمكن أن ترى جملة في اللغة الانكليزية بدون فعل و أصغر جملة يمكن أن تتكون من فعل فقط

- الفاعل (Subject) : هو المؤثر, أي الذي يقوم بالفعل.

التتمة (Complement) : هي كل ما تبقى من تفاصيل في الجملة (وتضم المفعول به)

Subject

Proper nouns	People	أشخاص	أسماء العلم
	Countries	بلاد	
	Cities	مدن	
	languages	لغات	
	Months	الأشهر	
	Days	الأيام	
Other nouns	Places	أماكن	الأسماء الأخرى
	Countable nouns	معدود	
	Uncountable nouns	غير معدود	
Subjective pronouns	I - he - she - it - we - you - they		ضمائر الفاعل
Demonstratives	This	مفرد قريب	ضمائر الإشارة
	That	مفرد بعيد	
	Those	جمع بعيد	
	These	جمع قريب	

Verb

Main verbs	He played basketball.	الأفعال الأساسية
	He eats his meal daily.	
	She is smart.	
Auxiliary verbs	He is playing basketball.	الأفعال المساعدة
	He has eaten his meal.	
	She will open the door.	



Complement

Object المفعول به	Nouns الأسماء	ذكرت سابقاً
	Adjective pronouns ضمائر المفعول به	me - him - hir - it - us - you - them
	Prepositions احرف الجر	in - on - at - of
	Demonstratives ضمائر الإشارة	ذكرت سابقاً
Adjectives الصفات	Smart - Beautiful - amazing - obvious - clear - real - exciting	راجع درس الاشتاقات :  اضغط / امسح

انتبه : الجدول السابق يمكن أن يكون غير دقيق من الناحية العلمية (تصنيفات أقسام الجدول وليس المحتوى) ولكن تم تقسيم الجدول بهذه الطريقة لتسهيل حفظ الفكرة و ابقاء الأمور مبسطة, و أنت كطالب ان شاء الله لن تحتاج الى أكثر من هذه التفصيلات خلال دراستك في البكالوريا.



رابط شرح الدرس



Pronouns

Subjective pronouns	Adjective pronouns	Possessive Adjective	Possessive pronouns	Reflexive pronouns
ضمائر الفاعل	ضمائر المفعول به	صفات الملكية	ضمائر الملكية	الضمائر العكسية
I	me	my	mine	myself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	its	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	- Yourself - Yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves
- محل الفاعل - يأتي بعدها فعل	- محل المفعول به - تأتي بعد الفعل	- تدل على ملكية اسم ذكر بعدها - تأتي قبل الاسم المملوك	- تدل على ملكية اسم ذكر قبلها - تأتي بعد الاسم المملوك	- تستخدم عند تطابق الفاعل مع المفعول به لنفس الفعل - تأتي بعد الفعل



رابط شرح الدرس



Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns

Singular	Plural
تحتاج أداة قبلها	نضيف لها s ولا تحتاج أداة قبلها
The book / that cup / some friend / a story	Books / cups

Note

• مع النهايات (o-ch-sh-ss-s-x) نضيف es :

A class → classes

• مع النهاية (y قبلها حرف ساكن) نحذف الـ y و نضيف ies :

A lady → Ladies

• مع النهاية (y قبلها حرف صوتي) نضيف s :

A play → Plays

أهم الكلمات التي جمعها شاذ:

Man → Men

Child → Children

Woman → Women

Tooth → Teeth

Leaf → Leaves

Foot → Feet

Mouse → Mice

Person → People



Uncountable nouns

● لا يمكن جمعها

● لا يمكن إضافة a / an قبلها

● تُعامل معاملة المفرد

EX: A lot of food / too much money / useful information

– يُمكن أن تجعل هذه الأسماء معدودة عن طريق استخدام التراكيب:

a piece of	a bit of	an item of	مفرد
pieces of	bits of	items of	جمع

EX: A piece of advice **is** enough.

EX: Bits of furniture **are** being moved away.

تراكيب ثابتة لا تتغير:

A glass / bottle of water

A cup of tea

A piece of paper

A bowl of soup

A jar of honey

A piece of information

A traffic jam

A loaf of bread

A slice of cheese

A piece of wood



أهم الأسماء غير المعدودة

أشور عامة	Danger - Failure - Hair - Homework - Money - News - Perfume - Pollution - Soap - Traffic
الطقس	Rain - Snow - Thunder - Weather
أطعمة و مشروبات	Bread - Butter - Chocolate - Coffee - Flour - Food - Fruit - Honey - Milk - Oil - Salt - Soup - Sugar - Tea
معدات و أغراض	Equipment - Furniture - Luggage
مفاهيم و أفكار	Advice - Confidence - Education - Energy - Evidence - Help - Information - Knowledge - Laughter - Motivation - Nature - Peace - Progress - Space - Time

Plurals-only nouns

● هي أسماء تأتي دائماً في حالة الجمع ولا يمكن استخدامها بالمفرد :

trousers - jeans - scissors - glasses



رابط شرح الدرس



Auxiliaries

Primary auxiliary verbs

	Verb to be	Verb to do	Verb to have
V ₁	am - is - are	do - does	have - has
V ₂	was - were	did	had

Modal auxiliary verbs

Basic modals	Phrasal modals
can - could shall - should will - would may - might must	have to - has to - had to ought to
بعدهما V ₀ دائماً	

Note

ملاحظة: الـ **phrasal modals** تعامل معاملة الأفعال الأساسية عند السؤال والنفي.

Ex: You **have to** go to school early.

Negative: You **don't have to** go to school early.

Question: **Do** you **have to** go to school early?



بعض استخدامات الأفعال المساعدة

الاحتمال	It may rain tomorrow.
الإمكانية	I can swim.
النصيحة	You should study hard.
الاعتياد	He used to play football back then.
	He is used to playing football back then.
الالزام	You must obey your parents.

ملاحظة : الفعلين **Could** و **Would** مع أنهما في صيغة الماضي, قد يدلان أيضاً على المستقبل في الجمل الشرطية أو عند طلب شيء معين أو تقديم اقتراح أو عرض بشكل مؤدب.

- We **could** try that new restaurant tomorrow.
- If I had more time, I **could** learn to play the piano.
- If I won the lottery, I **would** travel the world.
- **Would** you like some coffee?
- I **would** like a coffee please.



رابط شرح الدرس



The Gerund (ing)

لدينا ثلاث حالات أساسية للكلمات التي نهايتها **ing** في اللغة الانكليزية

Continuity

I am studying English.	1 - حاضر مستمر:
He was playing football.	2 - ماضي مستمر:
She has been doing the dishes.	3 - حاضر تام مستمر:
She had been doing the dishes.	4 - ماضي تام مستمر:
They will be doing the dishes.	4 - مستقبل مستمر:
• تأتي كفعل يستمر في فترة معينة • يأتي قبلها فعل كون (be) بشتي تصريفاته	

Gerund

Gerund means: **Verb + ing = Noun**

Studying improves your skills.	1 - عندما تأتي كفاعل (أي قبل الفعل):
He likes playing football.	2 - عندما يأتي كمفعول به (أي بعد الفعل):
• يأتي كاسم قبل الفعل فوراً أو بعده • لا يوجد قبلها فعل كون (be)	



Adjective

This book is amaz**ing**.

He is an interest**ing** person.

• تأتي كصفة

• قد يأتي قبلها فعل كون (be) لكن ليس كفعل مساعد



رابط شرح الدرس



The articles

The

مثال عليه	الاستخدام
The boy who was sitting next to me left.	تستخدم قبل الاسم المحدد أو المعروف من قِبل المتحدث.
I ate an apple; the apple was delicious.	عند ذكر الشيء نفسه للمرة الثانية.
The theory of relativity hasn't been proved yet.	تستخدم عند الحديث عن شيء مميز أو معروف بين الناس (لا يوجد منه اثنين)

Note

تستخدم **The** مع الأسماء التي تبدأ بحرف صوتي والتي لا تبدأ بحرف صوتي.
تستخدم **The** مع المفرد المعرف والجمع.

Note

في بعض الجمل نستغني عن الـ **The** إذا كنا نتحدث بالمجمل، مثل:

1 – الأماكن: at work / at school / at home

2 – المواصلات مع **By**: by bus / by car / by plane

3 – التعابير الزمنية: at noon / at night car / at dawn



A / AN

مثال عليه	الاستخدام
We are looking for an apartment.	تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد النكرة.
I own two animals, a cat and a dog.	عند التحدث عن واحد من مجموعة.
I saw a man, the man was handsome.	عند ذكر شيء معين لأول مرة.

Note

تستخدم **an** مع الأسماء التي تبدأ بحرف صوتي.
وتستخدم **a** مع الأسماء التي لا تبدأ بحرف صوتي.
إلا مع الحرف **u** فنستخدم معه **a** عندما يُلفظ (يو) مثل كلمة **unique** ونستخدم معه **an** في بقية الحالات.



رابط شرح الدرس



Demonstratives

بعيد	قريب	
that	this	مفرد
those	these	جمع

Ex: **These** books are mine. جمع قريب

Ex: The book **that** is on the table is good. مفرد بعيد

Ex: **Those** people are peaceful. جمع بعيد

Ex: **This** pen is yours. مفرد قريب

Note

ملاحظة: بعد ضمائر الإثبات يأتي:

1. اسم: This pen

2. اسم موصوف: This blue pen



Some VS Any

Any	Some
مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال	مع الجمل المثبتة

Ex: I want to drink **some** coffee.

Ex: Do we have **any** coffee?

Note

ملاحظة: نستخدم some بدلاً من any عندما يبدأ السؤال بـ

(can – could – shall – should – will – would)

Ex: **Can** I have **some** coffee, please?

Ex: **Would** you like to have **some** coffee?



رابط شرح الدرس



Prepositions

Time

On	التواريخ الكاملة	On 27 th January
	الأيام	On Sunday
In	الشهور	In May
	الفصول	In Spring
	السنوات	In 2000
	فترات النهار	In the morning
At	الساعات	At 8 O'clock
	فترات الليل	At midnight
	مع التراكيب	At the weekend
		At the moment
		At the end of the day

Note

إذا اجتمعت حالتان نستعمل **On** :

- On Saturday morning



Places

On	على (ملامس)	The book is on the table.
In	في (داخل/ضمن)	I am in the house.
At	في (معنوياً)	He is at work right now.
Of	من (جزء من كل)	A piece of paper.
To	إلى / لـ	She gave it to me.
From	من (مكان)	They are from Syria.
For	لأجل	He is famous for teaching.
By	بواسطة	I will travel by plane.
Above	فوق (معنوياً / غير ملامس)	He is above me in the career ladder.
Over	على (غير ملامس)	We will jump over the river.
About	حول (موضوع)	He loves talking about us.
Around	حول (مكان)	Let's walk around the park.
Between	بين (شيئين)	She sat between me and Rana.
Among	بين (عدة أشياء)	The criminal is among them.
During	خلال (زمن)	I will meet you during the day.
Through	عبر (مكان ضيق / معنوي)	He can't enter through the door.
Across	عبر (مكان واسع)	They went on a trip across Syria.
With	مع / بـ (للزيادة)	Sugar provides our body with energy.



Transportations

In	لا يمكن التحرك داخلها	I go to school everyday in a car.
On	يمكن التحرك داخلها	I go to school everyday on a bus.
By	نحذف أدوات التعريف و التنكير (the - a -an)	I go to school everyday by car / bus.

Movements

To	إلى (مع تحديد وجهة)	I drove to Homs yesterday.
Into	في (تفيد الانتقال)	I drove into the fence.
Onto	على (تفيد الانتقال)	He stepped onto the stage.
From	من (تحديد نقطة الانطلاق)	The plane from Cairo arrived.
Off	من على (تفيد الانتقال)	The vase fell off the table.
Out of	خارج (تفيد الانتقال)	I moved the chair out of my room.



رابط شرح الدرس



Comparative & Superlative

- في الحالة العامة نتبع القاعدة:

Comparative	Superlative	
Adj + er + than	The + adj + est	صفة من مقطع واحد (غالباً تحتوي على حرف صوتي واحد أو حرفين يشكلان صوتاً واحداً)
More/less + adj + than	The + most/least + adj	صفة من مقطعين

- ولكن بعض الصفات لا تتبع الحالة العامة ونذكر منها:

	Comparative	Superlative
Good	Better than	The best
Bad	Worse than	The worst
Far	Further/Farther than	The furthest/Farthest
Little	Less than	The least
Many/Much	More than	The most



رابط شرح الدرس



Stative verbs

1. Thoughts:

Believe – agree –
disagree – remember –
forget – know – mean –
realise – understand

الفعل Think

إذا جاء بمعنى **يفكر** يقبل الاستمرار
(Think of/about)
أما إذا جاء بمعنى **يعتقد** لا يقبل الاستمرار
(belief/opinion)

Ex: What are you **thinking** about?

Ex: I **think** your grades are good.

2. Senses:

See – hear
Taste – smell – feel

الفعل **hear** لا يقبل الاستمرار **إطلاقاً**

الفعل **see** يقبل الاستمرار بمعنى **يقابل**

الأفعال (taste, smell, feel)

تقبل الاستمرار إذا جاء بعدها حرف جر أو

اسم **ولا** تقبل الاستمرار إذا جاء بعدها

صفة

Ex: The pizza **tastes** good.

Ex: She **is smelling** the flower.

Ex: Do you **hear** me?

3. Emotions:

Love – like – hate – need – want – wish – prefer – respect

Ex: I **want** to study now.



4. Possessions:

Own - belong -
posses

الفعل **have** بمعنى **يملك** لا يقبل
الاستمرار.
الفعل **have** بغير معنى يقبل الاستمرار.

Ex: We **are having** a meeting next week.

Ex: I **have** one brother

5. description:

Seem - sound -
look like

الفعالان (look - appear)
إذا أتى بعدهما حرف جر يقبلان الاستمرار.
إذا لم يأتِ بعدهما حرف جر لا يقبلان
الاستمرار.

Ex: She **looks** tired

Ex: She **is looking** out of the window

Note

يصنع = make = تقبل الاستمرار
يجعل = make = لا تقبل الاستمرار



رابط شرح الدرس

Quantifiers

مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة المعدودة المفردة والجمع	مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة المعدودة المفردة فقط	مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة المعدودة الجمع فقط
Some مع الجمل المثبتة Any مع الجمل غير المثبتة	No	All - A lot of - Lots of - most - plenty of - enough - loads of - a load of - tons of

EX: We have **a lot of** money.

EX: Do you need **any** help?

EX: Would you like **some** coffee.

EX: **Most** people use phones.

مع الأسماء المعدودة فقط

مع المفرد	مع الجمع
every - each - either - neither	many - several - both - few - a few - hundreds of - thousands of

Note

عندما ترى every أو each وبعدها فوراً كلمة تعامل مع هذا التركيب على أنه مفرد حتى لو دلّ على جمع.

EX: Everyone is happy.



مع الأسماء غير المحدودة فقط

much – a bit of – a little

EX: You spent much money

EX: I want a bit of sugar please.



رابط شرح الدرس

مواضع تكبير الحرف

<u>H</u> e's excited.	1. الكلمة الأولى من الجملة (سواء بداية الكلام، أو مسبوقه بنقطة، أو مسبوقه بإشارة استفهام):
Yesterday, <u>I</u> went to the park.	2. ضمير المتكلم ا :
<u>H</u> uda, <u>M</u> aya...etc <u>D</u> r. <u>O</u> mar	3. أسماء الأشخاص أو ألقابهم:
<u>S</u> pider-Man	4. أسماء الكتب والأفلام والأعمال الأدبية:
<u>J</u> anuary, <u>M</u> onday..etc	5. شهور السنة وأيام الأسبوع:
<u>N</u> ew <u>Y</u> ear's <u>D</u> ay	6. أسماء الأعياد والعطل:
<u>S</u> yria, <u>C</u> alifornia, <u>D</u> amascus, ... etc	7. أسماء القارات والدول والمدن والولايات والقرى:
The <u>T</u> hames, The <u>A</u> tlantic, Lake <u>V</u> ictoria	8. أسماء الأنهار والمحيطات والبحار والبحيرات:
The <u>A</u> lps	9. أسماء المعالم الجغرافية والمعالم التاريخية:
I'm <u>S</u> yrian - <u>F</u> rench music - the <u>A</u> mericans	10. الأمور المرتبطة بالجنسيات:
<u>W</u> all <u>S</u> treet	11. أسماء الشوارع والمباني والمنزهات:
<u>E</u> nglish, <u>F</u> rench, <u>S</u> panish, ...etc	12. اللغات:
<u>W</u> orld <u>W</u> ar II	13. الأحداث والفترات:
<u>S</u> amsung, <u>A</u> pple	14. الماركات:
<u>N</u> ASA	15. الجمعيات والمنظمات والاختصارات:



Question Making

في جملة الجواب في حال وجود Yes / No	
في حالة وجود فعل مساعد	في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد
1 - نبدل بين الفعل المساعد و الفاعل مع حذف الـ Yes/No و النفي ان وُجد. 2 - لا نجري أي تغيير على الفعل الرئيسي 3 - نكتب ما تبقى من الجملة 4 - نضع إشارة الاستفهام	1 - نضع فعل مساعد مناسب (Do, Does, Did) 2 - نضع الفاعل بعد حذف الـ Yes/No 3 - نضع الفعل بالـ V_o 4 - نكتب ما تبقى من الجملة 5 - نضع إشارة استفهام
مثال	مثال
<u>Yes</u>, she arrived yesterday. نطبق الخطوات السابقة : Yes, she arrived yesterday? ↓ ↓ Did arrive الجملة بالماضي فتصبح الجملة بعد التعديل : Did she arrive yesterday?	<u>Yes</u>, he is coming tomorrow. نطبق الخطوات السابقة : Yes, he is coming tomorrow? ↻ ↻ فتصبح الجملة بعد التعديل : Is he coming tomorrow?
مثال غير محلول	مثال غير محلول
B : Yes, he works hard	B: No, I can't speak French

في جملة الجواب في حال عدم وجود Yes / No

في حالة وجود فعل مساعد	في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد
1 - نضع اسم استفهام مناسب بحيث يكون الجواب الكلمة أو العبارة التي تحتها خط. 2 - نقوم بالتبديل بين الفاعل و الفعل المساعد و نترك الفعل الأساسي كما هو. 3 - نكتب ما تبقى من الجملة و نحذف ما تحته خط (المسؤول عنه). 4 - نضع إشارة استفهام.	1 - نضع اسم استفهام مناسب بحيث يكون الجواب الكلمة أو العبارة التي تحتها خط. 2 - نقوم بالتبديل بين الفاعل و الفعل المساعد و نترك الفعل الأساسي كما هو. 3 - نكتب ما تبقى من الجملة و نحذف ما تحته خط (المسؤول عنه). 4 - نضع إشارة استفهام.
مثال	مثال
They work <u>in a field</u>. نطبق الخطوات السابقة : _____ They work <u>in a field</u>. ↓ ↓ <u>Where</u> do work (للسؤال عن مكان معين) فتصبح الجملة بعد التعديل : Where do they work?	They will arrive <u>next week</u>. نطبق الخطوات السابقة : _____ <u>They will</u> arrive <u>next week</u>? ↓ ↺ (<u>When</u> للسؤال عن موعد أو وقت معين) فتصبح الجملة بعد التعديل : When will they arrive?
مثال غير محلول	مثال غير محلول
B: My parents got married <u>in 2003</u>	B: He has bought <u>a new car</u>
ملاحظة : أبدأ السؤال بحرف كبير و تذكر أنه أحياناً يتم تغيير الضمائر الموجودة في الجملة بما يتناسب مع الموقف حيث ان الجملة المعطاة هي جواب المخاطب لسؤال كنت أنت قد سألته.	



أدوات الاستفهام - Question words

الأداة	الاستخدام	مثال عليها
When	للسؤال عن الأزمنة و الأعوام و المواعيد	A: When did the human discover the fire? B: In ancient times, human discovered the fire
Where	للسؤال عن الأماكن	A: Where did you move the chairs? B: We moved the chairs into my bedroom
Why	للسؤال عن السبب	A: Why was his phone disconnected? B: His phone was disconnected because he didn't pay the bill.
Which	للتخيار بين شيئين أو أكثر	A: Which bike do you want? B: I want the white bike.
Whose	للسؤال عن الملكية ملاحظة : غالباً ما يأتي بعدها اسم	A: Whose <u>photo</u> is this? B: This is my father's photo.
How	للسؤال عن الحال أو عن الطريقة التي تتم بها الأشياء	A: How do you come to school? B: I come to school by bus.
How many	للسؤال عن المعداد ملاحظة : دائماً ما يأتي بعدها اسم في حالة الجمع	A: How many <u>students</u> are in your class? B: There are twenty five students in my class
How much	للسؤال عن غير المعداد ملاحظة : دائماً ما يأتي بعدها اسم غير قابل للعد	A: How much <u>sleep</u> do elderly people need? B: Elderly people need a little sleep.



How old What age	للسؤال عن العمر	A: How old / what age is your brother? B: My brother is <u>twenty years old</u> .
How fast	للسؤال عن السرعة	A: How fast was he driving? B: He was driving <u>fifty miles an hour</u> .
How big	للسؤال عن المساحة أو الحجم	A: How big is the stadium? B: The stadium is <u>over 55m high and 200m long</u> .
How far	للسؤال عن المسافة و البعد	A: How far is your home? B: My home is <u>10 kilometers</u> away from here.
How long	للسؤال عن المدة التي يستغرقها عمل ما	A: How long did it take you to get here? B: It took me <u>twenty minutes</u> to get here
How tall	للسؤال عن الأطوال	A: How tall is this building? B: This building is <u>30 meters tall</u> .
How often How many times	للسؤال عن العادة و التكرار	A: How often / How many times do you go to the beach? B: I go to the beach <u>once a year</u> .
Who	للسؤال عن الفاعل العاقل ملاحظة : عند السؤال عن الفاعل نكتفي بحذفه و استبداله بـ who و طبعاً نستبدل الضمائر الأخرى إذا استدعى الأمر حسب موقف المخاطب و المتكلم ملاحظة : دائماً نسأل عن الفاعل العاقل بصيغة الفعل المفرد	A: Who <u>is</u> coming to the dinner? B: <u>Ali and Yousef</u> are coming to the dinner.
Whom	للسؤال عن المفعول به العاقل ملاحظة: نستخدم Whom حصراً إذا سبق بحرف جر.	A: <u>whom</u> did you see last night? B: I saw <u>Omar</u> last night.



what

للسؤال عن المفعول به غير
العاقل

A: What does your father do?

B: My father is a dentist.

للسؤال عن الفاعل غير العاقل

ملاحظة : عند السؤال عن الفاعل
غير العاقل نكتفي بتبديله بـ What

ملاحظة : في هذه الحالة نسأل عن
الفاعل غير العاقل بصيغة المفرد

A: What was the reason for his success?

B: His failures were the reason of his
success.

كيف نسأل عن الفعل ؟

What + ----- + (do)?

A: What are you **doing** now?

B: I am swimming in the pool now.

كيف نسأل عن الصفات الداخلية و الخارجية ؟

What + (be) + (noun) + like?

للسؤال عن الصفات الداخلية و المعنوية

A: What is your **father** like?

B: My father is kind and friendly.

**What + (do/ does) + (noun)
look like?**

للسؤال عن الصفات الخارجية و المادية

A: What does Ali **look** like?

B: Ali is tall and has got green eyes.

أسئلة خاصة لا تخضع لقاعدة محددة

**What is / was the weather
like?**

(للسؤال عن الطقس)

A: What **was the weather** like in
Lattakia?

B: It was hot and humid in Lattakia.

What kind of + (noun)?

(للسؤال عن النوع)

A: What kind of **music** are you
interested in?

B: I am interested in classical music.

What time?

(للسؤال عن الوقت)

A: What **time** do you start work?

B: I start work at seven o'clock in the
morning

What color?

(للسؤال عن اللون)

A: What **color** is the house painted?

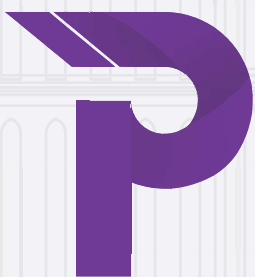
B: The house is painted blue.

Life Choices

Module 1 : Learning for life



Unit number



**Made by
Pixel educational team**

Student book

Future Careers

Page 11

Reading

Not all people have the **ability** to **explore** their future and build it with more **confidence** and **clarity**. Most studies have **highlighted** the **role** of parents as **active agents** in the **career development** of their children. Parents want their children to **opt for** a career they know well about, but what their children want or **1 aspire** to become can be **completely** different. Many parents said they had **misguided** their children into choosing a career of their choice. It is very important not to **2 burden** our children with **unreal expectations**. There are a few **factors** that are of great importance in the **career selection process**. The child's **3 aptitude** is a mirror of his/her **personality, strengths, and weaknesses**. Hence, a **designed aptitude test** can **reveal** a lot of information **regarding** the child that can help in taking a **well-informed career selection**. It is very difficult to spend your life working in a **field** that you are not interested in. **Courses leading** towards a **desired career** should be found easily for the young to **enable** them to make the right **decisions** about their future. **Psychologists** said that it was very easy for a child to get **4 swayed** by **peer pressure** into choosing a career that the **majority** was opting for rather than the one which was best for him/her. Although it should not be the most important, **5 remuneration** of a career **holds value** in one's life; nobody likes to **earn** little. A job's **earnings** should match the child's **aspirations** and **provide** a **satisfying comfortable life**. Modern societies need **professionals** in every **field**: **utility workers, garbage collectors**, farmers, nurses, doctors, engineers, teachers, **professors** and many others.

Furthermore, **6 demotivation** might have a negative **impact** on the child's **mental health** when **rejecting** all of his/her ideas. Parents can work together to **gather** information about a career and then help the child in deciding whether it is **suitable** or not. Most people have dreams of future jobs and there's no **limit** to what this could be, but we can't be **absolutely certain** about our **career choices**. Researchers told us that through **self-reflection** and **guided activities**, we would find our **core values** and a **clearer path** towards the right career.

Translation

ليس كل الناس لديهم القدرة على استكشاف مستقبلهم وبناءه بمزيد من الثقة والوضوح. لقد أبرزت معظم الدراسات على دور الآباء كعناصر فعالة في تطوير المسار الوظيفي لأبنائهم. يرغب الآباء في أن يسعى أطفالهم لمهنة يعرفونها جيداً، لكن ما **1 يطمح** إليه أطفالهم يمكن أن يكون مختلفاً تماماً. العديد من الآباء قالوا إنهم قد أرسدوا بشكل خاطئ أطفالهم لاختيار مهنة تناسب اختياراتهم الخاصة. من المهم جداً ألا **2 نثقل** على أطفالنا ب توقعات غير حقيقية. هناك بعض العوامل التي لها أهمية كبيرة في عملية اختيار المهنة. **3 ميول** الطفل هي مرآة لشخصيته، نقاط قوته ونقاط ضعفه. لذلك، يمكن أن يكشف اختبار الميول المصمم الكثير من المعلومات المتعلقة بالطفل التي قد تساعد في اتخاذ اختيار وظيفي متعمق. من الصعب جداً أن تقضي حياتك في العمل في مجال لا تهتم به. يجب أن تكون الدورات التي تؤدي إلى المهنة المرغوبة متاحة بسهولة للشباب لتمكينهم من اتخاذ قرارات صحيحة بشأن مستقبلهم. قال علماء النفس إنه من السهل جداً على الطفل أن **4 يتأثر** ب ضغط الأقران لاختيار مهنة يختارها الأغلبية بدلاً من تلك التي تناسبه/تناسبها أكثر. على الرغم من أنه ينبغي ألا يكون العامل الأهم، فإن **5 الأجر** للمهنة له قيمة في حياة الإنسان؛ لا أحد يحب أن يكسب القليل.

يجب أن تتوافق أرباح الوظيفة مع تطلعات الطفل وتوفر حياة مُرضية ومريحة. تحتاج المجتمعات الحديثة إلى محترفين في كل مجال: عمال المرافق العامة، جامعو القمامة، مزارعون، ممرضون، أطباء، مهندسون، معلمون، أساتذة، وغيرهم الكثير.

علاوة على ذلك، قد يكون لـ 6 تثبيط العزيمة تأثير سلبي على الصحة النفسية للطفل عند رفض جميع أفكاره. يمكن للأباء العمل معًا لجمع المعلومات حول مهنة معينة ثم مساعدة الطفل في تحديد ما إذا كانت مناسبة أم لا. لدى معظم الناس أحلام بوظائف المستقبل وليس هناك حد لما يمكن أن يكون عليه هذا الحلم، ولكن لا يمكننا أن نكون متأكدين تمامًا من اختياراتنا المهنية. أخبرنا الباحثون أنه من خلال التأمل الذاتي والأنشطة الموجهة، سنتمكن من العثور على قيمنا الأساسية ومسار أوضح نحو المهنة الصحيحة.

مفردات النص الأساسية

aspire	يطمح	seek to attain a goal
burden	يُحْمِل عبء	load
aptitude	قدرة	natural ability or skill
swayed	يتأثر	influenced
remuneration	الأجر	money paid for work or services
demotivation	تثبيط العزيمة	making someone less eager or willing to do their job

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. How do most parents guide their children to choose their future career?

- A) By allowing them to choose freely
- B) By guiding them based on their own experiences
- C) By following the child's aspirations
- D) By consulting career experts

2. Do you think parents follow the right strategy? Why?

- A) Yes, because parents know what is best for their children
- B) No, because children should be free to choose
- C) Yes, because parents have more life experience
- D) No, because parents may impose their expectations

3. What factors should be taken into consideration when deciding on a future career?

- A) Working hours
- B) The child's aptitude and interests
- C) Peer pressure and societal trends
- D) The popularity of the career

4. How does peer pressure affect children's career choices?

- A) It makes them choose the best career
- B) It helps them decide more confidently
- C) It sways them towards careers that their peers are choosing
- D) It does not have any effect



5. What role does aptitude play in children's career selection?

- A) It reflects the child's personality and strengths
- B) It shows the easiest career path
- C) It only helps parents decide
- D) It has no influence on career choices

6. Parents should help their children to their gift.

- A) determine
- B) ignore
- C) decrease
- D) reduce

7. The child's is a mirror of his/her personality.

- A) quality
- B) aptitude
- C) swayed
- D) dreams

8. Parents play a vital in the career development of their children.

- A) course
- B) aptitude
- C) role
- D) value

9. Parents should study very well the of their children to decide their future career.

- A) skill
- B) aptitude
- C) ideas
- D) future

10. There should be leading to help children choose the best job for them in the future.

- A) aptitude
- B) test
- C) self- reflection
- D) remuneration

11. Nowadays, most people encourage their children to choose their future profession based on the that profession brings to them.

- A) aptitude
- B) swayed
- C) demotivation
- D) remuneration

12. We should find our values and a clearer path.

- A) right
- B) core
- C) various
- D) certain

13. "Swayed" means:

- A) Advance
- B) Load
- C) Influenced
- D) Lost

Answers:

- 1 - B
- 2 - D
- 3 - B
- 4 - C
- 5 - A
- 6 - A
- 7 - B
- 8 - C
- 9 - B
- 10 - B
- 11 - D
- 12 - B
- 13 - C



Workbook

Reading

Page 6

A Learned Lesson is a Good Lesson

Our life is a short **journey**, and every day we learn many important lessons that we must **benefit** from in order to be able to achieve more successes, and to make life beautiful and **prosperous**.

Most people think that **education** is **limited to** schools only, but the truth is that there are lessons that we can only learn from life, and they may be more important than those learnt at schools. Life lessons are sometimes **painful** before they are **acquired**, and in order to **avoid** this, we must benefit from the **experiences** of others.

We shouldn't pay too much **attention** to the **1 trivial** things that are not important and waste our time and **effort**. **Since** life is so **unpredictable**, we must not live on **expectations** only and meet everything new in life with **optimism** and positive thinking. There is no word more **boring** and **monotonous** than the word "I". We must be **confident** of ourselves, but that does not mean we talk about ourselves and our **accomplishments** all the time, as this leads to **2 vanity**. Human relationships are also important because without love and **support** from family and friends, you would not feel happy and would not **achieve** success in life.

Man by nature **makes mistakes**, so be **3 tolerant** and seek **excuses** for those around you, and if someone comes to you with an **apology**, do not stop him, and do not carry in your heart any **4 envy** of anyone. Take care of your health and make it a **priority** for your **entire life**. There are no alternatives to exercising, eating well, fresh air and sunshine.

The **pursuit** of success will make you succeed in the end, **no matter** how long the **period** is, but keep **trying**. **Failure** is a great teacher in life. It teaches us **5 humility** and how to correct our course of life. A great example is Thomas Edison. He **failed** many times, but he did not **give up** until he succeeded. Even when he failed, Edison learned something. 'I **get results** in everything I try,' he said.

The golden rule for everybody is to be **honest, trustful, useful** and **generous** so that they leave life with a **6 trace** that those around them will not forget about.

Translation

إن حياتنا رحلة قصيرة، وكل يوم نتعلم الكثير من الدروس المهمة التي ينبغي لنا أن نستفيد منها لنغدو قادرين على تحقيق المزيد من النجاحات، ولتصبح الحياة جميلة ومزدهرة.
معظم الناس يعتقدون أن التعليم مقتصر على المدارس فحسب، ولكن الحقيقة أن هناك دروس لا يسعنا تعلمها إلا من الحياة، وربما يكون لهم قدر من الأهمية يفوق دروس المدرسة. دروس الحياة في بعض الأحيان تكون مؤلمة قبل اكتسابها، ولكي نتفادى ذلك علينا أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين.
يتعين علينا ألا نولي الأمور **1 التافهة** الخالية من الأهمية والمضيعة لوقتنا وجهدا كثيرا من الاهتمام.
وبما أن الحياة غير متوقعة، يجب ألا نحيا على التوقعات فقط، ويجب أن نقابل كل شيء جديد في الحياة بتفاؤل وفكر إيجابي. لا كلمة أكثر مللا ورتابة من كلمة (أنا). ينبغي لنا أن نتحلى بالثقة بأنفسنا، ولكن هذا لا يعني أن نتحدث عن أنفسنا وإنجازاتنا طيلة الوقت، حيث يقود هذا إلى **2 الغرور**.

العلاقات الإنسانية مهمة أيضًا، فبدون حب و دعم العائلة والأصدقاء لن تشعر بالسعادة ولن تحقق النجاح في الحياة. الإنسان بطبيعته يرتكب الأخطاء، لذا كن 3 متسامحًا والتمس الأعذار للناس من حولك، وإن قدم إليك شخص باعتذار لا تردعه، ولا تحمل في قلبك 4 حسدًا لأحد. اعتن بصحتك واجعلها أولوية طوال حياتك. فلا بدائل لممارسة التمارين الرياضية، وتناول الغذاء جيدًا، والهواء المنعش وضوء الشمس.

السعي لتحقيق النجاح سيجعلك ناجحًا في نهاية المطاف، مهما طال الوقت واصل المحاولة. الفشل معلم عظيم في الحياة، تعلمنا 5 التواضع وكيفية تصحيح مسار حياتنا.

توماس إديسون مثال رائع، فشل مرات عدة ولكن لم يستسلم حتى ظفر بالنجاح، حتى عندما فشل تعلم شيئًا من ذلك. وقد قال " جنيب النتائج في كل شيء حاولت به".

القاعدة الذهبية لكل امرئ أن يكون صادقًا، ومفعمًا بالثقة، ومفيدًا وكريمًا، فترك الحياة ب 6 أثر لا ينساه الناس من حوله.

مفردات النص الأساسية

trivial	تافه	not serious, important or valuable
vanity	الغرور	too much pride in one's self
tolerant	متسامح	allowing people to do, say, or believe what they want
envy	الحسد	jealousy or desire for something which belongs to another person
humility	التواضع	modesty
trace	أثر	a mark that something has been in a place

Read the text and answer the following questions:

- are maybe more important than the lessons we learn from school.
A) preparing lessons from books B) life lessons
C) Education D) Having a good job
- According to the text, we shouldn't always talk about our achievements because it leads to.....
A) arrogance C) modesty
B) humility D) success
- No one should use the "I" because it inherits
A) envy B) modesty
C) pride D) fortune
- People can avoid life's painful lesson by the experiences of others.
A- neglecting B- making use of
C- refusing D- none



5. According to the text, life is certain and stable.

- A) true
- B) false

6. We must be sure about ourselves and always talk about our accomplishments.

- A) true
- B) false

7. The word "trivial "means:

- A) necessary
- B) not serious or important
- C) valuable
- D) invaluable

8. "Too much pride in one's self " is the definition of the word.

- A) modesty
- B) humility
- C) vanity
- D) all are correct

9. Because human beings make mistakes, we should be with others.

- A) envy
- B) humility
- C) tolerant
- D) unfair

10. According to the text, should come first in one's life.

- A) working out
- B) eating well
- C) having fresh air and sunshine
- D) all are correct

11. Our course of life can be corrected and we learn humility through.....

- A) success
- B) failure
- C) repetition
- D) courses

12. Failure plays a big role in our life and teaches a lot of lessons.

- A) true
- B) false

13. Thomas Edison is an example of a successful person who failed few times.

- A) true
- B) false

14. The word "tolerant" means:

- A) inflexible person
- B) too lenient
- C) allowing people to do, say what they want
- D) all are correct

15. "A mark that something has been in a place" is the definition of the word.....

- A) envy
- B) humility
- C) trivial
- D) trace

16. "Jealousy or desire for something which belongs to another person " is the definition of the word.....

- A) envy
- B) humility
- C) trace
- D) vanity

Listening and speaking

لا تنسَ مراجعة فقرتي الاستماع / التحدث ص17 في

كتاب الطالب و ص11 في كتاب الأنشطة لترجمة

الكلمات الجديدة عليك و حفظها

Answers:

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 1 - B | 9 - C |
| 2 - A | 10 - D |
| 3 - C | 11 - B |
| 4 - B | 12 - A |
| 5 - B | 13 - B |
| 6 - B | 14 - C |
| 7 - B | 15 - D |
| 8 - C | 16 - A |

Vocabulary

Words Family

يُنَوِّعُ / يتغير	vary	↔	various	متنوع
حقيقي	real	↔	reality	حقيقة / واقع
يقرر	decide	↔	decision	قرار
ينجز	accomplish	↔	accomplishment	إنجاز
دليل / مرشد / يرشد	guide	↔	guidance	إرشاد / توجيه
تعليم / ثقافة	Education	↔	Educate	يُعلم / يُثقف
مؤلم	Painful	↔	Pain	ألم
يمكن التنبؤ به	Predictable	↔	Prediction	تنبؤ / توقع
اعتذار	apology	↔	apologized	اعتذر
مزدهر	prosperous	↔	prosperity	ازدهار
متسامح	tolerant	↔	tolerance	تسامح

راجع درس الاشتقاقات على اليوتيوب لتتوضح الفكرة



Pronunciation

Homophones

طريق / طريقة	way	weigh	يزن
طقس	weather	whether	سواء / إذا
هنا	here	hear	يسمع
يمين / صحيح	right	write	يكتب

في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا :





Vocabulary

Phrasal verbs

Reach out to	يعد يد العون	Offer help and support to someone
Fit in with	يتأقلم / ينسجم مع	Be accepted by other people of the group
Get into	يبدأ الاهتمام بـ	Start to become interested in something
Follow through	يتابع / يواصل العمل	Start something and finish it with satisfactory way
Run into	يواجه مشكلة	Encounter problems or difficulties unexpectedly
Keep up with	يبقى على اطلاع	Stay updated and informed about something

Everyday English

Giving advice

Giving advice إعطاء النصيحة	Accepting advice completely قبول النصيحة تماماً	Hesitation التردد
If I were you You'd better	That's true, I haven't thought about that before.	Maybe you're right, but
Try to You should	Ok. I can do that.	Well, you see
Instead of You can ... It's a good idea to	Yes, you're right. I'll do that	I'm not sure, maybe I could
Why don't you?	Of course! I should've thought about that.	I'm not sure if this is the best thing to do now
كلمات مفتاحية قد تجدها في نص السؤال :		
- Give advice to ... - your ... is going through ... give him a piece of advice	- Accept the following advice ...	- Show hesitation - You are not sure about the advice ...



Choose the correct answer

1. Individuals have dreams in their day-to-day existence.
A. variety B. various C. vary D. very
2. Everyone endeavors a great deal to make dreams
A. really B. reality C. realise D. real
3. Future plans and have a great importance in a person's life.
A. decisively B. decisive C. decisions D. decide
4. Gaining your boss confidence is really a great
A. accomplishing B. accomplished C. accomplish D. Accomplishment
5. I went to a counselor for on my career.
A. guidance B. guide C. misguidance D. misguide
6. We need to people so that they understand the importance of a good and a healthy diet
A. educative B. educational C. educate D. education
7. She hated to say the words for fear of causing to him.
A. painfully B. painless C. painful D. pain
8. The situation is so uncertain that it is hard to make a confident
A. predict B. prediction C. predictably D. predictable
9. The airline company to passengers for the delay.
A. apologetically B. apologetic C. apology D. apologised
10. In recent years, Syria has undergone a great deal of
A. prosper B. prospering C. prosper D. prosperity
11. Many old people have more than others when dealing with the young generation.
A. tolerance B. tolerantly C. tolerates D. tolerance
12. The rich have to to the poor.
A. get into B. reach out C. run into D. keep up with
13. She didn't really with her workmates in her previous job.
A. keep up B. get into C. fit in D. reach out
14. I writing when I was a kid, and I just never stopped loving it.
A. kept up with B. reached out C. ran into D. got into
15. We've been talking about this project for a while, and it's time to
A. follow it through B. reach out C. keep up with D. run into
16. If you any trouble, just give me a call.
A. fit in B. reach out C. run into D. keep up with
17. A big part of my job is the latest research in medical technology.
A. fit in B. running out C. running into D. keeping up with
18. I can always you if I feel tired with my school work.
A. fit in B. keep up with C. follow through D. reach out to
19. When I travelled to Spain, I tried hard to with the locals.
A. keep up with B. fit in C. run into D. get into

Answers:

- 1 - B
- 2 - B
- 3 - C
- 4 - D
- 5 - A
- 6 - C
- 7 - D
- 8 - B
- 9 - D
- 10 - D
- 11 - D
- 12 - B
- 13 - C
- 14 - D
- 15 - A
- 16 - C
- 17 - D
- 18 - D
- 19 - B



20. He applied for the job and succeeded but failed to with another work record.

- A. follow through B. reach out to C. keep up with D. run into

21. Nowadays, students can the latest news by using the Internet.

- A. follow through B. fit in C. run into D. keep up with

22. Which should we use to the goods?

- A. weigh / way B. way / way C. weigh / weigh D. way / weigh

23. No one knows the will be fine tomorrow.

- A. whether / weather B. weather / whether C. weather / weather D. whether / whether

24. The cyclist his bike and set off quickly on the

- A. road / road B. rode / rode C. rode / road D. road / rode

25. The man is enjoying his time with his on the beach under the

- A. son / son B. sun / sun C. son / sun D. sun / son

26. I only a sandwich before I went to bed.

- A. ate / ate B. eight / ate C. ate / eight D. eight / eight

27. The teacher asked the students to down the answer.

- A. write / right B. right / right C. write / write D. right / write

28. We usually our food from a shop the corner.

- A. buy / by B. by / by C. buy / buy D. by / buy

29. I wanted to sit to be able to the speech well.

- A. hear / hear B. bear / here C. here / here D. here / hear

30. I told my daughter if she didn't hit the she'd break the car's side mirror.

- A. break B. brake C. cell D. sell

31. If you rotten food, you'll get arrested and end up in a prison

- A. cell / celll B. sell / cell C. sell / sell D. cell / sell

32. To bake a flower-shaped cake, you'll need some

- A. flour B. flower C. whether D. weather

33. I wanted to sit here, so I could the singer performing without any distractions.

- A. hear B. bear C. sell D. cell

34. We have one before our appointment with the real estate agent.

- A. our B. hour C. knight D. night

35. The knight is on his way to the castle, but traveling at is very dangerous.

- A. night B. knight C. break D. brake

36. My little brother feels excited every time he sees a turtle.

- A. sea B. see C. sun D. son

37. My cousin is 13 years old. He likes to spend time outside in the

- A. sea B. see C. sun D. son

38. I don't know to bring a jacket or not. The weather looks unpredictable today.

- A. whether B. weather C. son D. sun

Answers:

20 - A

21 - D

22 - D

23 - A

24 - C

25 - C

26 - C

27 - A

28 - A

29 - D

30 - B

31 - B

32 - A

33 - A

34 - B

35 - A

36 - A

37 - C

38 - A

Present simple



رابط شرح الدرس

Form

Subject + V₁ + Complement

He / She / it: + s I / We / You / They: __

مع الفاعل المفرد (ضمائر أو اسم) نضيف s في نهاية الفعل

Uses

1 - Habits / Routines:

يستخدم للعادات اليومية المتكررة (الروتين)

- Mazen **always** arrives on time.

2 - Facts (probably scientific) & truths:

يستخدم للحقائق (علمية غالباً) والثوابت غير المتغيرة

- The sun **rises** from the east

3 - Stories / Films & movies / Plays / Songs / Books:

للحديث عن القصص - الأفلام - المسرحيات - الأغاني - و الكتب .. الخ، **بالمختصر** : أي سيناريو ثابت لا يمكن تغييره مع الوقت (القصة كل ما تحكيها بتكون الأحداث نفسها عم تصير مو كل مرة يبصير شي جديد .. صح ولا مزبوط؟).

- The hero **works** as a dentist **in the movie** I watched yesterday.

4 - Official time table in the future:

جدول مواعيد رسمية في المستقبل (موعد انطلاق طائرة / قطار / اعلان حكومي ...)

- The plane to Cairo **takes off at 7pm.**

5 - To give instructions or directions:

لإعطاء التعليمات للوصول لمكان ما أو استخدام شيء معين أو تعليمات الوجود ضمن منطقة معينة أو حالة معينة

Note

عند إضافة s في نهاية الفعل مع الفاعل المفرد يجب مراعاة الحالات الآتية :

عندما تكون نهاية الفعل :

1 - (s - ss - sh - c - ch - o - x - z) : نضيف es

Watch → He **watches**

2 - الحرف y وقبله حرف ساكن: نحذف الـ y ونضيف ies

Study → He **studies**

3 - الحرف y وقبله حرف صوتي: نضيف s ولا نحذف الـ y :

Play → He **plays**

3 - ليس أي مما سبق: نضيف s فقط بشكل طبيعي.

Run → He **Runs**

تذكر: الأحرف الصوتية في اللغة الانكليزية :

(i - e - o - u - a)

key words

Usually	عادة	regularly	بانتظام
always	دائماً	frequently	بشكل متكرر
often	غالباً	occasionally	في المناسبات
sometimes	أحياناً	generally	بشكل عام
all the time	طوال الوقت	every + timespan	كل + مدة زمنية
rarely	نادراً	seldom	نادراً
hardly	نادراً	Never	أبداً

once/twice/three times ... + timespan

لاحظ أن كل الكلمات السابقة تدل على تكرار روتيني في حدوث الفعل بشكل أو بآخر وهذا هو الاستخدام الرئيسي للحاضر البسيط.

Note

Takes off فعل مركب معناه (انطلق / أقبلع)

السابعة مساءً 7 PM السابعة صباحاً 7 AM

Negative

Subject + $\frac{do}{does}$ + not + Complement

He / She / it: + does + not

I / We / You / They: + do + not

عند إضافة الفعلين المساعدین (do – does) في الجملة دائماً نعيد الفعل الأساسي في الجملة إلى صيغة المصدر.

+ Mazen always arrives on time.- Mazen **does not** always arrive on time.لاحظ كيف رجعنا الـ arrives للـ V_0

Note

أماكن ظروف التكرار في الجملة (غالباً):

في الجمل المثبتة (ليست نفي أو السؤال):

تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسيShe **always** works hard.

في الجمل غير المثبتة (النفي و السؤال) :

تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي و بعد الفعل المساعدDoes she **always** work hard?She doesn't **always** work hard.

في الجمل التي فعلها الأساسي فعل كون :

تأتي بعد فعل الكون (am – is – are – was – were).She is **always** on time.

تذكر : أهم ظروف التكرار :

Usually – always – sometimes – often –
occasionally – rarely – seldom – frequently
– regularly – never – hardly – generally

هذه الملاحظة تنطبق على جميع الأزمنة وليس فقط
الحاضر البسيط، ولا تنس أن لكل قاعدة شواذ ولكن
ماسبق هو الحالة العامة و الغالبة.

نكشات

1

- **Everyone** in my class frequently plays football and other sports.

الـ **each** و الـ **every** لما يجي بعدهم أي كلمة بتعاملهم
معاملة المفرد ولو دل هالتركيب على جمع.

2

- I **visit** Cairo **once**. ❌- I **have visited** Cairo **once**. ✅

لاحظ أن الجملة السابقة مع وجود **once** لا يمكننا استعمال
الحاضر البسيط فيها، لأن الـ **once** ليس بعدها مدة زمنية
فهي لا تدل على تكرار الفعل و إنما تدل على تجربة
شخصية وهي من استخدامات الحاضر التام.

- I **visit** Cairo **once a year**. ✅

ولكن في حال جاء بعد الـ **once** مدة زمنية فتصبح تدل على
التكرار و بالتالي يمكننا استخدام الحاضر البسيط معها.

3

- I **don't go** to school **on** Fridays.

بس تشوف **On** بعدها أيام الأسبوع أو أسماء العطل بصيغة
الجمع تستخدم معها الحاضر البسيط.

4

$S + V_1$ $\frac{whenever}{wherever}$ $S + V_1$

- **Whenever** he **is sick**, he **goes** to the doctor.- **Wherever** I **go** on holidays, I **take** photos.



Grammar

Present continuous

رابط شرح الدرس

Form

Subject + **be** + V_{ing} + Complement

I: am

He / She / it: is

We / You / They: are

Uses

1 - Actions that are happening now:

أفعال تحدث في نفس لحظة الكلام.

- We **are studying** English now.

2- Temporary present actions & trends:

أفعال تحدث في الزمن الحاضر ولكن ليست بالضرورة تحدث في هذه اللحظة بالذات، بالإضافة للأحداث الشائعة والمتغيرة.

- People **are using** computers very much nowadays.

الناس يستخدمون الحاسوب كثيراً هذه الأيام (الناس يستخدمون الحاسوب في الوقت الحاضر أي أن الفعل مستمر ولكن ليس بالضرورة أن جميع الناس يستخدمون الحاسوب في هذه اللحظة)

3 - Future plans which have been already arranged:

- Samer **is flying** to Cairo next week.

فعل تم التخطيط له منذ مدة و سيحدث في المستقبل، كما يمكنني أن أقول :

- Samer **will fly** to Cairo next week.- Samer **is going** to Cairo next week.

الجمال السابقة جميعها صحيحة و سنكتشف الفرق بينها في درس المستقبل ان شاء الله.

4 - Imperative!

مع الحالة الأمرية.

- Be quiet! the baby **is sleeping**.

Note

عند إضافة **ing** في نهاية الفعل يجب مراعاة الحالات الآتية : عندما تكون نهاية الفعل :

1 - حرف **e** لا يلفظ: نحذف الـ **e** ثم نضيف **ing** :

Make → He is making

وتستثنى من هذه الحالة النهايات (ee - ye - oe)

2 - الحرفين **ie**: تحول الـ **ie** إلى **y** ثم نضيف **ing** :

lie → He is lying

3 - حرف ساكن بين صوتيين: نضاعف الحرف ثم نضيف **ing**:

Run → He is running

وتستثنى من هذه الحالة النهايات (y - x - w) بالإضافة لبعض الكلمات الشاذة تجدها في قسم "النكشات".

4 - ليس أيأ مما سبق: نضيف **ing** فقط بشكل طبيعي.

Start → He is starting

تذكر: الأحرف الصوتية في اللغة الانكليزية :

(i - e - o - u - a)

key words

now	الآن	nowadays	في هذه الأيام
Right now	الآن	These days	في هذه الأيام
At present	في الحاضر	Imperative!	صيغة الأمر
currently	حالياً		
At the moment	في هذه اللحظة		
today	اليوم		
tonight	الليلة		
This + timespan	هذا + زمن		
بالإضافة لأي تركيب يعطي معنى فعل مستمر في الوقت الحاضر.			

Negative

Subject + **be** + **not** + V_{ing} + CI: **am** + **not** + V_{ing}He / She / it: **is** + **not** + V_{ing}We / You / They: **are** + **not** + V_{ing}+ I **am studying** English now.- I **am not studying** English now.

يستخدم الحاضر المستمر لإظهار الحقد و الانتقاد لأفعال تحدث بشكل أكبر من المتوقع، و يستخدم الكلمات :
(always, constantly, continually, forever)

- My roommate **is always throwing** his cloths on the floor.

لاحظ أن مع وجود الـ **always** استعملنا الحاضر المستمر لإظهار الانتقاد لعادة سيئة.

Note

isn't = is not ✓

aren't = are not ✓

amn't ✗

am not ✓

كلمة **nowadays** دليل مشترك بين الحاضر البسيط و الحاضر المستمر ويمكن التفريق بينهما حسب المعنى.

- **Nowadays**, people **encourage** their children to choose a high paying career.

أي أن الناس اعتادت على تشجيع أبنائهم لاختيار مهنة عالية المردود (أصبحت من الثوابت و العادات بين الناس)

- **Nowadays**, **are** people **encouraging** their children to choose a high paying career.

أي أن الناس في الوقت الحاضر يشجعون أبنائهم لاختيار مهنة عالية المردود (راجع الاستخدام 2)

ومع ذلك، فإن أسئلة الامتحان واضحة و لا يمكن أن تأتي أي جملة بدون دليل قاطع فالمفاضلة بين الإجابات لا تكون حسب المعنى عادةً.

- I'm so good at math, **am not I?** ✗

- I'm so good at math, **are not I?** ✓

Note

Question tags

تذكر

- They **studied** hard, **didn't they?**

- She **studies** hard, **doesn't she?**

- We **have studied** hard, **haven't we?**

- He **had** his breakfast, **didn't he?**

- She is beautiful, **isn't she?**

- I'm not always late, **am I?**

النفي → الإثبات | الإثبات → نفي

نكشات

1

هناك بعض الأفعال في اللغة الانكليزية لا تقبل الاستمرار (أي لا تقبل الـ **ing**)، لذلك لا يمكننا استخدام معها الحاضر المستمر فنعيد الجملة للحاضر البسيط.

- I'm **not understanding** anything now. ✗

- I **don't understand** anything now. ✓



لمشاهدة جميع الحالات و شرحها و باقي التفاصيل تابع شرح درس الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار :

- I'm **writting** her a letter. ✗

- I'm **writing** her a letter. ✓

2

لاحظ أن في بعض الحالات حتى لو جاء حرف ساكن بين صوتيين لا يتم مضاعفته ويبقى واحداً، و هنا بعض الأمثلة على كلمات أخرى من نفس النوع :

listening
offering
answering
limiting
canceling

opening
happening
ordering
gathering

visiting
developing
benefiting
traveling

ممکن تجي تصحيح خطأ.

Present perfect



رابط شرح الدرس

Form

Subject + $\frac{have}{has}$ + V₃ + Complement

He / She / it: + has

I / We / You / They: + have

Uses

1- Past actions with indefinite time span:

فعل حدث في الماضي و لم نحدد زمن حدوثه، اذا حددنا زمن الحدث يصبح الزمن ماضياً بسيطاً.

- I **have broken** my leg.

- I **broke** my leg last week.

2- An action which its result is in present:

اذا كان هناك نتيجة لفعل ما في الزمن الحاضر، فإن زمن هذا الفعل يكون حاضراً تاماً، **بالمختصر** : عندما ترى جملة سبب و نتيجة تقسمها الى قسمين إذا وجدت أن جملة النتيجة زمنها أي زمن حاضراً، فإن جملة السبب يكون زمنها حاضراً تاماً.

سبب (في الحاضر التام) ← نتيجة (في أي زمن حاضراً)

- Omar has passed his exams, **that's** why he is very happy.

السبب : has passed (نجح في الاختبارات)

النتيجة : he is very happy (هو سعيد الآن)

- I have lost my keys, **so** I can't open the door now.

السبب : I have lost my keys (ضيعت المفاتيح)

النتيجة : I can't open the door (لا أستطيع فتح الباب)

- I'm late **because** I have missed the bus.

السبب : I have missed the bus (لم ألحق الحافلة)

النتيجة : I am late (أنا متأخر)

Note

بعض أدوات التعليل و ترتيب السبب و النتيجة معهم :

السبب	That's why	النتيجة
السبب	SO	النتيجة
النتيجة	Because	السبب

3- It refers to an experience:

يدل على تجربة شخصية قام بها الشخص من دون ذكر زمن.

- I **have seen** this movie before.

Note

كلمة **Before** اذا جاء بعدها كلام فهي تدل على مقارنة أفعال (مين صار أول) و ليست دليل للحاضر التام حصراً.

- أما اذا جاءت في آخر الكلام فهي تدل على تجربة شخصية و بالتالي هي دليل للحاضر التام.

4- It focuses on the achievement:

الحاضر التام يركز على كمية العمل المنجز خلال فترة زمنية وليس على الفترة الزمنية بحد ذاتها.

- I **have written** two stories.

- Salma **has passed** her driving test.

key words

already	مسبقاً	recently	مؤخراً
just	للتو	lately	مؤخراً
yet	ليس بعد	Since	منذ
before	من قبل	for	لمدة
Throughout history	عبر التاريخ	In recent years	في السنوات الأخيرة
never	أبداً	So far	حتى الآن
ever	في أي وقت مضى	Until now	حتى الآن

In / over the last few years خلال السنوات الأخيرة

بالإضافة لأي تركيب يعطي معنى انتهاء الفعل قبل الوقت الحاضر من دون تحديد زمن، و السبب و النتيجة.

Negative

Subject + $\frac{have}{has}$ + not + V₃ + CHe / She / it: + has + not + V₃I / We / You / They: + have + not + V₃

عند إضافة الفعلين المساعدین (have – has) في الجملة
لا نعيد الفعل الأساسي في الجملة إلى صيغة المصدر.

+ I **have seen** this movie before.- I **have not seen** this movie before.لاحظ كيف خيلنا ال **seen** بال V₃

نكشات

1

ال **never** ممكن أن تأتي أيضاً كدليل للحاضر البسيط، ولكن
يمكنك التفريق بينها وبين الحاضر التام من المعنى:

- He **never plays** tennis.

هو لا يلعب التنيس عادةً أو خلال روتينه اليومي ولكن
يمكن أن يكون قد جرب هذه اللعبة من قبل.

- He **has never** played tennis.

هو لم يجرب في حياته أن يلعب التنيس أبداً.

2

الفرق بين ال **gone** و ال **been**

been	gone
ذهب و عاد	ذهب و لم يعد بعد
كلاهما يمثلان التصريف الثالث من الفعل Go	

- to Egypt?

A - have you ever gone ✗

B - have you ever been ✓

و هنا نسأل شخص **أمامنا** عن تجربة شخصية (أي ذهب إلى
مصر وعاد)

3

- I **have had** an accident. (Present perfect)- I **had** an accident last week. (past simple)الفرق بين ال **since** و ال **for**

4

for	since		
لمدة	منذ		
تركز على مدة استمرار الفعل	تركز على لحظة بدء الفعل		
أمثلة لاستخداماتهما مع الحاضر التام :			
for	minutes	since	Last week
	hours		S + V ₂
	days		2:30
	weeks		1981
	months		Breakfast Lunch
	years		...

5

يمكن أن تأتي **Since** بمعنى : لأن في بعض الجمل.- He **is** so happy **since** he **has passed** his exam.

وهنا عدنا الى حالة السبب والنتيجة.

6

الكلمة **yet** تأتي فقط مع النفي و السؤال.- Have you eaten **yet**?- I have **already** eaten.

Note

قد تأتي **yet** كأداة ربط بمعنى "مع ذلك" في السؤال
بدل الموضوع :

- She studied hard for the exam, **yet** she didn't pass.- لقد درست بجد للامتحان، **مع ذلك** فهي لم تنجح

7

- Hani **has studied** history this year. ✓- Hani **is studying** history this year. ✓

في الجملة الأولى الفعل منتهي، أما في الجملة الثانية
الفعل مستمر في هذه اللحظة (أو في الوقت الحاضر)

Present perfect continuous



رابط شرح الدرس

Form

Subject + $\frac{have}{has}$ + been + V_{ing} + C

He / She / it: + has been

I / We / You / They: + have been

Uses

1 - An action started in the past and still going in the present:

فعل بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمراً حتى هذه اللحظة.

- I **have been waiting** here for 2 hours.

أي أنني بدأت الانتظار قبل ساعتان، مرت ساعتين و أنا مازلت أنتظر حتى هذه اللحظة، أي أن الفعل مستمر.

2 - A repeated action up to the present:

فعل يحدث بشكل متكرر بدأ في الماضي ولا يزال يحدث بشكل متكرر حتى الوقت الحاضر.

- Sami **has been playing** on the guitar since he was a child.

سامي يلعب الغيتار بشكل متكرر أو متقطع منذ أن كان طفلاً حتى اليوم (ليس بالضرورة أنه يلعب الآن ولكنه مازال يمارس الفعل بين الحين والآخر).

3 - An action which ends just before the present, leaving a trace:

فعل بدأ في الماضي، استمر لفترة معينة ثم انتهى قبل لحظة الكلام بقليل (عادةً ما تكون آثاره موجودة لحظة الكلام).

- Marwan **has been swimming**, that's why **his hair is wet**.

بالرغم من وجود سبب و نتيجة في هذه الجملة إلا أننا استعملنا الحاضر التام المستمر بسبب وجود أثر للفعل.

3 - It focuses on the period rather than the achievement:

الحاضر التام المستمر يركز على الفترة الزمنية التي استمر فيها الفعل و ليس على الفعل بحد ذاته.

- I **have been writing** a story for 3 weeks.

Note

يركز على المدة الزمنية = حاضر تام مستمر
يركز على الفعل نفسه = حاضر تام بسيط

key words

All + time	كل + زمن	recently	مؤخراً
How long	كم استغرق	lately	مؤخراً
for	لمدة	Since	منذ
before	من قبل	The whole	كل + زمن
stative verbs		الأفعال الساكنة (هي دليل عكسي	
		أي أنك اذا رأيت فعل لا يقبل الاستمرار تعلم فوراً أن يجب ألا تستخدم الحاضر التام المستمر)	
بالإضافة لأي تركيب يعطي معنى بدأ الفعل بالماضي و استمراره حتى هذه اللحظة أو وجود أثر ظاهر.			

Negative

Subject + $\frac{have}{has}$ + not + been + V_{ing} + C

He / She / it: + has + not + been + V_{ing}

I / We / You / They: + have + not + been + V_{ing}

+ She **has been studying** all day.

+ She **hasn't been studying** all day.

Note

أثر = حاضر تام مستمر
سبب و نتيجة = حاضر تام بسيط

نكشات

1

هناك بعض الأفعال في اللغة الانكليزية لا تقبل الاستمرار (أي لا تقبل الـ **ing**) , لذلك لا يمكننا استخدام معها الحاضر التام المستمر فنعيد الجملة للحاضر التام البسيط.

- I **have been knowing** him for years now. ✗
- I **have known him** for years now. ✓



لمشاهدة جميع الحالات و شرحها و
باقي التفاصيل تابع شرح درس
الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار :

استزادة : التركيب **for years now** دلني أن الفعل بدأ منذ سنوات و استمر حتى هذه اللحظة.

2

مقارنة بين الحاضر التام و الحاضر التام المستمر

Present perfect	Present perfect continuous
فعل بدأ في الماضي و استمر لفترة معينة ثم انتهى قبل الوقت الحاضر.	فعل بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمراً حتى هذه اللحظة أو آثاره مازالت موجودة.
يركز على كمية العمل المنجز	يركز على المدة الزمنية
يوجد نتيجة ترتبت على حدوث الفعل	أثر الفعل مازال موجوداً
يمكن استخدامه مع الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار	لا يمكن استخدامه مع الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار



شرح الجدول مع أمثلة موجود
على اليوتيوب :

- Is the floor clean?

= Yes, Ahmad **has cleaned** the floor.

هو يسأل ما إذا كانت الأرض نظيفة أم لا , ليس هناك أثر ظاهر على قيام أحدهم بتنظيف الأرض.

- The floor **is wet**!

= Yes, Ahmad **has been cleaning** the floor.

هناك أثر ظاهر (الأرض المبتلة) و بالتالي استنتجنا أن الفعل انتهى منذ عدة ثوانٍ و آثاره مازالت موجودة.

3

انتبه : الـ **for** ليست دائماً بمعنى (لمدة), فهي قد تأتي كحرف جر بمعنى (لأجل / لدى)

لمدة - I have known him **for** years.

لدى - He worked **for** my father in 2009.

لأجل - She is famous **for** her teaching.

الخلاصة : الـ **for** بعدها زمن هي فقط التي تدل على الحاضر التام, أي تكون بمعنى (لمدة).



Choose the correct answer

1. I..... your exams start tomorrow.

- A. am knowing B. would knew C. have been knowing D. know

2. It is raining now, but the sun

- A. is shining B. shine C. shines D. shining

3. I'm learning a bit of Arabic, but not very much. I some of the things that people say.

- A. am understanding B. understand C. understanding D. was understanding

4. I Jack last night.

- A. see B. sees C. saw D. have seen

5. I..... him for months.

- A. haven't seen B. hadn't seen C. am not seeing D. wasn't seeing

6. Have you won a competition?

- A. just B. never C. since D. ever

7. I a writing competition in 2006.

- A. win B. wins C. won D. have won

8. I have bought a new tab.

- A. just B. already C. since D. both A and B

9. How long your computer?

- A. have you been using B. have you used C. are you using D. both A and B

10. I my computer for at least three years. Maybe longer.

- A. am using B. has used C. had used D. have been using

11. So, Jack is your best friend. him when you were at university?

- A. Did you meet B. Have you met C. Are you meeting D. Do you meet

12. We have been friends more than ten years.

- A. never B. since C. for D. ever

13. Nada: Why are you sweating?

Jane: Because I the floors.

- A. sweep B. will sweep C. had been sweeping D. have been sweeping

14. Nada: Is the lawn finished?

Jane: Yes, George the grass.

- A. cuts B. has cut C. is cutting D. was cutting

15. Nada: Rachel, why are your hands so soft?

Rachel: Because I the washing up.

- A. will do B. would do C. had done D. have been doing

16. Nada: Are the onions ready for the pan?

Jane: Yes, Mike them.

- A. peel B. peels C. has peeled D. will peel

17. Nada: George, you look tired.

George: Yes, I the grass.

- A. have been cutting B. had cut C. will cut D. would cut

Answers:

1 - D

2 - A

3 - B

4 - C

5 - A

6 - D

7 - C

8 - D

9 - D

10 - D

11 - A

12 - C

13 - D

14 - B

15 - D

16 - C

17 - A



18. Nada: Tom, your hands are very cold.

Tom: Yes, I the fridge.

- A. defrost B. will defrost C. have been defrosting D. had been defrosting

19. Nada: Are the floors clean?

Tom: Yes, Jane them.

- A. sweep B. has swept C. is sweeping D. will sweep

20. Nada: Why are your eyes red, Mike?

Mike: Because I the onions.

- A. have been peeling B. had peeled C. will peel D. would peel

21. We the weather is great here.

- A. think B. are thinking C. were thinking D. will think

22. Right now, John in the pool.

- A. was swimming B. is swimming C. swims D. swam

23. We Egypt.

- A. are liking B. have been liking C. like D. were liking

24. hard at the moment?

- A. Do you work B. Have you worked C. Are you working D. Did you work

25. Nada: Are the plates clean?

Mike: Yes, Rachel the washing up.

- A. do B. does C. has done D. had done

26. Nada: Is the fridge all right now?

Mike: Yes, Tom it.

- A. defrost B. defrosted C. has defrosted D. had defrosted

27. I live in a large flat in Madrid. I two sisters.

- A. am having B. has C. have D. has had

28. We at seven o'clock every morning.

- A. get up B. are getting up C. have got up D. gets up

29. I the flat at eight and walk to the university.

- A. leave B. leaves C. left D. leaving

30. I classes at five, and I arrive home at six.

- A. finish B. am finishing C. was finishing D. finished

31. This month, I very hard for my first exams.

- A. am working B. works C. work D. has worked

32. At the moment, I breakfast in the kitchen of our flat.

- A. eat B. ate C. was eating D. am eating

33. My mother coffee, and my sisters are reading magazines now.

- A. drinks B. drank C. had drunk D. is drinking

34. On Saturday afternoons, I tennis with my friends, or I go to the cinema.

- A. play B. played C. has played D. am playing

Answers:

18 - C

19 - B

20 - A

21 - A

22 - B

23 - C

24 - C

25 - C

26 - C

27 - C

28 - A

29 - A

30 - A

31 - A

32 - D

33 - D

34 - A



35. I to Canada last year.

- A. go B. went C. have gone D. have gone

36. you enjoy your trip to Canada last year?

- A. Did B. Do C. Does D. Have

37. I my last trip a lot.

- A. enjoyed B. enjoys C. enjoying D. have been enjoying

38. What you do in Canada?

- A. did B. does C. doing D. done

39. I Niagara Falls and Stanley Park when I was in Canada.

- A. visit B. visited C. have visited D. am visiting

40. to Canada before, Lucy?

- A. Do you go B. Are you going C. Have you gone D. Have you been

41. I a holiday there. I've got my ticket and I'm going next week!

- A. books B. has booked C. booking D. booked

42. A: Where are you and your family going to live?

B: We anything yet.

- A. decided B. hadn't decided C. haven't been deciding D. haven't decided

43. A: Excuse me. Has someone left this mobile here?

B: I don't know. I here all afternoon, but I haven't noticed it until now.

- A. sit B. is sitting C. was sitting D. have been sitting

44. A: Excuse me, have you been standing in this queue for a long time?

B: Yes, I for almost an hour.

- A. queue B. had been queuing C. have been queuing D. queues

45. My brother has had an accident. He both of his legs.

- A. breaks B. has been breaking C. has broken D. is breaking

46. My father is proud of me because I all my tests this year.

- A. have aced B. had been acing C. has aced D. ace

47. In today's norms, people at least 8 hours a day.

- A. work B. are working C. has worked D. have been working

48. First, your name, then you have to sign down there.

- A. have written B. have been writing C. wrote D. write

49. Everybody in my class frequently football.

- A. is playing B. plays C. play D. are playing

50. I am so good at math,?

- A. am I B. am not I C. amn't I D. aren't I

51. I am not so good at math,?

- A. am I B. am not I C. amn't I D. aren't I

52. Basel always his clothes on the ground, that's annoying.

- A. is / leaving B. leaves C. has / left D. leave

Answers:

35 – B

36 – A

37 – A

38 – A

39 – B

40 – D

41 – D

42 – D

43 – D

44 – C

45 – C

46 – A

47 – A

48 – D

49 – B

50 – D

51 – A

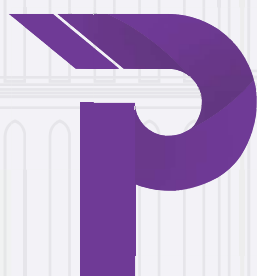
52 – A



Unit number

Success

Module 1 : Learning for life



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



Student book

Reading

Page 20

Success

Success is no accident. It is hard work, **perseverance**, learning, studying, **sacrifice** and most of all, love of what you are doing or learning to do. Success, by definition, means to **1**

Some people **define** success by **measures** such as **wealth**, **position** or **status** and one's **capabilities**. **It is also believed** by many people that **2**, but in many cases, money cannot buy you success. In fact, there are some **factors** which help us be successful.

Start by **setting your goals**. Having a goal is an **essential** thing, but it should be a **smart goal 3** It requires to **stretch your capabilities** and to **stay committed** and **remind** yourself that it is not the end of the road. **One step more**, if there was only one secret to success, **4** It will set you in the best position to execute the **task** with the least difficulty.

Timing also is a **crucial** ingredient to success. The only method of obtaining good timing is **5** Furthermore, one needs confidence to be successful. He has to start with smaller tasks that have a higher chance of success to **build up confidence**. Parents should help their young children **6** and happy in their life. They should discover at an early age the **talents** of their children and help them to **grow their gift** and take care of their **needs** and **interests**.

Actions are louder than words. When you take action, you **trigger** all kinds of things that will **inevitably** carry you to success. Every step taken by you in the direction of your dreams and goals **7** Nothing happens until you take action. To be successful, you have to do what successful people do. All highly successful people are **highly action-oriented** people. It is said: "**Success is 10% inspiration and 90 % perspiration.**"

The golden rule to achieve success is to keep learning. These are three dangerous words: "I know that." If you have read or heard about something, you do not know. If you are not rich and successful the way you want, then you do not know. Become a **'learn it all'** rather than **'know it all'**.

Finally, it is **significant** to know that things do not just happen to your benefit by themselves; you must work hard to make them happen. Life is like a game **8** more than **playing not to lose**.

Read the text and put the phrases A-H in the correct place.

- A** a successful person must be rich
- B** brings you closer at jet speed
- C** in which playing to win matters
- D** accomplish your goals
- E** it would be preparation
- F** through repetition or experience
- G** to build up confidence and become successful
- H** which is achievable

Answers:

- 1 - D
- 2 - A
- 3 - H
- 4 - E
- 5 - F
- 6 - G
- 7 - B
- 8 - C

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّه اهتماماً للتولين.

Translation

النجاح ليس بمحض صدفة. إنه عمل جاد، **إصرار**، تعلم، دراسة، **تضحية**، وقبل كل شيء، محبة ما تفعله أو تتعلمه. النجاح، بحسب تعريفه، يعني **تحقيق أهدافك**.

بعض الناس **يعرّفون** النجاح وفق **معايير** مثل **الثروة**، **المنصب** أو **المنزلة والقدرات الشخصية**. **ويعتقد** من الكثيرين أن الشخص الناجح يجب أن يكون غنياً، لكن في كثير من الحالات، لا يمكن للمال أن يشتري لك النجاح. في الواقع، هناك بعض **العوامل** التي تساعدنا على بلوغ النجاح.

ابدأ بـ **تحديد أهدافك**. وجود هدفٍ أمرٍ **أساسي**، ولكن ينبغي أن يكون **هدفاً ذكياً (مدروساً)** يمكن إنجازه. يتطلب ذلك **توسيع قدراتك والبقاء ملتزماً وتذكير** نفسك بأنه (ما ستواجهه من صعاب) ليس نهاية الدرب. **خطوة أخرى**، إذا كان هناك سر واحد فقط للنجاح، فسيكون **التحضير**. يوفر لك ذلك أفضل حالة لتنفيذ **المهمة** بأقل صعوبة. كما أن **التوقيت** عنصر **مهم** للنجاح. الطريقة الوحيدة للحصول على توقيت جيد تأتي من **التكرار** أو الخبرة. علاوة على ذلك، يحتاج المرء إلى الثقة ليغدو ناجحاً. يجب أن يبدأ بمهام صغيرة ذات فرصة عالية للنجاح من أجل **بناء الثقة**. ينبغي على الآباء مساعدة أطفالهم الصغار لتنمية الثقة وتحقيق النجاح والسعادة في حياتهم. عليهم اكتشاف **مواهب** أطفالهم في سن مبكرة ومساعدتهم على **تطوير موهبتهم والاعتناء بـ احتياجاتهم واهتماماتهم**.

الأفعال أبلغ من الأقوال. عندما تقدم على فعل، فإنك **تفعل** كافة أنواع الأمور التي ستقودك **حتماً** إلى النجاح. كل خطوة تخطوها نحو أحلامك وأهدافك تقربك إليها بسرعة **كبيرة جداً**. لا يحدث شيء حتى تبادر وتتصرف. لتكون ناجحاً، عليك أن تقوم بما يفعله الأشخاص الناجحون. كل الأشخاص الناجحين يتحلون بأن لهم **توجه عملي للغاية**.

يُقال: "النجاح حصيلة 10٪ **إلهام** و90٪ **جهد**".

القاعدة الذهبية لنيل النجاح الاستمرار في التعلم. إليك ثلاث كلمات خطيرة: "أنا أعرف ذلك." إذا كنت قد قرأت أو سمعت عن شيء، فأنت لا تعرف. إذا لم تكن غنياً وناجحاً بالطريقة التي تريدها، فأنت لا تعرف. كن شخصاً **يتعلم كل شيء** بدلاً من أن تكون شخصاً **يعرف كل شيء**.

Preview

الثقة بالنفس	Self-confidence	Opposite ضد	Self-doubt	الشك بالنفس
الريبة	Uncertainty		Understanding	الفهم / التفاهم
الجبن	Cowardice		Courage	الشجاعة
الوضوح	Clarity		Confusion	التشوش / التخبُّط
الخبرة	Experience		Expectancy	التوقع
الكآبة	Sullenness		Smile	الابتسام
قبول الذات	Self-acceptance		Self-rejection	رفض الذات



مفردات النص الأساسية

perseverance	مثابرة	determination to keep trying to achieve something in spite of difficulties
sacrifice	تضحية	when you decide not to have something valuable in order to get something that is more important
trigger	يحفّز / ينشط	to initiate or activate something
inevitably	حتماً	certain to happen and cannot be avoided
perspiration	عمل شاق	hard work

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Success, by definition, means to your goals.

- A) accomplish B) achieve
C) allow D) A+B

2.is the main factor which helps you to be successful.

- A) poverty B) laziness
C) Depression D) setting your goal

3.is the golden rule to achieve success.

- A) To stop learning B) To keep waiting
C) To keep learning D) To keep watching

4.will set you in the best position to do the task with the least difficulty .

- A) preparation B) Demotivation
C) Desperation D) Failure

5. To be a successful man you need.....

- A) inspiration more than perspiration.
B) perspiration less than inspiration.
C) perspiration more than inspiration.
D) None of them is correct.

6. Success is easy and doesn't need hard work.

- A) true
B) false

7. The golden rule to achieve success is to imitate rich people.

- A) true
B) false

8. Setting your goals is one of the main factors to be successful.

- A) true
B) false

Answers:

- 1 - D
2 - D
3 - C
4 - A
5 - C
6 - B
7 - B
8 - A



9. The word "perseverance" means:

- A) determination to keep trying to achieve something in spite of difficulties
- B) when you decide not to have something valuable in order to get something that is more important
- C) to initiate or activate something
- D) certain to happen and cannot be avoided

10. The word "sacrifice" means:

- A) hard work
- B) when you decide not to have something valuable in order to get something that is more important
- C) to initiate or activate something
- D) certain to happen and cannot be avoided

11. The word "perspiration" means:

- A) determination to keep trying to achieve something in spite of difficulties
- B) when you decide not to have something valuable in order to get something that is more important
- C) to initiate or activate something
- D) hard work

12. The word "trigger" means:

- A) determination to keep trying to achieve something in spite of difficulties
- B) to initiate or activate something
- C) certain to happen and cannot be avoided
- D) hard work

13. Finally, it is to know that things do not just happen to your benefit by themselves; you must work hard to make them happen.

- A) significant
- B) crucial
- C) important
- D) all are correct

14. Some people define success by measures such as wealth, position and

- A) factors
- B) experience
- C) confidence
- D) one's capabilities

Answers:

- 9 - A
- 10 - B
- 11 - D
- 12 - B
- 13 - D
- 14 - D



Workbook

Reading

Page 14

Famous Failures Who Refused to Give up

One of the most **destructive** moments in our lives is failure. When we work hard and **keep faith** with clear heart and soul to accomplish something and fail, it will surely have **negative consequences** for our lives. When we fail, life **turns upside down**. Everything seems to **disappear** into thin air. However, most people don't realise that failure acts as a **stepping-stone** towards success. They don't know that we can learn more about our lives when we fail. Throughout history, there have been many famous people who had once the greatest **failures** in their lives, but **later** they could learn from their **experience** and were able to reach the top.

Thomas Edison is by far one of the most famous **inventors** in history. He holds 1,093 **patents** to his name. However, when **attempting** to invent a **commercially-viable electric lightbulb**, he failed over 10,000 times. When asked by a **reporter** how it felt to fail so many times, he **merely stated**: *"I have not failed 10,000 times. I have not failed once. I have succeeded in proving that those 10,000 ways will not work. When I have **eliminated** the ways that will not work, I will find the way that will work."*

Albert Einstein, one of the greatest **thinkers** of our time, didn't speak until he was four-years old. He also failed his **entrance exam** to the **Swiss Federal Polytechnic school** located in **Zurich** at sixteen-years old. And, even his father, up until the time of his death, considered his son to be a major failure. After **eventually graduating** from college, Einstein actually worked as an **insurance salesman**, but **quit** after some time because he failed at that as well.

Bill Gates has **amassed** a **mind-boggling** net worth of close to \$80 billion, and is known as the father of modern personal-computing **software**. He brought us **operating systems** such as Microsoft DOS and Windows, along with wildly-popular titles such as Microsoft Office's Word, Excel and PowerPoint. However, at the age of seventeen-years old, his first software company called, Traf-O-Data, which **analyzed raw traffic logs**, failed.

Walt Disney is the **creative genius** who brought us the likes of Mickey Mouse, Donald Duck and Snow White. He created the Walt Disney Company after his own **namesake**. Yet, he faced many failures. His first company, Laugh-O-Gram went **bankrupt**. It wasn't until 5 years later and **plenty** of **heartache** - after he created Mickey Mouse - did he begin to experience a small **amount** of success and **fame**.

Translation

إحدى اللحظات **المدمرة** في حياتنا هي الفشل. عندما نعمل بجد ونخلص بقلب وروح صافية لتحقيق شيء ما ونفشل، فسيكون لذلك بالتأكيد **عواقب سلبية** على حياتنا. عندما نفشل، **تنقلب الحياة رأساً على عقب**. كل شيء يبدو وكأنه **يختفي** في الهواء. ومع ذلك، لا يدرك معظم الناس أن الفشل **بمثابة حجر الأساس** نحو النجاح. هم لا يعرفون أن بمقدورنا تعلم المزيد عن حياتنا عندما نفشل. على مر التاريخ، كان هناك العديد من الأشخاص المشهورين الذين تعرضوا **لإخفاقات كبيرة** في حياتهم، لكنهم **لاحقاً** تمكنوا من التعلم من تجربتهم ونجحوا في الوصول إلى القمة.

توماس إديسون بلا شك أحد أشهر **المخترعين** في التاريخ. لديه 1093 **براءة اختراع** باسمه. ومع ذلك، عندما **محاولة اختراع مصباح كهربائي قابل للتطبيق تجارياً**، فشل أكثر من 10,000 مرة. حينما سُئل من قبل **مراسل** عن شعوره عند الفشل خلال ذلك العدد الكبير من المرات، **صرح ببساطة**: "لم أفشل 10,000 مرة. لم أفشل مرة واحدة. لقد نجحت في إثبات أن الطرق الـ 10,000 تلك لن تنجح. عندما أكون قد **استبعدت** الطرق التي لن تنجح، سأجد الطريقة التي ستنجح."

ألبرت أينشتاين، أحد أعظم **المفكرين** في عصرنا، لم يتحدث حتى بلغ من العمر أربع سنوات. كما أنه لم يجتاز **امتحان القبول في المدرسة الفيدرالية السويسرية للعلوم التطبيقية** في زيورخ عندما كان في السادسة عشر من عمره. وحتى والده، حتى وقت وفاته، كان يعتبر ابنه فاشلاً كبيراً. بعد **تخرجه** من الجامعة أخيراً، عمل أينشتاين **كمندوب شركة تأمين** في الواقع، لكنه **استقال** بعد فترة لأنه فشل في ذلك أيضاً.

بيل غيتس **جمع** ثروة مذهلة يقرب صافيها من 80 مليار دولار، ويُعرف بأنه **أبو برامج الحوسبة** الشخصية الحديثة. قدم لنا **أنظمة تشغيل** مثل Microsoft DOS و Windows، بالإضافة إلى عناوين شهيرة مثل Microsoft Office's Word و Excel و PowerPoint. ومع ذلك، في سن السابعة عشر، فشلت أول شركة برمجيات له تدعى Traf-O-Data، كانت **تحلل سجلات حركة البيانات الأولية**.

والت ديزني **العبقري المبدع** الذي قدم لنا شخصيات مثل ميكى ماوس، ودونالد داك، وسنو وايت. أنشأ شركة والت ديزني **نسبة إلى اسمه**. ومع ذلك، واجه الفشل عدة مرات. شركته الأولى، Laugh-O-Gram، **أفلس**. لم يشرع إلا بعد خمس سنوات من **الغم والحزن** - بعد أن أنشأ ميكى ماوس - في نيل **قدر** ضئيل من النجاح **والشهرة**.

مفردات النص الأساسية

Bankrupt	الإفلاس	reduced to a state of financial ruins
Eliminate	الإقصاء	put an end to or get rid of
Insurance	تأمين	a means of guaranteeing protection or safety
Stepping stone	حجر الأساس	a means of progress or advancement
Mind-boggling	مثير للدهشة	amazingly or confusingly large, great, etc.
Patent	براءة اختراع	a special document that gives you the right to make or sell a new invention or product



Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Einstein's father considered his son.....

- A) a major failure.
- B) a successful man.
- C) a great thinker.
- D) both A and B

2. When Edison experienced failure,

- A) he eliminated the ways that didn't work and found the way that would work.
- B) he didn't show any reaction.
- C) He felt sad.
- D) he stopped working

3. The bad side of failure is that.....

- A) when we fail, life turns upside down and everything seems to appear into thin air.
- B) we can learn more about our lives when we fail
- C) when we fail, life turns upside down and everything seems to vanish into thin air.
- D) failure makes us feel happy.

4. The good side of failure is that.....

- A) it plays an important role towards success.
- B) it makes us feel sad.
- C) we can't learn more about our lives when we fail.
- D) it makes everything disappear.

5. Disney experienced a period of success.....

- A) before he created Mickey Mouse.
- B) during the creation of Mickey Mouse.
- C) after he created Mickey Mouse.
- D) 10 years ago

6. Success is one of the most destructive moments in our lives.

- A) true
- B) false

7. Thomas Edison is by far one of the most famous thinkers in history.

- A) true
- B) false

8. Einstein's father changed his mind towards his son before his death.

- A) true
- B) false

9. The word "insurance" means:

- A) means of guaranteeing protection or safety
- B) amazingly or confusingly large, great, etc.
- C) a special document that gives you the right to make or sell a new invention or product
- D) put an end to or get rid of

10. The word "patent" means:

- A) amazingly or confusingly large, great, etc.
- B) a means of guaranteeing protection or safety
- C) a means of progress or advancement
- D) a special document that gives you the right to make or sell a new invention or product



11. The word "mind-boggling" means:

- A) amazingly or confusingly large, great, etc.
- B) a means of guaranteeing protection or safety
- C) a means of progress or advancement
- D) put an end to or get rid of

12. The word "stepping stone" means:

- A) put an end to or get rid of.
- B) reduced to a state of financial ruins.
- C) means of guaranteeing protection or safety.
- D) a means of progress o



Answers:

- 1 - A
- 2 - A
- 3 - C
- 4 - A
- 5 - C
- 6 - B
- 7 - B
- 8 - B
- 9 - A
- 10 - D
- 11 - A
- 12 - D

Vocabulary

Success idioms

Back the wrong horse	يراهن على الشخص الخاسر	To support someone you know they will fail
Ace a test	يتفوق في الامتحان	Get a high score in the test
Join the ranks of	ينضم الى / يصبح مع	Become part of
On a roll	يواصل الإنجاز	Making a lot of progress
To be dead in the water	لا أمل مرجو منه	A little / no hope for a thing to be successful in the future

Pronunciation

-ed pronunciation

/t/	/id/	/d/
p - k - c - s - ch - sh - f	t - d	باقي الأحرف
Fin ished - hel ped - wat ched	start ed - remind ed -	scream ed - order ed -

في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا :



انتبه : إذا جاء حرفين أو أكثر و شكلا صوت جديد فتتبع الحرف الذي يخرج كصوت جديد

مثال : كلمة **laughed** نعتبر صوتها **/t/** و ليس **/d/** لأن الحرفين قبل الـ **ed** شكلا صوت الـ **f**

راجع التمرين ص 22 في كتاب الأنشطة أسفل الصفحة



Everyday English

Congratulation

- Congratulations!
- We are proud of you.
- You really deserve this honor.
- Very well done! Keep it up.

showing sympathy

- I'm sorry about what happened.
- You mustn't let this depress you.
- I'm sure this won't happen again.
- I have no doubt that you'll do much better next time.

كلمات مفاتيحية قد تجدها في نص السؤال :

- **Congratulate** your ...
- Your ..., **congratulate** them ...
- Your ..., **passed / succeed / won** ...

- **Show** sympathy ...
- **express** sympathy ...
- Your ..., **failed / lost / accident** ...

Listening

Important vocabs

Take up

يبدأ بشيء جديد

to start or begin something new

Carry on

يواصل

Continue

Give up

يستسلم / يترك

To stop / abandon something



Choose the correct answer

1. The last sound of the -ed in the word 'wanted' is pronounced
A. /t/ B. /d/ C. /id/ D. /it/
2. The last sound of the -ed in the word 'believed' is pronounced
A. /t/ B. /d/ C. /id/ D. /it/
3. The last sound of the -ed in the word 'helped' is pronounced
A. /t/ B. /d/ C. /id/ D. /it/
4. The last sound of the -ed in the word 'called' is pronounced
A. /t/ B. /d/ C. /id/ D. /it/
5. The last sound of the -ed in the word 'ended' is pronounced
A. /t/ B. /d/ C. /id/ D. /it/
6. The last sound of the -ed in the word 'finished' is pronounced
A. /t/ B. /d/ C. /id/ D. /it/
7. Their companies went before they reached a great economic recovery.
A. bankrupt B. insurance C. stepping-stone D. patent
8. Failures are often considered a of success in all areas of life.
A. eliminated B. insurance C. stepping-stone D. patent
9. He obtained for inventing new things.
A. mind-boggling B. insurance C. stepping-stone D. patents
10. Throughout his career, he won a fortune of billions of dollars.
A. insurance B. mind-boggling C. stepping-stone D. patent
11. He retired after failing as a/an employee.
A. bankrupt B. stepping-stone C. patent D. insurance
12. He useless methods until he finally succeeded.
A. eliminated B. insurance C. stepping-stone D. patent
13. His efforts didn't work at all; his project
A. is dead in the water B. backs the wrong horse
C. aces a test D. is on a roll
14. "If you your math test, you can go to the party," said her parents.
A. fit in with B. back C. ace D. reach out
15. I think we are; our team has won ten out of our twelve matches this season.
A. joining the ranks of B. backing the wrong horse
C. on a roll D. dead in the water
16. Don't I think he will lose the match.
A. ace the test B. back the wrong horse
C. be on a roll D. be dead in the water
17. Thousands of young people the unemployed each the summer when they leave school.
A. fit in with B. keep up with
C. get into D. join the ranks of

- Answers:
- 1 - C
 - 2 - B
 - 3 - A
 - 4 - B
 - 5 - C
 - 6 - A
 - 7 - A
 - 8 - C
 - 9 - D
 - 10 - B
 - 11 - D
 - 12 - A
 - 13 - A
 - 14 - C
 - 15 - C
 - 16 - B
 - 17 - D



18. If you study hard enough, you will be able to with no troubles.

- A. back the wrong horse
- B. ace a test
- C. be dead in the water
- D. join the ranks of

19. You really when you picked that swimmer to win the race.

- A. backed the wrong horse
- B. aced a test
- C. were on a roll
- D. joined the ranks of

20. I didn't get the results I was hoping for in my exams. My dream of going to Cambridge University was

- A. backing the wrong horse
- B. acing a test
- C. on a roll
- D. dead in the water

21. In a few years our company should be able to the world's most developed nations.

- A. join the ranks of
- B. back the wrong horse
- C. ace a test
- D. be on a roll

22. This is our fifth win in the game! We are If we keep this up, we are sure to make it to the state championship game!

- A. backing the wrong horse
- B. acing a test
- C. on a roll
- D. joining the ranks of

23. Your school team has won the final in a football competition in your area.

(Choose the appropriate response for the situation)

- A. I'm sorry about what happened.
- B. You mustn't let this depress you.
- C. I'm sure this won't happen again.
- D. Congratulations!

24. You are in hospital visiting a friend who has broken his leg. (Express Sympathy)

- A. Congratulations!
- B. You really deserve this honor.
- C. I'm sorry about what happened.
- D. Very well done! Keep it up.

25. Your little brother has got low marks in the exam. (Express Sympathy)

- A. Congratulations!
- B. You mustn't let this depress you.
- C. You really deserve this honour.
- D. Very well done! Keep it up.

26. Your father has got a new promotion at work. (Choose the appropriate response for the situation)

- A. We are proud of you.
- B. I'm sorry about what happened.
- C. You mustn't let this depress you.
- D. I'm sure this won't happen again.

27. the accident. How are you feeling now?

- A. It is as bad as it seems
- B. You are feeling better soon
- C. It would have been worse
- D. I am sorry about

28. I suppose if you'd landed on the motorway instead of in the trees.

- A. I'll never be able to
- B. I'm sorry about
- C. It is as bad as it seems
- D. it would have been worse

29. It couldn't be worse. I'm sure walk again.

- A. I'll never be able to
- B. I'm sorry about
- C. It is as bad as it seems
- D. you are feeling better soon

30. It is bad luck. But it may not

- A. be able to
- B. be sorry about
- C. be as bad as it seems
- D. you feel better soon

Answers:

- 18 – B
- 19 – A
- 20 – D
- 21 – A
- 22 – C
- 23 – D
- 24 – C
- 25 – B
- 26 – A
- 27 – D
- 28 – D
- 29 – A
- 30 – C

Past simple



رابط شرح الدرس

Form

Subject + V₂ + Complement

V₂: -ed

V₂: irregular

سنجدون الأفعال الشاذة في آخر النوبة

Negative

Subject + **did** + not + V₀ + C

عند إضافة الفعل المساعد **did** في الجملة دائماً نعيد الفعل الأساسي في الجملة إلى صيغة المصدر.

Uses

1 - Finished actions with specific time in the past:

فعل حدث في وقت محدد في الماضي

- She **bought** a new car **last week**.

2 - An ordered series of events in the past:

يستخدم لوصف سلسلة من الأفعال المتتالية في الماضي، و قد يستخدم بعض الكلمات المفتاحية للربط بين الأفعال مثل (then - and - next - , - after that)

- The **burglar** came through the window, **stole** the hand bag **then left**.

3 - A habit used to happen in the past:

للحديث عن عادات في الماضي، و يكون الفرق بينها و بين الحاضر البسيط هو وجود دليل على استمرار هذه العادة في الماضي

- When she was ten, she **often went** to see her grandmother in the afternoon.

لاحظ وجود دلالة دللتنا على أن تكرار العادة في الماضي.

key words

When	عندما
In + past date	في + تاريخ في الماضي
yesterday	البارحة
Last ...	آخر ...
ago	قبل
أو أي تركيب يدل على وقوع الفعل في وقت محدد في الماضي.	

+ I went to school yesterday.

- I **did not** go to school yesterday.

لاحظ كيف رجعنا الـ **went** للـ V₀

Note

تذكر : عند إضافة **ed** في نهاية الفعل يجب مراعاة الحالات الآتية : **عندما تكون نهاية الفعل :**

1 - حرف **e**: نضع فقط حرف الـ **d**:

Use → He **used**

2 - الحرف **y** وقبله حرف ساكن: نحذف الـ **y** ونضيف **ied**

Study → He **studied**

3 - الحرف **y** وقبله حرف صوتي: نضيف **ed** ولا نحذف **y** :

Play → He **played**

4 - حرف ساكن بين صوتيين: نضاعف الحرف ثم نضيف **ed**:

Plan → He **planned**

وتستثنى من هذه الحالة النهايات (y - x - w) بالإضافة لبعض الكلمات الشاذة تجدها في قسم "النكشات".

5 - ليس أيأ مما سبق: نضيف **ed** فقط بشكل طبيعي.

Start → He **started**

6 - فعل شاذ: لا يمكن إضافة **ed** ولكن له شكل جديد.

write → He **wrote**

تذكر: الأحرف الصوتية في اللغة الانكليزية :

(i - e - o - u - a)

نكشات

1

- She covered the pan. ✗

- She covered the pan. ✓

لاحظ أن في بعض الحالات حتى لو جاء حرف ساكن بين
صوتين لا يتم مضاعفته ويبقى واحداً، وهنا بعض الأمثلة
على كلمات أخرى من نفس النوع :

listened
offered
answered
limited
canceled

opened
happened
ordered
gathered

visited
developed
benefited
traveled

ممکن تجي تصحيح خطأ.

2

عند السؤال عن الفاعل (عاقل أو غير عاقل) في الماضي
البسيط لا نستعمل الفعل المساعد **did** :

- Who called you? ✓

- Who did call you? ✗

- Ahmad called me. فاعل عاقل

- What happened? ✓

- What did happen? ✗

- An accident happened. فاعل غير عاقل

3

Present perfect

يمكن أن يكون الفعل مازال
مستمراً (يربط الحاضر مع
الماضي)

We've lived here for 6
years.

نحن سكنا هنا لمدة ست سنوات
(مازلنا نسكن هنا)

I have read this story.

لا يوجد تحديد زمن في الماضي

Past simple

الفعل منتهي في الماضي

We lived here for 6
years.

نحن سكنا هنا لمدة ست سنوات
(لم نعد نسكن هنا)

I read this story last
month.

يوجد تحديد زمن في الماضي

Grammar

Past continuous



رابط شرح الدرس

Form

Subject + **be** + V_{ing} + Complement

He / She / it: was

I / We / You / They: were

Uses

1 - An action in the past which interrupted by other action & Background scenes:

تقاطع زمني بين فعلين في الماضي (أي فعل حدث خلال الوقت الذي كان فيه الآخر مستمراً) و له حالتين :

① $\frac{\text{While}}{\text{as}} + S + \frac{\text{was}}{\text{were}} + V_{ing} \rightarrow S + V_2$

- The phone **rang** while she **was cooking**.

② $\text{When} + S + V_2 \rightarrow S + \frac{\text{was}}{\text{were}} + V_{ing}$

- We **were driving** home when suddenly it **started** to rain.

2 - Actions that are happening at the same time in the past:

أفعال تحدث في نفس الوقت في الماضي (تزامن).

- We **were reading** while Ahmad **was writing** his homework.

key words

When / as	عندما
while	بينما

Negative

Subject + **be** + not + V_{ing} + CHe / She / it: was + not + V_{ing}I / We / You / They: were + not + V_{ing}

+ I **was studying** English.

- I **was not studying** English.

Note

تذكر : عند إضافة **ing** في نهاية الفعل يجب مراعاة الحالات الآتية : عندما تكون نهاية الفعل :

1 - حرف **e** لا يلفظ: نحذف الـ **e** ثم نضيف **ing** :

Make → He was **making**

وتستثنى من هذه الحالة النهايات (ee - ye - oe)

2 - الحرف **ie**: نحول الـ **ie** إلى **y** ثم نضيف **ing** :

lie → He was **lying**

3 - حرف ساكن بين صوتيين: نضاعف الحرف ثم نضيف **ed** :

Run → He was **Running**

وتستثنى من هذه الحالة النهايات (y - x - w) بالإضافة لبعض الكلمات الشاذة تجدها في قسم "النكشات".

4 - ليس أي مما سبق: نضيف **ing** فقط بشكل طبيعي.

Start → He was **starting**

تذكر: الأحرف الصوتية في اللغة الانكليزية :

(i - e - o - u - a)

نكشات

1

هناك بعض الأفعال في اللغة الانكليزية لا تقبل الاستمرار (أي لا تقبل الـ **ing**)، لذلك لا يمكننا استخدام معها الماضي المستمر فنعيد الجملة للماضي البسيط.

- I **wasn't understanding** anything he said. ✗

- I **didn't understand** anything he said. ✓



لمشاهدة جميع الحالات و شرحها و باقي التفاصيل تابع شرح درس الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار :

- I was writ**ting** her a letter. ✗

- I was writ**ing** her a letter. ✓

2

لاحظ أن في بعض الحالات حتى لو جاء حرف ساكن بين صوتيين لا يتم مضاعفته ويبقى واحداً، و هنا بعض الأمثلة على كلمات أخرى من نفس النوع :

listening
offering
answering
limiting
canceling

opening
happening
ordering
gathering

visiting
developing
benefiting
traveling

يمكن تجي تصحيح خطأ.

3 مساعدة في استخدام الـ when كدليل :

1 - تقاطع زمني : حدث أول قطع حدث آخر مستمر في الماضي.

$when + S + V_2 \rightarrow S + \frac{was}{were} + V_{ing}$

- We **were driving** home **when** suddenly it **started** to rain.

لاحظ أن حدث هطول المطر قطع الفعل المستمر (القيادة) يمكن أن تجد معها كلمة suddenly للدلالة على القطع.

2 - ترتيب زمني في الماضي : حدثين في الماضي نحاول أن نبين أيهما حدث أولاً، ولها حالتان :

$when + S + V_2 \rightarrow S + had + V_3$

- **When** we **arrived** to the station, the train **had already left**.

لاحظ أن فعل مغادرة القطار حدث أولاً لذلك استخدمنا معه الماضي التام (الماضي التام هو ماضي الماضي البسيط، أي أقدم منه كترتيب زمني) وفي هذه الحالة غالباً ستجد دليل على الماضي التام في الطرف الآخر مثل - **already** **before** أما إذا لم تجد دليل للتام فستختار الماضي البسيط أو تنظر للخيارات و تحدد اختيارك.

$when + S + V_2 \rightarrow S + V_2$

- **When** we **arrived** to the station, the train **left**.

الخلاصة : الحالتان صحيحتان، أي الماضي البسيط و الماضي التام و يمكنك تحديد الجواب عن طريق وجود دليل للماضي التام أو عن طريق الخيارات الخاصة بالسؤال.

تذكر : أن الـ **when** هي عبارة زمنية و لا يمكن اختصارها فقط على أزمنة الماضي، و لكن حسب الحالات السابقة دائماً ستجد دليل لاستخدامها مع الماضي.

4

دائماً نستعمل الماضي المستمر مع هذا التعبير :

At + past time

- **At this time yesterday**, I **was watching** TV.

- What **were you doing** **at eight o'clock last night**?

Grammar

past perfect



رابط شرح الدرس

Form

Subject + **had** + V₃ + Complement

Uses

1 - A completed past action before another past action:

فعلين حدثا في الماضي، الذي حصل أولاً زمنه ماضي تام.

- His father **was** composer and his grandfather **had** also **been** a musician.

أي أن جده كان مطرباً قبل أي يكون أباه ملحناً، و الفعلان حدثا في الماضي ولكن أحدهما سبق الآخر لذا هذا هو الترتيب الزمني المنطقي للجملة.

2 - With time clauses:

يستخدم مع العبارات الزمنية و أيضاً الهدف منه توضيح أي الفعلين الماضيين سبق الآخر.

when	+ S + V ₂ → S + had + V ₂	
Before		
By the time		

- **By the time** he **was** 17, Mozart's reputation **had** already **begun** to spread through Europe.

After	+ S + had + V ₃ → S + V ₂	
Until		
As soon as		

- My father **retired** **after** he **had finished** his project.

ملاحظة: إذا لم تجد ماضي تام ضمن الخيارات في الامتحان يمكنك استخدام الماضي البسيط.

- My father **retired** **after** he **finished** his project.

3 - An action which its result is in past simple:

إذا كان هناك نتيجة لفعل ما في الزمن الماضي البسيط، فإن زمن هذا الفعل يكون ماضي تام، **بالمختصر** : عندما ترى جملة سبب و نتيجة تقسمها الى قسمين إذا وجدت أن جملة النتيجة زمنها ماضي بسيط، فإن جملة السبب يكون زمنها ماضي تام.

سبب (في الماضي التام) ← نتيجة (في الماضي البسيط)

- Hani **passed** all his exams **because** he **had studied** hard.

Note

I **had been** = I'd **been**

I **would be** = I'd **be**

ويمكن التفريق بين اختصار الـ **had** و اختصار الـ **would** عن طريق الفعل الذي بعدهما إذا ما كان **بالمصدر** أم **V₃**

Negative

Subject + **had** + not + V₃ + C

عند إضافة الفعل المساعد **had** في جملة **لا** نعيد الفعل الأساسي في هذه الجملة إلى صيغة المصدر.

+ I **had seen** this movie before I slept.

- I **had not seen** this movie before I slept.

لاحظ كيف خيلنا الـ **seen** بالـ **V₃**

Present perfect

Past perfect

قبل الحاضر
Before now.

قبل الماضي
Before then.
(ماضي الماضي)

That man **looks** familiar, I have seen him before.

That man **looked** familiar, I had seen him before.

نكشات

1

كلمة **Before** إذا جاء بعدها كلام فهي تدل على مقارنة أفعال (مين صار أول).

- أما إذا جاءت في آخر الكلام فهي تدل على تجربة شخصية و بالتالي هي دليل للحاضر التام.

- I **had read** that book **before** I **started** working on my own book.

- I **have read** that book **before**.

- وفي حال كانت التجربة في الماضي:

- My brother **was nervous**, he **hadn't flown** **before**.

لاحظ أننا استخدمنا الماضي التام مع التجربة لأن زمن الجملة أساساً في الماضي (أي كان متوتراً لأنه لم يجرب الطيران قبل كونه متوتراً - أي قبل الحدث الماضي-)

2

انتبه للأفعال المساعدة لأنها تحدد زمن الجملة

- I **had** a busy week. → **past simple**

- I **have had** a busy week. → **present perfect**

- I **had had** a busy week. → **past perfect**

3

في بعض الأحيان : **because = that**

- I **felt** annoyed **that** they **hadn't waited** for me.

4

يمكن أن تأتي جملة السبب و النتيجة بدون كلمة تعبر عن السبب و النتيجة مثل **because** و لكن يكون سياق الجملة واضحاً أنها كذلك.

- Hani **passed** his exams, he **had studied** hard.

- We **went** to see Ali in the hospital, he **had broken** his leg.

- She **went** to the police station, someone **had stolen** her purse.

لاحظ أن الجملتين مترابطتين في كل مثال، عدا عن أن الترتيب الزمني واضح كما يمكن وضع كلمة **Because** نيابة عن الفاصلة.

5

- In 1980, thousands of people **left** the country.

- في عام 1980, آلاف الناس غادرت البلاد, الفعل يحدث في وقت محدد في الماضي.

- Since 1980, thousands of people **have left** the country.

- منذ عام 1980, آلاف الناس غادرت البلاد, الفعل يحدث منذ وقت محدد من الماضي حتى الوقت الحاضر أو يمكن أن يكون انتهى قبل الوقت الحاضر بقليل.

- By 1980, thousands of people **had left** the country.

- بحلول عام 1980, آلاف الناس غادرت البلاد, الفعل يحدث قبل وقت محدد من الماضي (يعني ماضي الماضي).

Grammar

Past perfect continuous



رابط شرح الدرس

Form

Subject + **had** + been + V_{ing} + C

Uses

1 - An action began in the past and was still in progress before another past action started:

فعل بدأ في الماضي و استمر لمدة معينة قبل أن يبدأ فعل ماضي آخر.

- We **had been waiting for** an hour when the bus finally **arrived**.

أي أننا انتظرنا لمدة ساعة ثم وصلت الحافلة، و فعل وصول الحافلة حدث في الماضي.

2 - It focuses on the period rather than the achievement:

الماضي التام المستمر يركز على الفترة الزمنية التي استمر فيها الفعل و ليس على الفعل بحد ذاته.

- Times **were** hard, and the family **had been struggling for** some time.

Note

يركز على المدة الزمنية = ماضي تام مستمر

يركز على الفعل نفسه = ماضي تام بسيط

key words

for	لمدة	Since	منذ
stative verbs		الأفعال الساكنة (هي دليل عكسي أي أنك إذا رأيت فعل لا يقبل الاستمرار تعلم فوراً أن يجب ألا تستخدم الماضي التام المستمر)	
		بالإضافة لأي تركيب يعطي معنى بدأ الفعل بالماضي و استمراره حتى لحظة ما في الماضي قبل بدء فعل آخر.	

Negative

Subject + **had** + not + been + V_{ing} + C

+ She **had been studying** all day.

+ She **hadn't been studying** all day.

نكشات

1

هناك بعض الأفعال في اللغة الانكليزية لا تقبل الاستمرار (أي لا تقبل الـ **ing**)، لذلك لا يمكننا استخدام معها الماضي التام المستمر فنعيد الجملة للماضي التام البسيط.

- I **had been knowing** him for years. ❌

- I **had known** him for years. ✅



لمشاهدة جميع الحالات و شرحها و باقي التفاصيل تابع شرح درس الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار :

2

Past perfect

فعل بدأ في الماضي و استمر لفترة معينة ثم انتهى قبل فعل ماضي آخر.

يركز على كمية العمل المنجز

يمكن استخدامه مع الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار

Past perfect continuous

فعل بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمراً حتى بدء فعل ماضي آخر.

يركز على المدة الزمنية

لا يمكن استخدامه مع الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار



Time clauses



رابط شرح الدرس

Definition

العبارات الزمنية هي جمل في اللغة الانكليزية تحوي كلمات تسمى كلمات الوقت مثل (when – after – before) تفيد في معرفة ترتيب أفعال الجملة زمنياً، و تقسم الجملة الى قسمين، سنسميهما **القسم القريب** و **القسم البعيد** عن كلمة الزمن لتسهيل الفهم.

و المقصود **بالقسم القريب** هو الفعل الذي يأتي بعد كلمة الزمن مباشرة، مثال:

- I went to sleep **after** I had dinner.

و القسم القريب هنا هو : I had dinner لأنه جاء بعد **after** مباشرة.

و المقصود **بالقسم البعيد** هو الفعل الذي يأتي قبل كلمة الزمن أو يأتي بعدها ولكن ليس مباشرة، مثال:

- I went to sleep **after** I had dinner.

- **After** I had dinner, I went to sleep.

و القسم البعيد هنا هو : I went to sleep لأنه جاء قبل **after** في الجملة الأولى، ولم يأت بعدها مباشرة في الجملة الثانية.

Uses

العبارات الزمنية تستخدم بشكل أساسي للربط بين الجمل و توضيح ترتيب الأفعال فيها، لذلك يمكن أن تأتي مع جميع الأزمنة في اللغة ولها العديد من الاستخدامات و لكن سنتحدث عن الاستخدامات المشهورة في كتابنا:

1- Future actions:

للدلالة على أفعال ستحدث في المستقبل.

After		
Before		
By the time	القسم القريب	القسم البعيد
when	+ S + V ₁	→ S + $\frac{will}{won't}$ + V ₀
Until	حاضر بسيط	مستقبل بسيط
As soon as		

- As soon as Bilal graduates, he'll travel to London.

- Lana **will** get a new phone **after** she **sells** the old one.

2 – Past actions:

للمقارنة بين أفعال حدثت في الماضي.

when	القسم القريب	القسم البعيد
Before	+ S + V ₂	→ S + had + V ₃
By the time	ماضي بسيط	ماضي تام

After	القسم القريب	القسم البعيد
Until	+ S + had + V ₃	→ S + V ₂
As soon as	ماضي تام	ماضي بسيط

- As soon as Bilal **had** graduated, he **traveled** to London.

- The play **had** begun **by the time** we **got** to the theatre.

أما إذا لم تتوفر أدلة أو سياق مناسب لوجود الماضي التام، أو لم تجد ماضي تام ضمن الخيارات، يمكنك القول :

After		
Before		
By the time	القسم القريب	القسم البعيد
when	+ S + V ₂	→ S + V ₂
Until	ماضي بسيط	ماضي بسيط
As soon as		

- Lana **got** a new phone **after** she **sold** the old one.

- She **cooked** dinner **by the time** he **got** home.



3 – Habits / Routines and truths:

للحديث عن العادات المتكررة أو الحقائق (أي استخدامات الحاضر البسيط نفسها)

After	القسم القريب + S + V₁ حاضر بسيط → القسم البعيد S + V₁ حاضر بسيط	
Before		
By the time		
when		
Until		
As soon as		

- I always **brush** my teeth **before** I **go** to school.
- Water **freezes** **when** it **reaches** 0 degrees.

استزادة

إذا واجهتك جملة ليست ضمن أي حالة من الحالات السابقة، يمكنك اعتماد مبدأ: **الزمن القديم – الزمن الحديث**.

المقصود بال**زمن القديم**: هو الزمن الذي ترتيبه يسبق على الخط الزمني. (أي الأقدم)

و المقصود بال**زمن الحديث**: هو الزمن الذي يأتي ترتيبه تالياً على الخط الزمني. (أي الأحدث)

- The play **had begun** **by the time** we **got** to the theatre.

الزمن القديم : had begun

الزمن الحديث : got

وذلك لأن الماضي التام أقدم من الماضي البسيط.

when	القسم القريب الزمن الحديث → القسم البعيد الزمن القديم	
Before		
By the time		

After	القسم القريب الزمن القديم → القسم البعيد الزمن الحديث	
Until		
As soon as		

السبب و النتيجة

كما نعلم، في الترتيب المنطقي للجمل يأتي السبب (الفعل) ثم تأتي نتيجته و بالتالي منطقياً يجب أن يكون زمن النتيجة أحدث من زمن السبب، وهنا أشهر الحالات:

زمن السبب	زمن النتيجة
Present simple	Present perfect
Present continuous	Present perfect
Past simple	Past simple
	Past perfect
Past perfect	Past perfect

بعض أدوات التعليل و ترتيب السبب و النتيجة معهم :

السبب	That's why	النتيجة
السبب	SO	النتيجة
النتيجة	Because	السبب

- I'm late **because** I **have missed** the bus.
- I **was** late **because** I **missed** the bus.
- I **was** late **because** I **had missed** the bus.
- I **had been** late **because** I **had missed** the bus.



Choose the correct answer

1. A few weeks ago, a woman to report a robbery at her house.

- A. calls B. is calling
C. called D. has called

2. It happened at four in the afternoon when she news on TV.

- A. watches B. was watching
C. is watching D. has watched

3. While she was watching the TV, the burglar in through the front door.

- A. came B. comes
C. has come D. had come

4. Times were hard and the family for some time.

- A. struggle B. has struggled
C. will struggle D. had been struggling

5. When she came into the room, the burglar

- A. leaves B. is leaving
C. had already left D. has left

6. What time yesterday morning?

- A. do you wake up B. did you wake up
C. have you woken up D. will you wake up

7. What after you woke up?

- A. do you do B. have you done
C. had you done D. did you do

8. Did anything happen while you TV?

- A. are watching B. watch
C. watched D. were watching

9. What when your husband came home?

- A. do you do B. have you done
C. are you doing D. were you doing

10. She as a waitress for three years when he met her.

- A. works B. had been working
C. is working D. has worked

11. He all the ingredients he needed from the supermarket.

- A. bought B. is buying
C. has bought D. has been buying

12. Henry did very well in his exams, with the highest score in an exam he before.

- A. doesn't take B. isn't taking
C. hadn't taken D. hasn't taken

13. Scientists announced the launch of the new drug last week. They it for five years.

- A. develop B. has developed
C. has been developing D. had been developing

Answers:

- 1 - C
2 - B
3 - A
4 - D
5 - C
6 - B
7 - D
8 - D
9 - D
10 - B
11 - A
12 - C
13 - D



14. By the time I got to the meeting, the group the important issues.

- A. had discussed B. will discuss
C. has been discussing D. discuss

15. I a wonderful biology teacher last year.

- A. have B. have got
C. am having D. had

16. She us excited about the subject because she was so interested herself.

- A. makes B. made
C. is making D. has been making

17. We different types of plants when Mrs. Wilson picked up a white flower, which was tulip.

- A. study B. are studying
C. were studying D. have studied

18. She and said that sometimes nature was so beautiful that it just made her cry!

- A. apologized B. apologizes
C. is apologizing D. has been apologizing

19. Somehow her enthusiasm inspired me, and I to like biology.

- A. am starting B. start
C. started D. was starting

20. The lecture by the time they got there.

- A. starts B. was starting
C. had started D. is starting

21. They went on a big tour of Britain. First, they in London for a few days.

- A. stayed B. has stayed
C. are staying D. stay

22. They Cambridge when they were in Britain.

- A. visited B. had visited
C. have visited D. are visiting

23. I looked terrible when I saw Joe last night because I for over an hour and I was exhausted.

- A. have been running B. has been running
C. had been running D. run

24. When I heard the noise at the window, I knew that someone to break into the house.

- A. is trying B. has tried
C. tries D. had tried

25. I knew her because I her several times.

- A. had been visiting B. had visited
C. am visiting D. will visit

26. The program that was stopped well since 1945.

- A. had been working B. is worked
C. has been worked D. was working

Answers:

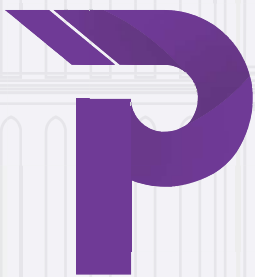
- 14 – A
15 – D
16 – B
17 – C
18 – A
19 – C
20 – C
21 – A
22 – A
23 – C
24 – D
25 – B
26 – A



Unit number

Medicine

Module 2 : Science



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



History of Medicine

Throughout history, **various** societies and cultures have developed different **views** in their **approach** to illnesses and diseases. One of the most important **periods** in the development of medicine at all, especially **medieval** medicine, which lasted from the 9th to the 13th century, is called “the Golden Age of Arabic Medicine”. The books of Arabic science that came about in this period are not only by Muslim **authors**, because Arab **civilization** is the result of **consecutive** and continuous efforts of various nations, **regardless** of the **religion**, **race** and colour of the skin, who lived and produced in the Arab region.

In ancient times, people used to cure sickness by using plants, **herbs** and other materials. In countries such as Egypt, Greece, Rome, **Mesopotamia**, India and China, medicine was magical and **mythological** and diseases were **attributed** mostly to the supernatural forces. **Thus**, before hospitals developed, patients were treated mostly in **temples**.

The practice of medicine during the Middle Ages was **empirical**; it focused mainly on curing illnesses rather than discovering their causes. At that time, cures continued to be a **mixture** of superstitions, religion, herbal **remedies**, **bleeding** and **purging**; people were bled to reduce **inflammation** which was then thought to be the root of all diseases.

Moreover, medical schools were **established**, but most people never saw a doctor because of the high-cost treatments. Instead, patients were treated by local **wise** people who were skilled in the use of herbs, or by **priests**, or **barbers**. Around the 16th century, medicine **witnessed** groundbreaking developments such as **vaccination**, human **anatomy**, surgery and microbiology. Modern medicine started to **emerge** in the late 18th century and therefore, there were many improvements on medical tools and machines, especially after the Industrial Revolution.

In the 1800s, **physicians** learned that illnesses were caused by **germs** and hospitals began to focus on keeping clean to keep germs away. As a result, **nursing** came to be thought of as a respectable job. The 20th century was **characterised** by new biological treatments such as **antibiotics** in addition to advancement in chemistry, **genetics** and **radiography**.

Arabic medicine has made a major **contribution** to the development of pharmacy. It is logical for doctors to discover new **drugs** while looking for ways to treat their patients. They wrote about them in **booklets** about the history of the disease called “al-Mujarrabat”. **Subsequently**, good and lesser known drugs were **extracted** from it. Physicians have tried to use simple medicines to **determine** the exact effect of the **entered component** into the disease. Still, some doctors have **prescribed** and combined the medications that they themselves **formulated**. Today healthcare isn't just about doctors; nurses, physical **therapists** and technicians are all part of a large health care system that helps to keep people healthy. Modern medicine is characterised by surgeries, the use of radiation, microscopy, research and **analysis** in the **detection** of disease or **ailment** by using modern technological tools. Due to the **rapid** advance of technology, it is certain that medicine will continue to develop in ways we have yet to **imagine**.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّض اهتماماً للتلويح.

على مر التاريخ، طوّرت مجتمعات وثقافات متنوعة وجهات نظر مختلفة أثناء فهمها -وتعاملها مع- الأمراض والعلل. وتُسمى إحدى أهم فترات تطور الطب على الإطلاق، وخاصة طب العصور الوسطى التي دامت من القرن التاسع إلى القرن الثالث عشر "العصر الذهبي للطب العربي". إن كتب العلوم العربية التي ظهرت في هذه الفترة ليست لمؤلفين مسلمين فقط؛ لأن الحضارة العربية ثمرة جهود متتالية ومتواصلة من مختلف الأمم التي عاشت وأنتجت في المنطقة العربية بصرف النظر عن الدين والعرق ولون البشرة.

في العصور القديمة، اعتاد الناس علاج الأمراض باستخدام النباتات والأعشاب وغيرها من المواد. في بلدان مثل مصر واليونان وروما وبلاد ما بين النهرين والهند والصين، كان الطب متعلقاً بالسحر والأساطير، وكانت الأمراض تُعزى في الغالب إلى القوى الخارقة للطبيعة. وهكذا، وقبل أن تتطور المستشفيات، كان المرضى يُعالجون في المعابد في الغالب.

كانت ممارسة الطب في العصور الوسطى تجريبية؛ حيث ركزت بشكل أساسي على علاج الأمراض بدلاً من اكتشاف مسبباتها. في ذلك الوقت، ظل العلاج مزيحاً من الخرافات والدين والعلاجات العشبية والإدعاء* والتطهير؛ فقد كان الدم يُسحب لتقليل التهاب الذي اعتقد آنذاك أنه أصل كل الأمراض.

علاوة على ذلك، شُيّدت كليات الطب، لكن معظم الناس لم يذهبوا إلى طبيب قط بسبب تكلفة العلاج الباهظة. وبدلاً من ذلك، كان المرضى يتلقون العلاج على يد الحكماء المحليين الماهرين في استخدام الأعشاب، أو على يد الكهنة أو الحلاقين. وفي القرن السادس عشر تقريباً، شهد الطب تطورات رائدة مثل التطعيم والتشريح البشري والجراحة وعلم الأحياء الدقيقة.

بدأ الطب الحديث في الانبثاق في أواخر القرن الثامن عشر، وبالتالي طرأت العديد من التحسينات على الأدوات والآلات الطبية، خاصةً بعد الثورة الصناعية.

في القرن التاسع عشر، علم الأطباء أن الأمراض سببها الجراثيم وشرعت المستشفيات في القرن التاسع عشر في التركيز على النظافة لإبعاد الجراثيم. ونتيجة لذلك، أصبح يُنظر إلى التمريض على أنه وظيفة جديرة بالاحترام. تميز القرن العشرون بالعلاجات البيولوجية الجديدة مثل المضادات الحيوية بالإضافة إلى التقدم في الكيمياء وعلم الوراثة والتصوير الإشعاعي.

وقد ساهم الطب العربي مساهمة كبيرة في تطوير الصيدلة. فمن المنطقي أن يكتشف الأطباء أدوية جديدة أثناء بحثهم عن طرق لعلاج مرضاهم. وكتبوا عنها في كتيبات عن تاريخ المرض سميت "المجربات". ومن ثم، استخرجت منه عقاقير جيدة وأقل شيوعاً. وقد حاول الأطباء أن يستعملوا أدوية بسيطة لتحديد التأثير الدقيق للمكون المُدخل على المرض. ومع ذلك، فقد وصف وجمع بعض الأطباء الأدوية التي شكّلوها بأنفسهم.

لا تقتصر الرعاية الصحية اليوم على الأطباء فقط؛ فالمرضون والممرضات واختصاصيو العلاج الطبيعي والفنيون جميعهم جزء من نظام الرعاية الصحية الكبير الذي يساعد في بقاء الناس أصحاء. يتفرد الطب الحديث بالعمليات الجراحية واستخدام الأشعة والفحص المجهرى والبحث العلمي والتحليل في الكشف عن المرض أو العلة باستخدام الأدوات التقنية الحديثة. نظراً للتقدم السريع للتقنيات، فمن المؤكد أن الطب سيواصل التطور بطرق لم نتخيلها بعد.

*الإدعاء: طريقة لإخراج الدم من الجسم عن طريق قطع الوريد جراحياً، وكان العرب قديماً يستخدمونها في علاج العديد من الأمراض.



مفردات النص الأساسية

consecutive	متتالية	following one another without any interruptions
mythological	أساطير	connected with ancient myths or stories
empirical	تجريبي	based on experience rather than ideas
remedies	علاج	medicines that cure a disease
purging	تطهير	the act of eliminating contamination or removing bad thoughts; a purification
inflammation	التهاب	a response of body tissues to injury of the body
anatomy	تشريح	the scientific study of the structure of the body
therapists	معالج/اختصاصي	people who have been trained to give a particular of treatment for physical or mental illness form

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Ancient "medicine people" treated their patients in temples because:

- A) of the high-cost treatments in hospitals.
- B) The role of nursing began to develop.
- C) there were no hospitals.
- D) both B and C

2. Most medieval Europeans didn't visit medical schools to receive treatment because of:

- A) the use of radiation.
- B) the rapid advance of technology.
- C) the new biological treatments.
- D) the high-cost treatments

3. In the middle ages, most patients were treated

- A) by local wise people.
- B) by barbers.
- C) by priests.
- D) by all the people mentioned above.

4. The Industrial Revolution contributed

- A) medical tools and machines.
- B) antibiotics.
- C) genetics.
- D) radiography.

5. "al-Mujarrabat" was a book by Arab doctors about the history of

- A) the disease.
- B) the healthcare.
- C) the technological tools.
- D) medical schools.



6. In ancient times, medicine in Egypt and Mesopotamia was related to

- A) germs and mythology.
- B) magic and mythology.
- C) magic and germs.
- D) none of them.

7. The books of Arabic science are the result of

- A) Muslim authors.
- B) consecutive efforts of various nations.
- C) groundbreaking developments.
- D) Both A and B.

8. Medicine will continue to develop as a result of

- A) the rapid advance of magic and mythology.
- B) the rapid advance of the supernatural forces.
- C) the rapid advance of technology.
- D) the rapid advance of herbal remedies.

9. Around the 16th century, medicine witnessed groundbreaking developments such as vaccination, human anatomy, surgery and purging.

- A) true
- B) false

10. In ancient times, people used to cure sickness by using plants, herbs and other materials.

- A) true
- B) false

11. The role of nursing began to develop in the 18th century.

- A) true
- B) false

12. The word "consecutive" means:

- A) following one another without any interruptions
- B) connected with ancient myths or stories
- C) based on experience rather than ideas
- D) medicines or treatment that cure a disease

13. The word "mythological" means:

- A) the scientific study of the structure of the body
- B) a response of body tissues to injury of the body
- C) connected with ancient myths or stories
- D) medicines or treatment that cure a disease

14. The word "empirical" means:

- A) medicines or treatment that cure a disease
- B) based on experience rather than ideas
- C) making somebody healthy and clean of bad thoughts
- D) a response of body tissues to injury of the body

15. The word "inflammation" means:

- A) following one another without any interruptions
- B) a response of body tissues to injury of the body
- C) connected with ancient myths or stories
- D) medicines or treatment that cure a disease



16. The word "purging" means:

- A. the act of eliminating contamination or removing bad thoughts; a purification
- B. people who have been trained to give treatment for physical or mental illness
- C. a response of body tissues to injury of the body
- D. following one another without any interruptions

17. The word "anatomy" means:

- A. a response of body tissues to injury of the body
- B. the scientific study of the structure of the body
- C. people who have been trained to give treatment for physical or mental illness
- D. making somebody healthy and clean of bad thoughts

18. The word "therapists" means:

- A. making somebody healthy and clean of bad thoughts
- B. a response of body tissues to injury of the body
- C. the scientific study of the structure of the body
- D. people who have been trained to give a particular form of treatment for physical or mental illness

Answers:

- 1 - C
- 2 - D
- 3 - D
- 4 - A
- 5 - A
- 6 - B
- 7 - D
- 8 - C
- 9 - B
- 10 - A
- 11 - B
- 12 - A
- 13 - C
- 14 - B
- 15 - B
- 16 - A
- 17 - B
- 18 - D



Workbook

Reading

Page 22

Medical Inventions

Over the years, technology has played a **significant** role in developing the medical science. Advances in medicine have created **alternatives** to dangerous or even ineffective **procedures**. **Breakthroughs** have found new solutions to historical medical **challenges** and have opened up possibilities **beyond** what doctors thought was impossible years ago. Today's techniques, surgeries and drugs have decreased the **overall deaths** among humans. Medical inventions like X-ray Imaging, functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI), Robotic Surgery and Organ **Transplants** have changed medicine forever.

X-ray Imaging:

An X-ray is a common imaging test that has been used for **decades**. It is an image created on a photographic film or electronically on a **digital** system, using an **external** radiation to produce images of the body. X-ray Imaging can help doctors view the inside of the patient's body without having to make an **incision**. This can help **surgeons diagnose, monitor** and treat many medical **conditions**.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

Magnetic **Resonance** Imaging (MRI) is a medical imaging technique used in radiography to form pictures of the **anatomy** and the **physiological-processes** of the body. MRI scanners use strong **magnetic fields** and radio waves to **generate** images of the organs in the body. MRI **allows** to **access soft tissues** and **bone marrow involvement** in case of the inflammation and **infection**.

Robotic Surgery

Robotic Surgery is usually **associated** with **minimally invasive** procedures. During Robotic Surgery, surgeons can **perform** very complex steps with more **precision, flexibility** and control than it is possible with **conventional** techniques. **Compared** to traditional open surgery, Robotic Surgery results in smaller incisions which reduce **pain** and lead to less time **spent** in hospitals and quicker **recovery** time.

Organ Transplant

Such an invention can greatly **improve** the health of **patients, allowing** them to **return** to normal activities. Moreover, doctors have been successfully transplanting various body parts like **heart, liver** and **kidney** and have **performed** various **brain** surgeries, too. **Besides**, artificial heart transplanting has evolved over decades saving **countless lives**.

In summary, the **emerging** medical devices and technologies, especially the mobile phones and **tiny** Nano-sized **sensors embedded** in several electronic **devices** that **enable** sending and **receiving** information **wirelessly**, are changing the face of 21st century medical **practice**.



Currently, people born with diseases or any other body defects can now be healed with the help of advanced technology. Furthermore, various advances in medical field have saved millions of lives and improved many others. The new technologies will allow remote monitoring of patients and their access to healthcare, health data collection and information exchange with the providers and other patients. Such benefits would continue to increase with the fast pace development of medical health technologies.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّه اهتماماً للتولين

Translation

على مر السنين، اتخذت التقنية دوراً مهماً في تطوير العلوم الطبية، فقد أوجدت التطورات في مجال الطب بدائل للإجراءات الطبية الخطيرة أو حتى غير الفعالة. كما ابتكر **التقدم المفاجئ** حلولاً جديدة للتحديات الطبية التاريخية وأتاح الفرصة لإمكانيات تتجاوز ما كان الأطباء يعتقدون أنه مستحيل قبل سنوات، وقللت التقنيات والعمليات الجراحية والأدوية الحالية من إجمالي الوفيات بين البشر، وغيّرت الاختراعات الطبية مثل: التصوير بالأشعة السينية، والتصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي الوظيفي، والجراحة الروبوتية -التنظيرية-، **وزراعة الأعضاء** الطب إلى الأبد.

الأشعة السينية:

اختبار تصوير شائع يستخدم منذ عقود، وهو صورة تتشكل على جهاز تصوير فوتوغرافي أو على نظام رقمي إلكترونيًا، باستخدام إشعاع خارجي لإنتاج صور للجسم. يمكن أن يساعد التصوير بالأشعة السينية الأطباء على رؤية ما بداخل جسم المريض دون الحاجة إلى إجراء **شق جراحي**، ويقدم يد العون للجراحين في تشخيص العديد من الحالات الطبية ومراقبتها وعلاجها.

التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي (MRI):

تقنية تصوير طبي تُستخدم في التصوير الإشعاعي لتكوين صور للتشريح والعمليات الفسيولوجية للجسم، تستخدم ماسحات التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي حقولاً مغناطيسية قوية وموجات لاسلكية لتوليد صور لأعضاء الجسم، ويسمح التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي بالوصول إلى الأنسجة الرخوة ونقي العظام في حالة الإصابة بالالتهاب والعدوى.

الجراحة الروبوتية -التنظيرية-:

عادةً ما ترتبط الجراحة الروبوتية بالإجراءات طفيفة **التوغل** -التوسع-. أثناء الجراحة الروبوتية، يمكن للجراحين تنفيذ خطوات معقدة للغاية **بدقة** ووضوح وتحكم أكبر مما هو ممكن مع التقنيات التقليدية. وبالمقارنة مع الجراحة التقليدية المفتوحة، تؤدي الجراحة الروبوتية إلى إحداث شقوق أصغر مما يقلل من الألم ويؤدي إلى قضاء وقت أقل في المستشفيات ووقت أسرع للتعافي.

زراعة الأعضاء:

يمكن لهذا الاختراع أن يحسن صحة المرضى بشكل كبير، مما يسمح لهم بالعودة إلى ممارسة أنشطتهم الطبيعية.

علاوةً على ذلك، نجح الأطباء في زراعة أجزاء مختلفة من الجسم مثل القلب والكبد والكلى وأجروا العديد من العمليات الجراحية في الدماغ أيضًا. جنبًا إلى جنب مع تطور عمليات زراعة القلب الاصطناعي على مدى عقود من الزمن، مما أدى إلى إنقاذ حياة عدد لا يحصى من الأرواح.



وصفوة القول، إن الأجهزة والتقنيات الطبية الناشئة، وخاصة الهواتف المحمولة وأجهزة الاستشعار الصغيرة بحجم النانو **المدمجة** في العديد من الأجهزة الإلكترونية التي تتيح إرسال واستقبال المعلومات لاسلكيًا، تغير وجه الممارسة الطبية في القرن الحادي والعشرين. وفي الوقت الحالي، يمكن أن يُشفى الآن الأشخاص المولودون بأمراض أو عيوب أخرى في الجسم بمساعدة التقنيات المتقدمة. وعلاوة على ذلك، أنقذت التطورات المختلفة في مجال الطب الإلكتروني ملايين الأشخاص وطورت حياة الكثيرين. ستسمح التقنيات الجديدة بمراقبة المرضى عن بُعد وحصولهم على الرعاية الصحية وجمع البيانات الصحية وتبادل المعلومات مع مقدمي الخدمات والمرضى الآخرين، وستستمر هذه الفوائد في الازدياد مع التطور السريع للتقنيات الصحية الطبية.

مفردات النص الأساسية

breakthrough	تقدم	an important development that may lead to an achievement
transplant	زراعة أعضاء	a medical operation to replace a damaged organ with another one
incision	شق جراحي	a neat cut made into the skin
resonance	رنين	a sound that is produced or increased in one object by sound waves from another sound
invasive	توغل	related to medical treatments involving cutting into someone's body
precision	دقة	the state of being accurate and careful
embedded	مدمج	being fixed or inserted firmly into something else

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Surgeons prefer Robotic surgery because they can perform very complicated steps with more precision, flexibility and control.

- A) true
B) false

2. MRI techniques require an external radiation to produce images of the body organs.

- A) true
B) false

3. New discoveries have created alternatives to dangerous or even ineffective procedures.

- A) true
B) false



4. The word "incision" means:

- A) the state of being accurate and careful
- B) being fixed or inserted firmly into something else
- C) a neat cut made into the skin
- D) an important development that may lead to an achievement

5. The word "transplant" means:

- A) a neat cut made into the skin
- B) a sound that is produced or increased in one object by sound waves from another sound
- C) related to medical treatments involving cutting into someone's body
- D) a medical operation to replace a damaged organ with another one

6. The word "breakthrough" means:

- A) the state of being accurate and careful
- B) an important development that may lead to an achievement
- C) a medical operation to replace a damaged organ with another one
- D) a neat cut made into the skin

7. The word "embedded" means:

- A) an important development that may lead to an achievement
- B) a medical operation to replace a damaged organ with another one
- C) being fixed or inserted firmly into something else
- D) a neat cut made into the skin

8. The word "precision" means:

- A) the state of being accurate and careful
- B) a neat cut made into the skin
- C) being fixed or inserted firmly into something else
- D) a sound that is produced or increased in one object by sound waves from another sound

9. The word "resonance" means:

- A) a sound that is produced or increased in one object by sound waves from another sound
- B) an important development that may lead to an achievement
- C) being fixed or inserted firmly into something else
- D) a neat cut made into the skin

10. The word "invasive" means:

- A) an important development that may lead to an achievement
- B) a medical operation to replace a damaged organ with another one
- C) a neat cut made into the skin
- D) related to medical treatments involving cutting into someone's body

11. The word "incision" means:

- A) the state of being accurate and careful
- B) being fixed or inserted firmly into something else
- C) a neat cut made into the skin
- D) an important development that may lead to an achievement

12. The fast pace development of medical health technologies would monitoring patients remotely.

- A) break
- B) stop
- C) help in
- D) end

13. traditional surgeries, Robotic Surgeries are operated with precision and flexibility.

- A) Like
- B) Unlike
- C) Dislike
- D) Similar to



14. During X-ray Imaging, surgeons make an incision to view the patient's body.

- A) don't have to
- B) have to
- C) must
- D) should

15. techniques require an external radiation to produce images of the body organs.

- A) X-ray
- B) Robotic Surgery
- C) Anatomy
- D) MRI

16. Nowadays deaths among human beings have been due to up-to-date medical discoveries.

- A) reduced
- B) decreased
- C) increased
- D) Both A and B

17. Surgeons prefer Robotic surgery to conventional one because it results in which reduce pain and lead to less time spent in hospitals and quicker recovery time.

- A) big wounds
- B) large cuts
- C) huge scratches
- D) smaller incisions

18. use strong magnetic field and radio waves to generate images of the organs in the body.

- A) An X-ray
- B) MRI scanners
- C) Robotic surgery
- D) Nano_ sized sensors

19. New discoveries have played in developing medical science.

- A) an important role
- B) a simple role
- C) a trivial role
- D) a negative role

20. An X-ray is an image created on a photographic film or electronically on a digital system using an to produce image of the body.

- A) internal radiation
- B) extra radiation
- C) external radiation
- D) Both B and C

21. The emerging medical devices and technologies the face of 21" century medical practice.

- A) have nothing to do with
- B) are conserving
- C) are fixing
- D) are changing

22. Organ Transplant can greatly improve the health of allowing them to return to normal activities.

- A) sick people
- B) patience
- C) doctors
- D) surgeons

Answers:

- 1 - A
- 2 - B
- 3 - A
- 4 - C
- 5 - D
- 6 - B
- 7 - C
- 8 - A
- 9 - A
- 10 - D
- 11 - C
- 12 - C
- 13 - B
- 14 - A
- 15 - A
- 16 - D
- 17 - D
- 18 - B
- 19 - A
- 20 - C
- 21 - D
- 22 - A



Vocabulary

Medical idioms

A taste of one's own medicine	يتجرع من نفس الكأس - يعامل بنفس الطريقة	Treated badly
At death's door	على وشك الموت	Very close to death
Take a turn for the worse	تسوء حالته الصحية	Got sicker suddenly
Go under the knife	يخضع لعملية جراحية	Have a surgery
On the mend	يسترد عافيته - يتحسن	Becoming well again
Just what the doctor ordered	بالضبط ما هو مطلوب	What is needed

Dermatologist	طبيب الجلدية	Who treats skin diseases.
Cardiologist	طبيب القلبية	A heart specialist.
Allergist	طبيب حساسية	Who specialises in determining food and environmental allergies.
Naturopath	طبيب العلاج الطبيعي	Who specialises in natural cures and remedies.
Pediatrician	طبيب الأطفال	Who is a specialist for babies and children.
Ophthalmologist	طبيب العيون	Who specialises in eye diseases.



Pronunciation

Emphatic Stress

القاعدة: عندما نريد التأكيد على معلومة محددة في جملة ما، نشدّد على الكلمة التي تعطي هذه المعلومة.

ملاحظة: عادةً ما نشدّد على الكلمات المفتاحية في الجملة مثل: الأسماء، الضمائر، الأفعال، الصفات، الظروف.

وبالتالي من الخاطئ التشديد على أحرف الجر، أحرف العطف، أدوات التعريف والتوكيد..

Ex: I live at number 11 Johnson Street.

①

②

③

① I (not my brother) live at number 11 Johnson Street.

② I live at number 11 (not number 12) Johnson Street.

③ I live at number 11 Johnson Street (not Oxford Street).

في الجدول مثال واحد فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا :



Everyday English

Asking for information

• Is it necessary to ... ?

• Can you tell me ... ?

• Don't you think ... ?

• What happens if ... ?

• Do you mean it's ... ?

• Could this have an impact ... ?

• أي كلمة سؤال (When, What, How...) تعتبر بحث عن معلومة:

What could be the reason behind that?



Listening

Important vocabs

Intern	طبيب متمرّن	A doctor who is still training and working in a hospital
Lockdown	إغلاق عام	When people have to stay where they are and can't move freely due to a risk
Social distancing	تباعّد اجتماعي	Being on your own and separated from others
Double shifts	بدل عمل إضافي	When the period of time that you work is twice as long as usual
Isolation	العزل	Staying away from other people to stop a disease spread
Key worker	عامل مهم وأساسي	Someone who does a job essential for society

ملاحظة: تعاريف كلمتي Isolation و Social distancing في المعجم اللغوي عكس حلّ الدليل؛ ولكن الأفضل اعتماد الدليل والكتاب.

- The correct order of following sentences is:

A - There are departures at 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. every day.
 B - Can you tell me how much a sightseeing tour costs, please?
 C - And when does the boat leave?
 D - Certainly! The half-day trip is 10.000 SPY.

A C - D - A - B B C - A - B - D C B - D - C - A D D - C - B - A

Answers:

C



Choose the correct answer

1. After a long season of hard work, getting on extra week off is
A. at death's door C. going under the knife
B. acing a test D. just what the doctor ordered
2. My uncle last night, so we are heading to the hospital to see him.
A. reached out to C. took a turn for the worse
B. aced a test D. on a roll
3. It was miraculous that the little girl fully recovered because she was..... With sepsis and pneumonia.
A. fitting in C. at death's door
B. on the mend D. on a roll
4. I don't understand how people for really risky cosmetic procedures.
A. ace a test C. run into
B. go under the knife D. just what the doctor ordered
5. We were so happy to hear that your father is back home now and he is.....
A. on the mend C. taking a turn for the worse
B. going under the knife D. at death's door
6. I used to write rude comments on Instagram, but I got..... when I created my own account
A. into C. the ranks of
B. under the knife D. a taste of my own medicine
7. Don't worry. It's a minor procedure and you'll be within a week.
A. at death's door C. taking a turn for the worse
B. on the mend D. under the knife
8. I drove all night to reach the hospital because they told me my mother was
A. at death's door C. take a turn for the worse
B. on the mend D. just what the doctor ordered
9. My kids just left for three weeks of camp and it is
A. took a turn for the worse C. on the mend
B. at death's door D. just what the doctor ordered
10. Even when you and went into a coma, I never lost hope you'd fully recover one day.
A. at death's door C. took a turn for the worse
B. on the mend D. reach out to
11. My grandfather is..... tomorrow, so we'll need to be at the hospital to support him.
A. on the mend C. backing the wrong horse
B. joining the ranks of D. going under the knife
12. She always teases everyone and now that her father is in jail she is getting.....
A. on the mend C. a taste of her own medicine
B. at death's door D. just what the doctor ordered
13. A/An specialises in determining food and environmental allergies.
A. dermatologist B. cardiologist C. allergist D. naturopath
14. A/An ia a heart specialist.
A. naturopath B. cardiologist C. pediatrician D. ophthalmologist

Answers:

- 1 - D
- 2 - C
- 3 - C
- 4 - B
- 5 - A
- 6 - D
- 7 - B
- 8 - A
- 9 - D
- 10 - C
- 11 - D
- 12 - C
- 13 - C
- 14 - B



15. A/An treats skin diseases.

- A. dermatologist B. cardiologist C. allergist D. naturopath

16. A/An specialises in natural cures and remedies.

- A. cardiologist B. naturopath C. pediatrician D. ophthalmologist

17. A/An is a specialist for babies and children.

- A. cardiologist B. naturopath C. pediatrician D. ophthalmologist

18. A/An specialises in eye diseases .

- A. cardiologist B. naturopath C. pediatrician D. ophthalmologist

19. Children who have an allergic reaction after the first shot should be referred to a/an before continuing with the DTP vaccine.

- A. dermatologist B. cardiologist C. allergist D. naturopath

20. If that itchy rash doesn't go away, you should go to a.....

- A. dermatologist B. cardiologist C. pediatrician D. naturopath

21. Our recommended that little Kathy should have her tonsils out.

- A. cardiologist B. naturopath C. pediatrician D. ophthalmologist

22. Dr. Rashed, Leila's, came in and noticed that her blood pressure and pulse were very high.

- A. naturopath B. ophthalmologist C. pediatrician D. cardiologist

23. My father says everything looks blurry, so he is going to the to get his eyes checked.

- A. naturopath B. ophthalmologist C. pediatrician D. cardiologist

24. Robert is an accredited with herbal medicine and nutritional training.

- A. dermatologist B. cardiologist C. allergist D. naturopath

25. I have had chest pains and I'm also having trouble breathing. I have to go to the.....

- A. cardiologist B. dermatologist C. pediatrician D. ophthalmologist

26. I have a terrible rash on my arms and legs. I think I'm allergic to dairy food, but it might also be grass. I have to go to the.....

- A. pediatrician B. cardiologist C. ophthalmologist D. allergist

27. My little girl hasn't put on weight for two months and she keeps getting an infection she has to go to the.....

- A. ophthalmologist B. Cardiologist C. pediatrician D. dermatologist

28. My left eye is itchy and my vision has been blurry for two weeks, I have to go to the.....

- A. allergist B. cardiologist C. ophthalmologist D. dermatologist

29. I've had problems with drugs that cause side effects, so I'd like to try some natural remedies. I have to go to the.....

- A. allergist B. naturopath C. ophthalmologist D. dermatologist

30. I have got terrible acne and nothing in the pharmacy has worked. I have to go to

- A. dermatologist B. cardiologist C. ophthalmologist D. allergist

31. "We need to be at the meeting at four o'clock." The correct meaning according to the stressed word is:

- A. The meeting is at four, not five
B. You and I have to be there at four, but the others don't.
C. We need to be at the meeting, so we must arrive at the building earlier.
D. The meeting is at four not the match.

Answers:

- 15 - A
16 - B
17 - C
18 - D
19 - C
20 - A
21 - C
22 - D
23 - B
24 - D
25 - A
26 - D
27 - C
28 - C
29 - B
30 - A
31 - B



32. "We need to be at the meeting at four o'clock." The correct meaning according to the stressed word is:

- A. The meeting is at four, not five.
- B. You and I have to be there at four, but the others don't.
- C. We need to be at the meeting, so we must arrive at the building earlier.
- D. The meeting is at four not the match.

33. "Frank bought a car yesterday." The correct meaning according to the stressed word is:

- A. Frank bought a car yesterday, not last week.
- B. Frank bought a car, not a bike, yesterday.
- C. Frank bought, not sold, a car yesterday.
- D. Frank, not John, bought a car not a bike yesterday

34. You have to send a parcel to your home town urgently (Ask about the way to the Post Office)

- A. That's true. I haven't thought about that before.
- B. How long does it take me to get to the Post Office ?
- C. Can you tell me the way to the Post Office?
- D. I'm not sure if this is the best thing to do now.

35. Now you are in the Post Office. (Ask the clerk how much it will cost)

- A. How much does it cost to send this parcel?
- B. How long does it take me to get to the Post Office?
- C. Can you tell me the way to the Post Office?
- D. I'm not sure if this is the best thing to do now.

36. Now you are at Al-Kabbani Theatre in Damascus. (Ask some information you need about the weekend's play)

- A. How much is the ticket?
- B. What is this weekend's play ?
- C. What are the seats available for this weekend's play?
- D. All the questions above are correct

37. I've heard that a huge amount of oil has just been found in my country. (Choose the suitable follow-up question)

- A. Could this have an impact on the price of petrol for car drivers?
- B. Do you mean it's worth working for nothing ?
- C. Don't you think you'd feel isolated ?
- D. All the questions above are correct

38. My perfect house would be high in the mountains. (Choose the suitable follow-up question)

- A. Don't you think you'd feel isolated ?
- B. Do you mean it's worth working for nothing ?
- C. What is this weekend's play ?
- D. But what could be the reason behind that?

39. Many celebrities like to get involved in charity work. (Choose the suitable follow-up question)

- A. Don't you think you'd feel isolated ?
- B. Do you mean it's worth working for nothing ?
- C. How much is the ticket ?
- D. Both A and B

Answers:

- 32 – A
- 33 – B
- 34 – C
- 35 – A
- 36 – D
- 37 – A
- 38 – A
- 39 – B



40. I heard that constant texting can cause brain disorders. (Choose the suitable follow-up question)

- A. Don't you think you'd feel isolated?
- B. Do you mean it's worth working for nothing ?
- C. How have the students reacted ?
- D. But what could be the reason behind that?

41. The government in my country has extended the school day by one hour each day. (Choose the suitable follow-up question)

- A. Don't you think you'd feel isolated ?
- B. Do you mean it's worth working for nothing ?
- C. How have the students reacted ?
- D. But what could be the reason behind that ?

42. About 85% of the world population now own a mobile phone. (Choose the suitable follow-up question)

- A. How have the students reacted?
- B. How long have you had yours?
- C. Could this have an impact on the price of petrol ?
- D. But what could be the reason behind that?

43. Our teachers are planning to take up on a weeklong boat trip to explore the sea bed. (Choose the appropriate response)

- A. I'm sorry about what happened to you.
- B. Is it necessary to book in advance ?
- C. Do you mean it's worth working for nothing ?
- D. How fast is the trip?

44. The funding for our local youth club has been cut. (Choose the appropriate response)

- A. Is it necessary to book in advance ?
- B. How long have you had yours?
- C. Will they give us a lot of money ?
- D. But what could be the reason behind that?

45. NASA has just discovered eight earth-like planets outside our solar system. (Choose the appropriate response)

- A. How can we protect plants?
- B. How big is the sun?
- C. Could this have an impact on our planet ?
- D. Are the planets inside our solar system?

Answers:

- 40 - D
- 41 - C
- 42 - B
- 43 - B
- 44 - D
- 45 - C



Passive voice



رابط شرح الدرس

Form

في الجمل العادية:

Object	+	Proper verb to be	+	V ₃	+	Subject + Complement
المفعول به		فعل كون مناسب		الفعل		الفاعل
عادةً يكون محصور بين الفعل الرئيسي و : - حرف جر - أداة ربط - مصدرية to		Present simple	is - am - are	نظامي أو شاذ	عادةً ما يسبق ب : by أو in أو with	نضع التكملة ان وجدت، و عادةً لا نجري أي تغيير عليها
		Past simple	was - were			
		Present continuous	is - am - are + being			
		Past continuous	was - were + being			
		Present perfect	have / has + been			
		Past perfect	had + been			
		Modal in present	Modal + be			
		Modal in past	Modal + have been			
لا يمكن الاستغناء عن هذه الجزئيات في أي جملة مبني للمجهول					يمكن حذفها من جملة المبني للمجهول.	

Examples

Present simple	The room is cleaned by Rama every day .
Past simple	The poor bird was captured and all its efforts to escape were in vain.
Present continuous	The room is being cleaned by Rama at the moment .
Past continuous	The room was being cleaned by Rama when we arrived .
Present perfect	Bridges have been built by the government over the river recently .
Past perfect	The room had been cleaned by Rama before we arrived .
Modal in present	The room will be cleaned by Rama tomorrow .
Modal in past	Your car is a death trap, it should have been sent to the scrap years ago.

جملة تحوي عبارة قول أو تفكير: (expect, say, believe, report, estimate, think, claim)

People believe that the government will reduce taxes.

1	It + be + V ₃ + that + complement	It's believed that government will reduce taxes.
2	Subject + be + V ₃ + to + V ₀ + complement	The government is believed to reduce taxes.

في الجمل التي تحوي مفعولين:

بعض الجمل تحتاج الى مفعولين ليتم المعنى فيها ولذلك نجد أن المفعول به غير المباشر **Object 1** يأتي بعد الفعل مباشرة ويكون عادةً شخص أما المفعول به المباشر **Object 2** فيأتي بعد المفعول به غير المباشر ويكون عادةً شيء

The teacher gave the students plenty of time to finish the exam.

1	Object 1 + be + V ₃ + Object 2 + C	The students were given plenty of time to finish the exam.
2	Object 2 + be + V ₃ + to + Object 1 + C	Plenty of time was given to the students to finish the exam.

في حالة السؤال في المبني للمجهول:

Yes / No question	Wh question
Be + Object + V ₃ + C + ?	Wh + be + Object + V ₃ + C + ?
فقط نبدل بين المفعول به و فعل الكون المناسب حسب الزمن	نضع كلمة السؤال ثم نبدل بين المفعول به و فعل الكون المناسب حسب الزمن
Was the room cleaned by Rama?	When was the room cleaned by Rama?

النكشات

1

بعض الأفعال المتعدية لا تُستخدم مع المبني للمجهول،
أهمها: let – have – like – suit

2

انتبه للتغيرات على ضمائر الفاعل و المفعول به عند التحويل
الى المبني للمجهول

الفاعل (غالباً قبله By)		
I	→	Me
We	→	Us
They	→	Them
He	→	Him
She	→	Her
it	→	it
المفعول به		
I	←	Me
We	←	Us
They	←	Them
He	←	Him
She	←	Her
it	←	it

- He will invite **them** to the party → **They** will be invited to the party by **him**.

3

تذكر: لا يوجد حاضر تام مستمر ولا ماضي تام مستمر مع
المبني للمجهول، إذا شفتن ضمن الخيارات كبن.

4

مع فعل الولادة دائماً نستعمل المبني للمجهول مع
الماضي البسيط:

- I / He / She / It **was born** in Syria.
- They / We / You **were born** in Syria.

5

- The lights were switched on **with** the car phone.

لاحظ أننا في هذه الجملة استخدمنا **With** عوضاً عن **By** وهي الجملة الوحيدة في كتابك من هذا النوع.

استزادة للفهم: يعود سبب الاستخدام السابق الى أن
الأضواء تم تشغيلها عن طريق الجهاز الذي في السيارة (أي
عن طريق أداة وليس عن طريق شخص لذلك استعملنا **With**).

**Choose the correct answer**

1. A local jewellery shop..... into by someone yesterday.
A. break B. broke C. was broken D. breaks
2. The shop..... up by the owner when he was threatened by a robber with a gun.
A. is locked B. is being locked C. has been locked D. had just been locked
3. The owner of a local jewellery shop..... by a robber to unlock the shop and give him all the diamonds in the safe.
A. was told B. tell C. tells D. told
4. The owner of a local jewellery shop..... up by the robber.
A. tie B. ties C. tied D. was tied
5. A search..... by the police for the robber.
A. has organized B. has been organized C. organized D. organizes
6. The robber..... by the police after he had been caught.
A. questioned B. was questioned C. questions D. will be questioned
7. Now, the owner of the shop..... by doctors for shock.
A. is treating B. is being treated C. was being treated D. had been treated
8. I'm sorry this office is so dirty, but it..... until tomorrow morning.
A. can't be cleaned B. had to be cleaned C. can clean D. should clean
9. These clothes..... for daily use, so you can wear them wherever you want.
A. design B. designed C. are design D. are designed
10. Many offices of large companies..... in the town center recently.
A. have built B. have been built C. are being built D. are built
11. All the goods that were purchased yesterday have defects, so they back to the manufacturer right now.
A. send B. sent C. are being sent D. were sent
12. Camera footage shows that illegal goods..... into the warehouse last week.
A. were smuggled B. are smuggled C. smuggle D. smuggled
13. The poor bird..... and all its efforts to escape from the trap were in vain.
A. is captured B. was captured C. are being captured D. will be captured
14. The hotel near our office was closed because itby the owner.
A. renovates B. renovated C. was being renovated D. was renovating
15. Your car is a death trap. It to the scrap years ago.
A. should send B. should be sent C. should have been sent D. should sent
16. My neighbour disappeared six months ago. He since then.
A. hasn't been seen B. haven't been seen C. isn't being seen D. won't be seen
17. The paintings by the organizers till the end of the month.
A. had exhibited B. will be exhibited C. were being exhibited D. was exhibited
18. Many procedures in London to avoid the spread of the pandemic.
A. take B. takes C. are being taken D. are taking

Answers:

- 1 - C
- 2 - D
- 3 - A
- 4 - D
- 5 - B
- 6 - B
- 7 - B
- 8 - A
- 9 - D
- 10 - B
- 11 - C
- 12 - A
- 13 - B
- 14 - C
- 15 - C
- 16 - A
- 17 - B
- 18 - C



19. The evidence by police officers when the lights went out.

- A. is examined B. has been examined C. is being examined D. was being examined

20. I by the committee some difficult questions in the interview yesterday.

- A. have asked B. have been asked C. was asked D. had asked

21. Sami up by his parents to be more polite.

- A. must bring C. bring
B. must have been brought D. brings

22. Before the interview, I the job by the owner at his bank.

- A. had already offered C. have already offered
B. had already been offered D. already been offered

23. Bridges over the river by the government every year.

- A. were made B. have been made C. are being made D. are made

24. The basement has been flooded the washing machine.

- A. by B. in C. for D. from

25. The lights were switched on the car phone.

- A. for B. with C. by D. to

26. The students plenty of time to finish the exam yesterday.

- A. are given B. is given C. were given D. will be given

27. Plenty of time to the students to finish the exam yesterday.

- A. are given B. will be given C. were given D. was given

28. Tom Cruise, the richest movie star, a big prize by the film company.

- A. awarded B. was awarded C. will award D. has awarded

29. Tons of rocks and earth under the railway line last year.

- A. were buried B. buried C. had buried D. have buried

30. 1500 square kilometres of rainforests every year.

- A. cut B. have cut C. is cut D. had cut

31. A critical issue by environmentalists around the world.

- A. are debating B. were debating C. is being debated D. have been debating

32. The professor's students the results of his research in the laboratory now.

- A. are being shown B. were being shown C. are shown D. will be shown

33. Dr. Mahmoud 20 million Syrian pounds for his great invention next week.

- A. was paid B. has been Paid C. were being paid D. will be paid

34. The manager some bad news recently about the new project by the secretary.

- A. will be told B. is told C. has been told D. is being told

35. A very difficult question to us when the school bell rang.

- A. is asked B. was being asked C. will be asked D. has been asked

36. Where glass containers made by manufacturers?

- A. is B. are C. was D. be

Answers:

- 19 - D
20 - C
21 - B
22 - B
23 - D
24 - A
25 - B
26 - C
27 - D
28 - B
29 - A
30 - C
31 - C
32 - A
33 - D
34 - C
35 - B
36 - B



37. When are the taxes going to be

- A. pay B. pays C. paid D. paying

38. How much these activities spent on every year?

- A. are B. were C. has D. had

39. Will the fine..... tomorrow?

- A. was paid B. be paid C. has paid D. had been paid

40. Have you been shown what to.....?

- A. do B. does C. did D. done

41. Why the roof mended before it fell down?

- A. is B. were C. had D. wasn't

Answers:

37 - C

38 - A

39 - B

40 - A

41 - D

كلمتين بيني وبينك ...

” اضغط على نفسك بالدراسة، بس لا تحملها فوق طاقتها.. حاسب نفسك على التقصير، بس لا تجلدها ..

شتان بين هالأشياء، دير بالك تخربط بينهم، الضغط النفسي بالبالكوريا بيحي من المقارنة مع غيرك غالباً وهون المصيبة، لأنك اذا قارنت دراستك مع حدا سابقك رح تحس حالك مقصر، واذا قارنت دراستك مع حدا متأخر عنك رح تحس حالك مسبق، طيب شو الحل؟

الحل: انك ما تقارن أساساً، لأنو كل شخص فينا عنده قصة وظروف وقدرات وتفاصيل معينة مالها موجودة عند الثاني، ولو كانوا بنفس البيئة سوا، انت لما تقارن حالك مع حدا ثاني عم تهكل همك وهمه سوا، شو بدك بهالشغلة، حلو انك تشوف رفقاتك وين وصلوا وتدرسوا سوا وكذا، بس لا تخلي هدفك تصوير متلن أو تسبقن، خلي هدفك تخلص المنهاج بالوقت اللي انت حاطه حسب الأيام اللي موزعها انت لكل مادة، وهيك بتكون كبيت نص الضغط النفسي اللي عليك.

لا تخلي خوفك من المستقبل يمنعك تشتغل بحاضرك، كثير مننا بيفكر ياترا لما يحي الامتحان رح أعرف جاوب وكون مخلص كلشي عليي؟ بس مننسى انو هالسؤال جوابه ببيلش من هلا، لسا في وقت لتجاوب، والكتب بين ايديك، لا تبخل على نفسك بأي دقيقة دراسة بس لأنك مالم، اذا تعبت ارتاح، يوم نص يوم قد مابذك المهم تفصل مخك عن البكالوريا، بعدين بترجع بتكمل محل ما تركت، ماحدا لاحقك بعصاية معك كل الوقت بيكفي وزيادة، ما بيهمني تكون عايد المنهاج 4 مرات ولا وحدة ماكنة، المهم تفهم كل معلومة عم تدرسها، وما تترك درس إلا ما ينحفظ معك، اللي بدو يجيب علامات هيك بيشغل.

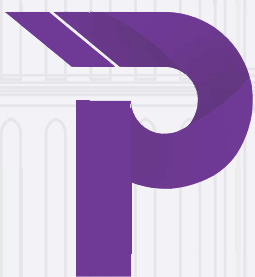
بالنهاية هاد اختبار الك وبدك تصبر عليه، وبينني وبينك، اختبارك سهل بالنسبة لغيرك، شوف أهلك بغزة بتعرف كيف هالبكالوريا لعب ولاد، بس بدك تجيب فيها علامات شو ماكانت.



Unit number

Engineering

Module 2 : Science



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



Student book

Reading

History of Engineering

Page 40

Throughout history, there have always been people who **designed** and built tools or other **devices** to **solve** problems or improve lives. The **concept** of engineering has been around since ancient times, as **primitive** engineers created basic **inventions** such as **pulley**, **lever**, and the wheel. Each of these inventions is **consistent** with a modern **definition** of engineering, and makes use of basic mechanical **principles** to develop useful tools and objects.

The Ancient Era

Simple classic machines were known in the ancient Near East, and then the **wheel**, along with the wheel and **axle** mechanism, was invented in **Mesopotamia** (modern Iraq) during the fifth **millennium BC**. The oldest **architect**, known by name Imhotep, designed and **executed** the **construction** of the **Pyramid** of Djoser (a step pyramid) in the Saqqara region in Egypt around 2630-2611 BC, and he is also **credited** with first using **columns** in architecture. In Persia, the oldest practical water-powered machines appeared in the fourth century BC, the water wheel and the **watermill**.

Middle Ages

During the sixth century AD, the Indian engineers invented the cotton **gin**, and by the ninth century **AD** they designed **wind**- powered machines such as the **windmill** and the wind **pump**. Later, the Arab engineers designed the **spinning** wheel in the early eleventh century. This was essential to the growth of the cotton **industry**, which was the **core** of The Early Industrial **Revolution** in the 18th Century.

European Renaissance

The first **steam** engine was built in 1698 by the mechanical engineer Thomas Savery. The development of this device **led** to the **emergence** of the Industrial Revolution in the coming years, which allowed the beginning of the **mass** production of **engines** of various functions.

The Modern Era

The inventions of the Scottish engineer James Watt gave rise to the modern mechanical engineering, which opened the door wide for the development of specialized **machinery** and their **maintenance** tools during the Industrial Revolution and led to the rapid growth of mechanical engineering in its **native** Britain and abroad.

Chemical engineering, like **mechanical engineering**, developed in the nineteenth century during the Industrial Revolution. The work of James Maxwell and Heinrich Hertz in the late nineteenth century gave **birth** to the **field** of electronics and **electrical engineering**. Today, **aeronautical** engineering **deals** with **aircraft** design; this field of engineering has been growing day after day to allow humans make their dreams come true to **invade** the **outer space** by designing better **spaceship**.

Finally, with the **advent** of computer technology in the 1990's, the first search engine was built by the computer engineer Alan Emtage.

The **brilliant minds** of engineers are still creating whatever it takes to **elevate** our world to make it a better place to live.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتولين.

Translation

على مر التاريخ، كان هناك دائماً أشخاص يصممون ويصنعون أدوات أو أجهزة لحل المشاكل أو تحسين الحياة. وقد كان مفهوم الهندسة موجوداً منذ العصور القديمة، حيث ابتكر المهندسون الأوليون اختراعات أساسية مثل **البكرة** و**الرافعة** والعجلة. يتوافق كل اختراع من هذه الاختراعات مع **التعريف** الحديث للهندسة، ويستفيد من المبادئ الميكانيكية الأساسية لتطوير أدوات وأشياء مفيدة.

الحقبة القديمة:

عُرفت الآلات التقليدية البسيطة في الشرق الأدنى القديم، ثم اخترعت **العجلة**، إلى جانب آلية **العجلة والمحور**، في بلاد ما بين النهرين (العراق الحديث) خلال **الألفية** الخامسة قبل الميلاد. نفذ **وشي** أقدم **مهندس معماري** يدعى **إمحتوب بناء هرم جوسر** (هرم مدرج) في منطقة سقارة في مصر حوالي 2630-2611 قبل الميلاد، ونُسب إليه الفضل بكونه أول من استخدم **الأعمدة** في فن العمارة. وفي بلاد فارس، ظهرت أقدم الآلات العملية التي تعمل بالطاقة المائية في القرن الرابع قبل الميلاد، وهي **الناعورة** و**الطاحونة المائية**.

العصور الوسطى:

خلال القرن السادس الميلادي، اخترع المهندسون الهنود **محج القطن**، وبحلول القرن التاسع الميلادي صمموا آلات تعمل بالرياح مثل **الطاحونة الهوائية** و**المضخة الهوائية**. وفي وقت لاحق، صمم المهندسون العرب عجلة **الغزل** في أوائل القرن الحادي عشر الميلادي. وكان هذا الأمر ضرورياً لنمو **صناعة القطن**، التي كانت **جواهر** الثورة الصناعية المبكرة في القرن الثامن عشر.

النهضة الأوروبية:

طُنع أول محرك بخاري في عام 1698 على يد المهندس الميكانيكي توماس سافري، وقد آل تطوير هذه الأداة إلى ظهور الثورة الصناعية في السنوات التالية، فبدأ الإنتاج **الضخم للمحركات** بمختلف وظائفها.

الحقبة الحديثة:

أدت اختراعات المهندس الاسكتلندي جيمس وات إلى ظهور الهندسة الميكانيكية الحديثة، والتي شرعت الباب على مصراعيه لتطوير **الآلات المتخصصة** وأدوات **صيانتها** خلال الثورة الصناعية وأدت إلى نمو سريع للهندسة الميكانيكية في **موطنها** بريطانيا وخارجها. تطورت الهندسة الكيميائية، مثل **الهندسة الميكانيكية**، في القرن التاسع عشر خلال الثورة الصناعية. وأدت أعمال جيمس ماكسويل وهاينريش هيرتز في أواخر القرن التاسع عشر إلى **نشأة مجال الإلكترونيات والهندسة الكهربائية**.

واليوم، تتعامل **هندسة الطيران** مع تصميم **الطائرات**؛ حيث ينمو هذا المجال من الهندسة يوماً بعد يوم للسماح للبشر بتحقيق أحلامهم في **غزو الفضاء الخارجي** من خلال تصميم أفضل **سفن الفضاء**. وأخيراً، مع ظهور تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر في التسعينيات، بُني أول محرك بحث على يد مهندس الكمبيوتر آلان إيمتاج.



مفردات النص الأساسية

pulley	بكرة	a piece of equipment consisting of a wheel over which a rope or chain is pulled to lift heavy things
lever	رافعة	a simple machine used to lift something heavy
millennium	ألفية	a period of one thousand years
gin	محالج	a machine that separates the seeds of a cotton plant from the cotton
maintenance	صيانة	actions performed to keep a machine or system functioning or in service
aeronautical	هندسة طيران	related to designing, making, and flying planes
elevate	ارتقاء	to raise something to a higher position

Read the text and answer the following questions:

- The pulley, the lever, and the wheel invented by..... engineers.
A) modern C) new
B) primitive D) contemporary
- All types of today engineering depend on basic inventions such as lever and pulley.
A) modern C) old
B) new D) contemporary
-was the pioneer of engineering who built a pyramid in Egypt.
A) Imhotep C) Alan Emtage
B) Thomas Savery D) James Watt
- The oldest practical water- powered machines appeared in
A) Iraq C) Mesopotamia
B) Egypt D) Persia
- The cotton gin was invented by the engineers.
A) European C) Indian
B) Syrian D) Egyptian
- Aeronautical engineering is related to the design of electronic machines.
A) true
B) false
- The inventions of James Watt contributed to the growth of mechanical engineering.
A) true
B) false
- Imhotep invented the first steam engine in the world.
A) true
B) false

Answers:

- 1 - B
- 2 - C
- 3 - A
- 4 - D
- 5 - C
- 6 - B
- 7 - A
- 8 - B



9. To develop useful tools and objects, all types of today engineering depend on old basic inventions such as lever and pulley.

- A) true
- B) false

10. The word "pulley" means:

- A) a simple machine used to lift something heavy
- B) a machine that separates the seeds of a cotton plant from the cotton
- C) related to designing, making, and flying planes
- D) a piece of equipment consisting of a wheel over which a rope or chain is pulled to lift heavy things

11. The word "lever" means:

- A) a simple machine used to lift something heavy
- B) a machine that separates the seeds of a cotton plant from the cotton
- C) related to designing, making, and flying planes
- D) a piece of equipment consisting of a wheel over which a rope or chain is pulled to lift heavy things

12. The word "millennium" means:

- A) a piece of equipment consisting of a wheel over which a rope or chain is pulled to lift heavy things
- B) actions performed to keep a machine or system functioning or in service
- C) a period of one thousand year
- D) to raise something to a higher position

13. The word "gin" means:

- A) a simple machine used to lift something heavy
- B) a machine that separates the seeds of a cotton plant from the cotton
- C) related to designing, making, and flying planes
- D) a piece of equipment consisting of a wheel over which a rope or chain is pulled to lift heavy things

14. The word "maintenance" means:

- A) a machine that separates the seeds of a cotton plant from the cotton
- B) related to designing, making, and flying planes
- C) a piece of equipment consisting of a wheel over which a rope or chain is pulled to lift heavy things
- D) actions performed to keep a machine or system functioning or in service.

15. The word "aeronautical" means

- A) related to designing, making, and flying planes
- B) a simple machine used to lift something heavy
- C) a machine that separates the seeds of a cotton plant from the cotton
- D) a piece of equipment consisting of a wheel over which a rope or chain is pulled to lift heavy things

16. The word "elevate" means:

- A) a machine that separates the seeds of a cotton plant from the cotton
- B) related to designing, making, and flying planes
- C) to raise something to a higher position
- D) a simple machine used to lift something heavy

Answers:

9 - A

10 - D

11 - A

12 - C

13 - B

14 - D

15 - A

16 - C



Workbook

Reading

Page 32

Medical Technology Engineering

- A. As a result of the **substantial** scientific and technological development that **affected** many **disciplines**, many **branches** have appeared within the specialisation of engineering in particular, including **medical technology engineering**, which is also called **biomedical engineering**. This field is **concerned** with studying the body from an engineering point of view, in order to design suitable **artificial limbs**, organs, or other medical devices.
- B. Medical technology engineering helps doctors **define** their **tasks** and **facilitates** their work more, so the medical device has become an **essential assistant** for the doctors in all steps, starting from **diagnosis**, to the end of the **treatment** course. The need for development in this field has made designing medical devices a great **priority**, and this **in turn led to** the **intervention** of electrical, mechanical computer engineers and others, whose **knowledge** does not **depend on** their specialties only, but rather, they must be familiar with all **aspects** of human body, from **biology**, **anatomy** and **physiology**. So that the medical devices designed are useful for the human body.
- C. Medical devices can be **divided** into two parts, diagnostic medical devices, most **notably** the **ultrasound** device, and medical **therapeutic** devices used in chemical treatments. Another **classification** includes three **categories**. Firstly, we have simple devices such as **bandages**, body **temperature** meters and others. There are also more **complex** devices that **require** a **certain amount** of **caution**, such as those that **emit X-rays**. Finally, there are those which require a **deep** study before their use, such as the **valves** used in the artificial heart, in addition to the artificial **joints**.
- D. Medical engineers work in many fields like **well-equipped** hospitals and **clinics** in particular, medical **companies** and the advanced **major** research centers in universities. In the end, medical engineers work in **cooperation** with all disciplines, including **nursing**, medicine, biology, and other disciplines.
- E. **In short**, it is certain that this new branch of engineering has improved **healthcare** to a great **extent**. Furthermore, the design process is better as a result of new technology with 3D **printing** being the most **favored** new tool. Nowadays biomedical engineers are able to develop new **procedures** using knowledge from many technical **sources**; or **conduct** research needed to solve clinical problems.

• Choose the most suitable headings for these paragraphs from the list of eight headings below.

1. Classification of medical devices
2. How medical engineering works today
3. Importance of medical technology engineering
4. The concept of medical engineering
5. Work field of medical engineers

Answers:

- 1 - C
- 2 - E
- 3 - B
- 4 - A
- 5 - D

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعز اهتماماً للتولين

Translation

نتيجة للتطور العلمي والتقني الهائل المؤثر في العديد من التخصصات، ظهرت الكثير من الفروع ضمن تخصص الهندسة على وجه الخصوص، ومنها هندسة التكنولوجيا الطبية والتي تسمى أيضًا الهندسة الطبية الحيوية. يختص هذا المجال بدراسة الجسم من وجهة نظر هندسية لتصميم أطراف صناعية أو أعضاء أو أجهزة طبية أخرى مناسبة.

وتساعد هندسة التكنولوجيا الطبية الأطباء في تحديد مهامهم وتسهيل عملهم بشكل أكبر، فأصبح الجهاز الطبي مساعدًا أساسيًا للأطباء في جميع الخطوات، بدءًا من تشخيص المرض، وحتى نهاية دورة العلاج. إن الحاجة إلى التطوير في هذا المجال جعلت تصميم الأجهزة الطبية أولوية كبيرة، وهذا بدوره أدى إلى تدخل مهندسي الكهرباء والميكانيك والحاسب الآلي وغيرهم، الذين لا تعتمد معرفتهم على تخصصاتهم فقط، بل يجب أن يكونوا ملمين بجميع جوانب جسم الإنسان من علم الأحياء والتشريح ووظائف الجسم، بحيث تكون الأجهزة الطبية المصممة مفيدة لجسم الإنسان.

يمكن تقسيم الأجهزة الطبية إلى قسمين: الأجهزة الطبية التشخيصية، وأبرزها جهاز الموجات فوق الصوتية، والأجهزة الطبية العلاجية المستخدمة في العلاجات الكيميائية. وهناك تصنيف آخر يشمل ثلاث فئات: أولاً، لدينا أجهزة بسيطة مثل الضمادات، وأجهزة قياس درجة حرارة الجسم وغيرها. وهناك أيضًا الأجهزة الأكثر تعقيدًا التي تتطلب قدرًا معينًا من الحذر، مثل تلك التي تصدر أشعة سينية. وأخيرًا، هناك الأجهزة التي تتطلب دراسة عميقة قبل استخدامها مثل الصمامات المستخدمة في القلب الاصطناعي، بالإضافة إلى المفصل الصناعية.

ويعمل المهندسون الطبيون في العديد من المجالات مثل المستشفيات والعيادات المجهزة تجهيزًا جيدًا، والشركات الطبية خصوصًا، ومراكز الأبحاث الكبرى المتقدمة في الجامعات. في النهاية، يعمل المهندسون الطبيون بالتعاون مع كل التخصصات بما في ذلك التمريض والطب وعلم الأحياء وغيرها من التخصصات.

بالمجمل، من المؤكد أن هذا الفرع الجديد من الهندسة قد حسن الرعاية الصحية إلى حد كبير. وعلاوة على ذلك، أصبحت عملية التصميم أفضل نتيجة للتقنيات الجديدة، حيث تُعد الطباعة ثلاثية الأبعاد الأداة الجديدة الأكثر تفضيلًا. وفي الوقت الحاضر، بات المهندسون الطبيون قادرين على تطوير أساليب جديدة بناء على المعارف والعلوم من المصادر التقنية العديدة؛ أو إجراء الأبحاث اللازمة لحل المشاكل السريرية.

مفردات النص الأساسية

disciplines	تخصصات	a field of study
limb	طرف	an arm or a leg
ultrasound	موجات فوق صوتية	a medical process using the reflections of high-frequency sound waves to construct an image of a body organ
therapeutic	علاجية	relating to the treatment or cure of an illness
conduct	إجراء	to carry out or do something



Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Medical engineering means the..... in order to design suitable artificial limbs and organs.

- A. study of the body from an engineering point of view.
- B. study of the body from medical point of view.
- C. study of the body from medical and engineering point of view.
- D. study of the body from traditional point of view.

2. Medical engineering helps doctors.....

- A. invent new devices
- B. use traditional methods
- C. define their tasks and facilitates their work more.
- D. define their tasks and makes it hard to do their work

3.are the two parts of medical devices.

- A. Sport devices and medical therapeutic devices.
- B. Diagnostic medical devices and mobile devices.
- C. Diagnostic medical devices and medical therapeutic devices
- D. Sport devices and mobile devices.

4. Complex devices, such as those that emit x-rays, require....

- A. less caution.
- B. more caution
- C. trivial caution
- D. no caution

5. Bandages, body temperature meters and others are examples of

- A. complex devices
- B. simple devices
- C. complicated devices
- D. both B and C

6. Medical engineers work in many fields like well-equipped hospitals, clinics and financial companies.

- A- true
- B- false

7. Medical engineering is able to develop new procedures from many technical sources.

- A- true
- B- false

8. Medical devices can be divided into four parts.

- A- true
- B- false

9. Biomedical engineering is another name for medical technology engineering.

- A- true
- B- false

10. The word "discipline" means:

- A. relating to the treatment or cure of an illness
- B. an arm or a leg.
- C. a field of study
- D. to carry out or do something.



11. The word "limb" means:

- A. relating to the treatment or cure of an illness.
- B. an arm or a leg.
- C. a field of study.
- D. to carry out or do something

12. The word "ultrasound" means:

- A. relating to the treatment or cure of an illness
- B. an arm or a leg
- C. a medical process using the reflections of high-frequency sound waves to construct an image of a body organ
- D. to carry out or do something

13. The word "therapeutic" means:

- A. relating to the treatment or cure of an illness
- B. an arm or a leg
- C. to carry out or do something
- D. a field of study

14. The word "conduct" means:

- A. relating to the treatment or cure of an illness
- B. an arm or a leg
- C. to carry out or do something
- D. a field of study

Answers:

- 1 - A
- 2 - C
- 3 - C
- 4 - B
- 5 - B
- 6 - B
- 7 - A
- 8 - B
- 9 - A
- 10 - C
- 11 - B
- 12 - C
- 13 - A
- 14 - C



Vocabulary

Phrasal Verbs

check over	يتفحص	to inspect for any faults, errors or defects
drive into	يطرق	to force something into something else by hitting it
eat away	يتآكل	to erode or corrode
fence off	يضع سياج	to restrict access using some kind of barrier
jack up	يرفع	to raise using some kind of mechanic or hydraulic device
pull down	يهدم	to destroy something quite big
shore up	يُدعّم	to support something or keep it from falling by placing something under or against it

Prepositions of Movement

To	إلى (مع تحديد وجهة)	I drove to Homs yesterday.
Into	في (تفيد الانتقال)	I drove into the fence.
Onto	على (تفيد الانتقال)	He stepped onto the stage.
From	من (تحديد نقطة الانطلاق)	The plane from Cairo arrived.
Off	من على (تفيد الانتقال)	The vase fell off the table.
Out of	خارج (تفيد الانتقال)	I moved the chair out of my room.



للمزيد من الشرح بإمكانك متابعة فيديو قاعدة "أحرف الجر" من هنا:

Pronunciation

Elision

القاعدة: يمكن لبعض الأصوات في اللغة المحكية السريعة أن تختفي، ويعرّف بالادغام، حيث يحذف الصوت من الكلام.

الأصوات /t/ و /d/ تُحذف بشكل متكرر، خاصة عندما تكون موجودة بين حرفين ساكنين آخرين.

على سبيل المثال:

• سنسمع الصوت /t/ في كلمة fact لكن لن نسمعه في facts.

• سنسمع الصوت /d/ في كلمة land لكن لن نسمعه في landlady.

ملاحظة: هذا يعني أن الصوت الساكن /t/ في **النفي**، وكذلك النهاية /d/ أو /t/ في الأزمنة الماضية والمبنية للمجهول، قد تختفي أيضًا.

- I don'(t) know.
- I watch(ed) TV las(t) night.



في الجدول أمثلة قليلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا:

Everyday English

Hesitation and Uncertainty

• عندما نريد أن نعبر عن نوع من التردد أو عندما لا نكون متأكدين من شيء ما، نستخدم عادةً التعبيرات التالية:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| • Hm, it sounds a bit risky to me. | • I haven't made up my mind yet |
| • I don't know much about | • I'll have to think about that |
| • I'm not sure about that | • I'm not very good at |
| • Maybe, maybe not. | • I can't decide yet |
| • Perhaps I can | • It might work |
| • Oh, I don't know whether I could. | |



Choose the correct answer

1. Make sure you the joints before you leave today.

- A. ace a test C. go under the knife
B. eat away D. check over

2. The carpenter has used a special hammer to the nails the finished doors.

- A. fence off C. drive into
B. eat away D. check over

3. This harsh environment is going to at this concrete over time.

- A. fence off C. drive into
B. eat away D. check over

4. The workers had to the area in order not to harm anybody during the work.

- A. fence off C. drive into
B. eat away D. fit in with

5. I have to the car to change the tire.

- A. fence off C. drive into
B. jack up D. check over

6. We'll have to the old building before they start work.

- A. reached out to C. join the ranks of
B. drive into D. pull down

7. We need to the roof before it falls down.

- A. fit in with C. drive into
B. shore up D. ace a test

8. The engineer has to the joints before leaving the site.

- A. drive into C. fence off
B. eat away D. check over

9. We need a suitable size of nails to be that old chair to be repaired.

- A. shored up C. driven into
B. pulled down D. eaten away

10. Houses by the sea are usually faster because of moisture.

- A. eaten away C. checked over
B. fenced off D. driven into

11. The police have the crime theatre in order to start investigation.

- A. knocked at C. eaten away
B. fenced off D. driven into

12. We moved the chairs my bedroom.

- A. onto B. about C. into D. at

13. The actor ran the stage.

- A. of B. onto C. into D. about

14. They walked the next town.

- A. to B. of C. about D. off

15. We moved the chairs my bedroom.

- A. about B. at C. on D. out of

Answers:

- 1 - D
2 - C
3 - B
4 - A
5 - B
6 - D
7 - B
8 - D
9 - C
10 - A
11 - B
12 - C
13 - B
14 - A
15 - D



16. The actor ran the stage.

- A. at B. off C. into D. about

17. We drove London.

- A. about B. out C. onto D. from

18. My brother drove Homs in one hour.

- A. to B. about C. into D. off

19. The vase fell the table and shattered on the floor.

- A. onto B. out C. into D. off

20. She suddenly turned and crashed the fence.

- A. to B. from C. into D. around

21. What time does the flight Cairo arrive?

- A. around B. from C. into D. in

22. I slipped as I stepped the platform.

- A. to B. about C. onto D. in

23. Take your hands your pockets and help me!

- A. to B. out of C. into D. about

24. The monkey escaped its cage and jumped into the lake.

- A. off B. from C. at D. of

25. It took a long time to get the monkey the lake and back into its cage.

- A. of B. into C. onto D. out of

26. Henry drove his car the beach and then he couldn't move it because the wheels sank into the sand.

- A. about B. into C. onto D. in

27. In the end he needed eight people to push it the beach and back the road.

- A. off/onto B. to/out of C. from/off D. onto/off

28. We thought we should walk the bakery for breakfast because it is such a beautiful day.

- A. on B. from C. to D. into

29. Which /t/ sound of the following is elided:

- A. fact B. act C. perfectly D. night

30. Which /d/ sound of the following is elided:

- A. pounds B. food C. sand D. hand

31. What about joining our new project, Tareq?

- A. I'm not sure about it. C. No, I refuse.
B. Well, I agree. D. Impossible!

(express hesitation)

32. Your friend asks you to join his football team. You'd like to but you aren't sure about your father's opinion.

- A. That's true. I haven't thought about that before.
B. Oh, I don't know whether I could.
C. Why not?
D. Of course I accept.

(express hesitation)

Answers:

- 16 – B
17 – D
18 – A
19 – D
20 – C
21 – B
22 – C
23 – B
24 – B
25 – D
26 – C
27 – A
28 – C
29 – C
30 – A
31 – A
32 – B



33. Your friends are going on a journey to Aleppo and want you to join them. But it's your sister's birthday at the same time. (express hesitation)

- A. When is the journey?
- B. I agree.
- C. I'm not sure about that.
- D. But what could be the reason behind that?

34. Your family are having dinner at a restaurant but you have an exam next week.

- A. Sure, I will go. (express hesitation)
- B. Certainly, I can go.
- C. I haven't made up my mind yet.
- D. That's true. I haven't thought about that before.

35. Do you think that students will study at home instead of going to school? (express hesitation)

- A. I am not sure about that.
- B. Perhaps I can.
- C. I am not very good at
- D. I don't know whether I could

36. Would science and technology find a cure for cancer?

- A. Perhaps I can. (express hesitation)
- B. I don't know much about that.
- C. I am not very good at
- D. I don't know whether I could

37. I've heard that Moroccan people won't need a visa to go to Europe. Is that certain for you?

- A. I don't know whether I could (express uncertainty)
- B. Perhaps I can
- C. I am not very good at
- D. I am not sure about that

38. Do you think that Indonesian will be an international language in the future?

- A. Perhaps I can. (express uncertainty)
- B. It might be!
- C. I am not very good at
- D. I don't know whether I could

39. Are you sure that Arsenal will win the game?

- A. It might work (express uncertainty)
- B. Perhaps
- C. Perhaps I can
- D. I am not very good at

Answers:

- 33 – C
- 34 – C
- 35 – A
- 36 – B
- 37 – D
- 38 – B
- 39 – B

The causative verbs



رابط شرح الدرس

نستخدم قاعدة السببية عندما نريد إيضاح أننا المستفيدون / المتضررون من الفعل و لكن لا نقوم به بأنفسنا على سبيل المثال:

My father repaired the car.

أبي هو من قام بإصلاح السيارة بنفسه - أي هو الفاعل - وهذه ليست جملة سببية بل فعل ماض عادي

My father had the car repaired.

أبي ليس هو من قام بإصلاح السيارة بنفسه، من المحتمل أنه ذهب الى حرفي سيارات - أي هو ليس الفاعل - وهذه جملة سببية

Form

recipient	+	have / get	+	Object + V ₃ + Complement
المستفيد أو المتضرر	نضع have / get بصيغة مناسبة للجملة الرئيسية		المفعول به	النتمة
هو الشخص أو الشيء المستفيد أو المتضرر من الفعل (ولكنه ليس الفاعل)	Present simple	have / get	عادةً يكون شيء وهو الذي يقع عليه الفعل.	نضع التكملة ان وجدت، و عادةً لا نجري أي تغيير عليها
	Past simple	had / got		
	Present continuous	is - am - are + having / getting		
	Past continuous	was - were + having / getting		
	Present perfect	have - has + had / got		
	Past perfect	had + had / got		
	Modals	Modal + have / get		
	Any verb with to	The verb + have / get		

Examples

Present simple	I have / get my hair cut every month .
Past simple	I had / got my hair cut last month .
Present continuous	I am having / getting my hair cut now .
Past continuous	I was having / getting my hair cut when you called me.
Present perfect	I have had / got my hair cut recently .
Past perfect	I had had / got my hair cut before you arrived .
Modals	I must have / get my hair cut, it's getting long.
Any verb with to	I ought to have / get my hair cut.

عند وجود ضمير انعكاسي في الجملة:

عندما نجد الضمائر **Myself, yourself, herself**... الخ أو الكلمة **Own** في الجملة نحذف الضمير الانعكاسي أو كلمة **Own** ثم نقلب الإثبات إلى نفي و العكس صحيح مع مراعاة الزمن بالتأكيد.

My father **fixed** the car **himself** → My father **didn't have** the car **fixed**.

My father **didn't fix** the car **himself** → My father **had** the car **fixed**.

ملاحظة هامة

My father fixes the car	My father fixes the car himself	My father doesn't have the car fixed	The car is fixed by my father
حاضر بسيط	حاضر بسيط مع ضمير انعكاسي	جملة سببية بحالة النفي	جملة مبني للمجهول
كل الجمل السابقة متطابقة في المعنى، و المقصود أن الأب في المثال السابق هو من اصلح السيارة بنفسه من دون الاعتماد على فاعل خارجي.			
My father doesn't fix the car	My father doesn't fix the car himself	My father has the car fixed	The car isn't fixed by my father
حاضر بسيط بحالة النفي	حاضر بسيط بحالة النفي مع ضمير انعكاسي	جملة سببية	جملة مبني للمجهول بحالة النفي
كل الجمل السابقة متطابقة في المعنى، و المقصود أن الأب في المثال السابق <u>لم يصلح</u> السيارة بنفسه وربما قام بالاعتماد على فاعل خارجي.			

النكشات

1 كيف تفرق بين السببية و المبني للمجهول في حالة التام وبين الحاضر / الماضي التام المستمر ؟

Perfect continuous tenses	Passive voice with perfect	Causative with perfect
They have / had been changing the tires.	The tires have / had been changed by them.	They have / had had the tires changed
بعد الفعل المساعد (have/had) يوجد been + V_{ing}	بعد الفعل المساعد (have/had) يوجد been + V₃	بعد الفعل المساعد (have/had) يوجد had + V₃
الفاعل يكون قبل الفعل والمفعول به بعد الفعل	المفعول به يكون قبل الفعل والفاعل بعد By ويمكن أن يُحذف	المستفيد/المتضرر يكون في بداية الجملة ومن قام بالفعل غالباً مجهول
Examples		
He has / had been cleaning the room all day.	The room has / had been cleaned by him.	He has / had had the room cleaned.
هو من قام بتنظيف الغرفة (فاعل)	الغرفة من تم تنظيفها (مفعول به)	هو المستفيد من تنظيف الغرفة (ولكن ليس هو من نظفها بنفسه أي الفاعل غير مذكور)
تذكر : السببية و المبني للمجهول ليس فيهما حالة الحاضر / الماضي التام المستمر		



Choose the correct answer

1. My father had the car

- A. mend B. mends C. mended D. had mended

2. My father didn't the car mended.

- A. have B. has C. had D. have had

3. I my shoes repaired.

- A. will B. must C. should D. must have

4. My mother goes to that shop. She the carpets cleaned there.

- A. have B. has C. will D. must

5. I'd almost forgotten. I a new key made for the house.

- A. ought to have B. ought to get C. ought to had D. Both A&B

6. That shop isn't expensive. I my watch mended there last week.

- A. get B. gets C. got D. am getting

7. I don't think I can afford to have our flat

- A. painted B. paint C. paints D. painting

8. Huda her bag pulled off her shoulder last week.

- A. has B. had C. have D. is having

9. Ali had his driving licence taken away the police.

- A. by B. with C. for D. in

10. Mona had her glasses

- A. break B. breaks C. broke D. broken

11. We had our electricity cut off because we to pay the bill.

- A. forget B. are forgetting C. had forgotten D. would forget

12. John had his clothes in a fight.

- A. tear B. tears C. are tearing D. torn

13. If I go to a barber, I my hair cut.

- A. have B. will have C. can have D. all of them are correct

14. If I go to a mechanic, I can my car serviced.

- A. get B. gets C. got D. am getting

15. If I to a carpenter, I can have my chair mended.

- A. go B. went C. had gone D. was going

16. If I go to a tailor, I have a new shirt made

- A. am B. can C. was D. were

17. I stood so close to the fire that I my legs burnt.

- A. get B. got C. will got D. has got

18. Ahmad the meat cut into small pieces yesterday.

- A. want to have C. wanted to have
B. wants to have D. has wanted to have



19. Ranaher hair twice a year.

- A. had / cut C. had to have / cut
B. has / cut D. didn't has / cut

20. Yesterday, my mother her eyes by the optician.

- A. has / checked C. had / checked
B. will have / checked D. is going to have / checked

21. Mrs. Hakim won't check her heartbeat herself next week. She

- A. has it checked C. will have it checked
B. had it checked D. didn't have it checked

22. We the front door of our house tomorrow.

- A. had/mended C. are going to have/mend
B. have/mended D. are going to have/mended

23. I painted the house myself. I

- A. don't have it painted C. didn't have it painted
B. don't have painted it D. will have it painted

24. Tom his pay yesterday.

- A. has / reduced C. doesn't have / reduced
B. will have / reduced D. had / reduced

25. I am not repairing my car myself. I

- A. have it repaired C. had it repaired
B. didn't have it repaired D. am having it repaired

26. Last Sunday, Tareq his windows

- A. has/cleaned C. will have/cleaned
B. had/cleaned D. doesn't have/ cleaned

Answers:

- 1 - C
2 - A
3 - D
4 - B
5 - D
6 - C
7 - A
8 - B
9 - A
10 - D
11 - C
12 - D
13 - D
14 - A
15 - A
16 - B
17 - B
18 - C
19 - B
20 - C
21 - C
22 - D
23 - C
24 - D
25 - D
26 - B

كلمتين بيني وبينك ... ✍️

”الغلط مو عيب، الغلط دليل إنك عم تتحرك للأمام.

كل فشل بيعلمك درس جديد بيقويك ويبدرك، لا تخاف تغلط، لا تخاف تجرب، ولا تخاف تطلع برا الصورة المثالية يلي براسك، لأنو الغلط معناه إنك عم تجرب شي جديد، وبالتالي عم تتطور، وهاد اللي بدنا ياه بالضبط، وأهم شي، لا تنسى تعيش اللحظة وانت عم تبني مستقبلك.“



Workbook

Reading

SHABAB Project

Page 39

Most students, when they go to university, see this **experience** as a first step in their **career**. Where then they will go to the job market to get an **opportunity**. But some students have some great **ideas** and don't wait until they **graduate**. With so many free **resources** and technology **available**, many students are able to find different ways to start their own small business while they are still in **college**.

SHABAB Strategy Highlighting and Building Abilities for Business is one of the projects of the Syrian **Trust** for Development **headed** by *Asma al-Assad*. It is a **non-profit** Syrian project that works on **rehabilitating** the skills of young people between the ages of 15 and 24 and **developing** their basic **skills**. It is the first project of its **kind** in Syria that **aims** to support the culture of organising and **operating** a business among Syrian **youth** to **encourage** them to enter the business world and **provide** young people with skills that **enable** them to become **productive members** of society. It also aims to create a positive **impression** on the Syrian society towards working in the business world and **establishing** small projects.

SHABAB Project aims to providing **practical training** and career **advice** to university students to improve future employment **prospects**. The training courses **range** from the **rules** of **conducting** job **interviews** and writing a CV or **enhancing** knowledge of the business environment and developing professional skills. **Certified coaches** and career **advisors** coach and **guide** students as they search for a job in the **labour** market or **evaluate** their career. While the courses for **outstanding** students who **aspire** to be **pioneers focus on** teaching the basic **principles** of business and helping them develop their own businesses. At present, the project **operates** within three **clinics** that work in three Syrian universities, and the project has so far succeeded in reaching 175,000 students.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تفر اهتماماً للتلوين.

Translation

يرى معظم الطلاب عندما يذهبون إلى الجامعة أن هذه التجربة تمثل الخطوة الأولى في حياتهم المهنية. حيث يتوجهون بعد ذلك إلى سوق العمل للحصول على فرصة عمل، ولكن بعض الطلاب يتحلون ببعض الأفكار الرائعة ولا ينتظرون حتى التخرج. فمع توفر العديد من الموارد والتقنيات المجانية، يستطيع الكثير من الطلاب إيجاد طرق مختلفة لبدء أعمالهم التجارية الصغيرة وهم لا يزالون في الكلية.

مشروع "إبراز وبناء القدرات في مجال الأعمال" هو أحد مشاريع الأمانة السورية للتنمية التي ترأسها أسماء الأسد. وهو مشروع سوري غير ربحي يعمل على إعادة تأهيل مهارات الشباب الذين تتراوح أعمارهم بين 15 و24 عامًا وتطوير مهاراتهم الأساسية. ويعد المشروع الأول من نوعه في سوريا الذي يهدف إلى دعم ثقافة تنظيم وتشغيل الأعمال التجارية بين الشباب السوري لتشجيعهم على دخول عالم الأعمال وتزويد الشبان بالمهارات التي تجعلهم أعضاء منتجين وفاعلين في المجتمع. كما يهدف أيضًا إلى خلق انطباع إيجابي لدى المجتمع السوري تجاه العمل في عالم الأعمال وتأسيس المشاريع الصغيرة.



يهدف مشروع "شباب" إلى توفير التدريب العملي والمشورة المهنية لطلاب الجامعات لتحسين فرص العمل في المستقبل.

تتراوح الدورات التدريبية ما بين قواعد إجراء مقابلات العمل وكتابة السيرة الذاتية أو تعزيز المعرفة بيئة العمل وتطوير المهارات المهنية. يقوم المدربون والمستشارون المهنيون المعتمدون بتدريب الطلاب وإرشادهم أثناء بحثهم عن وظيفة في سوق العمل أو تقييم حياتهم المهنية. بينما تركز الدورات المخصصة للطلاب المتميزين الذين يطمحون لأن يكونوا رواداً على تعليم المبادئ الأساسية للأعمال ومساعدتهم على تطوير أعمالهم الخاصة. يعمل المشروع حالياً ضمن ثلاث مراكز تعمل في ثلاث جامعات سورية، وقد نجح المشروع حتى الآن في الوصول إلى 175,000 طالب وطالبة.

مفردات النص الأساسية

career	مسيرة مهنية	professional life
developing	تطوير	improving one's abilities
aspire	يطمح	seek to attain a goal

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Some students don't wait until they graduate to go to the job market because they have some great.

- A. firms
- B. companies
- C. ideas
- D. businesses

2. SHABAB Project aims to provide to university students to improve future employment prospects.

- A. theoretical training and career advice
- B. practical training and financial support
- C. practical training and career advice
- D. imaginary training and career advice

3. At present, the project operates within three clinics that work in

- A. three Syrian universities
- B. three international universities
- C. two Syrian universities
- D. only Damascus university

4. Different sources of technology make it easier for university students to start their own business.

- A. true
- B. false

5. SHABAB Project targets postgraduate students.

- A. true
- B. false



6. The project is based on helping young people for free.

- A. true
- B. false

7. The project is being applied in all Syrian cities.

- A. true
- B. false

8. The word "career" means:

- A. professional life
- B. improving one's abilities
- C. seek to attain a goal
- D. productive

9. The word "aspire" means:

- A. professional life
- B. improving one's abilities
- C. seek to attain a goal
- D. productive

10. The word "developing" means:

- A. professional life
- B. improving one's abilities
- C. seek to attain a goal.
- D. postgraduate

Answers:

- 1 - C
- 2 - C
- 3 - A
- 4 - A
- 5 - B
- 6 - A
- 7 - B
- 8 - A
- 9 - C
- 10 - B



Choose the correct answer

1. I..... to the conclusion that nowadays nobody cares about anything.

- A. come C. will come
B. have come D. has come

2. They for three hours when the storm suddenly broke.

- A. had been running C. are running
B. have been running D. have run

3. I assumed you..... for the repairs until the end of last year.

- A. will pay C. have paid
B. have been paying D. had been paying

4. She on that manuscript for two years now.

- A. has been working C. is working
B. had been working D. was working

5. Suzan trying to pass her driving test but fails every time.

- A. kept C. keeps
B. is keeping D. was keeping

6. I..... complete silence now-while I try this experiment.

- A. am wanting C. have wanted
B. want D. was wanting

7. I can't leave now. I..... for an important client.

- A. was waiting C. have waited
B. had waited D. am waiting

8. I was just wondering what while I was away.

- A. has happened C. had happened
B. happens D. is happening

9. Ahlam Mestaghanmi some of the best novels in recent years.

- A. has written C. was writing
B. wrote D. had written

10. How many times..... you your house broken into?

- A. do / have C. have / had
B. did / have D. have / have

11. I can't phone for an ambulance 'I..... my mobile.

- A. loses C. am losing
B. have lost D. will lose

12. She hurt her back while she in the garden.

- A. is working C. has worked
B. was working D. had worked

13. Tropical storms often in the Caribbean.

- A. occur C. are occurring
B. will occur D. have occurred

14. Please don't make so much noise. I to work.

- A. 'm trying C. tried
B. try D. has tried

Answers:

- 1 - B
2 - A
3 - D
4 - A
5 - C
6 - B
7 - D
8 - C
9 - A
10 - C
11 - B
12 - B
13 - A
14 - A



15. I always..... the TV news when I lived abroad.

- A. have watched C. watched
B. am watching D. will watch

16. I didn't watch the program about hurricanes on TV last night, because I a similar program.

- A. had already seen C. has already seen
B. was already seen D. is already seeing

17. Food by farmers all over the country.

- A. grow C. is grown
B. grows D. are grown

18. In the past, traditional methods..... by farmers.

- A. are used C. have been used
B. were used D. had been used

19. Nowadays, more sophisticated methods by farmers.

- A. are being used C. have been used
B. were being used D. had been used

20. Since the 1970s, many plants dedicated to producing agricultural equipment by the government such as trucks, tractors and fertilisers.

- A. have constructed C. have been constructed
B. had constructed D. had been constructed

21. Special banks for giving loans to farmers have also established by the government.

- A. to be B. be C. being D. been

22. Many paths have been in the farming lands by local councils to facilitate the movement of crops to the market.

- A. open B. opened C. opening D. none of them

23. Exporting certificates issued by the Ministry of Transport as well as the Ministry of Economy for importing small lorries and pick-ups.

- A. is B. are C. be D. been

24. These vehicles can used by farmers to transport their crops and tools.

- A. to be B. be C. being D. been

25. An email to you confirming your purchase.

- A. is send B. was send C. is sending D. is sent

26. Safety procedures by people.

- A. must follow B. will follow C. must be followed D. can follow

27. Confidence in cheques by the public nowadays.

- A. was being lost B. was lost C. had been lost D. is being lost

28. Ms. Lee taking things from the shop.

- A. have been caught B. had been caught C. has caught D. had caught

29. It..... by accountants that the firm made a loss.

- A. was been reported B. is been reported C. has been reported D. have been reported

30. Raneem wants her nose altered.

- A. have B. to have C. to get D. Both B and C

Answers:

- 15 - C
16 - A
17 - C
18 - B
19 - A
20 - C
21 - D
22 - B
23 - B
24 - B
25 - D
26 - C
27 - D
28 - B
29 - C
30 - D



31. I have the oil in my car (by the mechanic).

- A. change B. changed C. has changed D. had changed

32. The patient had his leg after the accident.

- A. amputated B. amputate C. has amputated D. had amputated

33. I usually my glasses mended at the shop on the corner.

- A. have B. has C. had D. to have

34. We our house repaired last month.

- A. have B. has C. had D. to have

35. I my DVD player repaired next week (by a friend of mine, who's an electrician).

- A. had B. had to have C. was going to have D. am going to have

36. Lisa the hairdryer yesterday.

- A. has/repared B. had/repared C. is having/repared D. will have repared

37. I my hair yesterday.

- A. have/cut B. can have/cut C. will have/cut D. had/cut

38. I the oil in my car at the moment.

- A. am having/changed C. had/changed
B. have/changed D. didn't have/changed

39. Ben that wall tomorrow.

- A. has/built C. has have/built
B. is going to have/built D. doesn't have/built

40. My father the trees recently.

- A. has had/planted C. has have/planted
B. has has/planted D. had had/planted

41. Sara the room every day.

- A. had/tidied C. didn't have/tidied
B. will have/tidied D. has/tidied

42. Why should I change my habits to their way of life?

- A. go under the knife C. ace a test
B. follow through D. fit in with

43. They are the bottom part of the garden because of a deep hole.

- A. fitting in with C. fencing off
B. following through D. pulling down

44. More and more women are choosing to to improve their appearance.

- A. fit in with C. follow through
B. go under the knife D. back the wrong house

45. In a few years, our country should be able to the world's most developed nations.

- A. join the ranks of C. fit in with
B. follow through D. fence off

46. I think you're supporting the wrong person. You shouldn't

- A. be on a roll C. follow through
B. back the wrong house D. fit in with

Answers:

- 31 - B
32 - A
33 - A
34 - C
35 - D
36 - B
37 - D
38 - A
39 - B
40 - A
41 - D
42 - D
43 - C
44 - B
45 - A
46 - B



47. Being late to work, the worker told his boss a story about his mother being

- A. fit in with
- B. fenced off
- C. at death's door
- D. aced a test

48. He has never made an effort to current events.

- A. follow through
- B. fit in with
- C. reach out to
- D. keep up with

49. When we were on our way to Aleppo, our car broke down and we had to

- A. shore it up
- B. jack it up
- C. follow through
- D. join the ranks of

50. She watched him walkthe platform.

- A. onto
- B. into
- C. for
- D. after

51. He got into his car and drove

- A. with
- B. for
- C. from
- D. off

52. I'm surprised by the Of university department that a high rank student can choose.

- A. vary
- B. various
- C. variety
- D. very

53. A successful person is able to differentiate between fantasy and

- A. real
- B. realize
- C. reality
- D. really

54. When I grow up, I want to be a

- A. biologist
- B. biology
- C. biological
- D. biologically

55. My elder brother is a in designing artificial limbs.

- A. special
- B. specialization
- C. specialized
- D. specialist

56. Very soon, power will be supplied by underground cables.

- A. electricity
- B. electrical
- C. electronically
- D. electrically

57. Your school team has just won a football match.

(Express congratulations)

- A. Very well done! Keep it up.
- B. I am sorry about what happened.
- C. I am sure this won't happen again.
- D. You will do much better next time.

58. You have a school project and your elder sister is going to help you to do it.

(Ask for information)

- A. I am sorry about what happened.
- B. What is the procedures that should be followed?
- C. I am sure this won't happen again.
- D. You will do much better next time.

59. Your neighbor has got diabetes and he likes eating sweets.

(Give advice)

- A. You should eat sugary food.
- B. You'd better reduce eating sugar.
- C. We are very proud of you.
- D. Congratulations!

Answers:

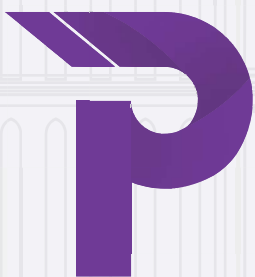
- 47 - C
- 48 - D
- 49 - B
- 50 - A
- 51 - D
- 52 - C
- 53 - C
- 54 - A
- 55 - D
- 56 - B
- 57 - A
- 58 - B
- 59 - B



Unit number

Civil Rights

Module 3 : Politics



**Made by
Pixel educational team**

Student book

Reading

Civil Rights

Page 55

Simply speaking, **human rights** are the rights which one **acquires** by being **alive**, while **civil rights** are the rights that one **obtains** by being a **legal** member of a certain **political** life. In other words, civil rights are the rights of **citizens** to **political** and **social freedom** and **equality**. They **guarantee** equal social **opportunities** and equal **protection** under the **law**, regardless of **race**, **religion**, or other personal **characteristics**.

Civil and political rights are a class of rights that protect **individuals' freedom** from **violation** by governments, social organisations, and private individuals. They **ensure** one's right to **participate** in the civil and political life of society and the **state** without **discrimination** or **repression**. Unlike other rights **concepts**, such as human rights or natural rights, in which people acquire rights **inherently** from God, civil rights must be given and guaranteed by the power of the state.

Examples of civil rights include the right to **vote**, the right to a fair **trial**, the right to government **services**, the right to a **public** education, and the right to use public **facilities**.

Civil rights are an essential **component** of **democracy**; when individuals are prevented from participating in political society, their civil rights are being **denied**. **In contrast to** civil **liberties**, which are freedoms that are **secured** by placing **restraints** on government, civil rights are secured by positive government action, often in the form of **legislation**. Civil rights laws **attempt** to guarantee **full** and equal citizenship for people who have traditionally been discriminated against on the basis of some characteristics.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّه اهتماماً للتولين.

Translation

ببساطة، إن حقوق الإنسان هي الحقوق التي يكتسبها المرء بكونه على قيد الحياة، بينما الحقوق المدنية هي الحقوق التي يحصل عليها المرء بكونه عضواً قانونياً في حياة سياسية معينة. بمعنى آخر، الحقوق المدنية هي حقوق المواطنين في الحرية السياسية والاجتماعية، والمساواة. وتضمن تكافؤ الفرص الاجتماعية المتساوية والحماية العادلة بموجب القانون، بغض النظر عن العرق أو الدين أو غير ذلك من السمات الشخصية. والحقوق المدنية والسياسية فئة من الحقوق التي تحمي حرية الأفراد من الانتهاك من قبل الحكومات والمنظمات الاجتماعية والأفراد، فهي تكفل حق الفرد في المشاركة في الحياة المدنية والسياسية للمجتمع والدولة دون تمييز أو قمع. وبخلاف مفاهيم الحقوق الأخرى، مثل حقوق الإنسان أو الحقوق الطبيعية، التي يكتسب فيها الناس حقوقاً متأصلة/بشكل طبيعي من الله، ينبغي للحقوق المدنية أن تُمنح وتضمنها سلطة الدولة.

ومن الأمثلة على الحقوق المدنية: الحق في التصويت، والحق في محاكمة عادلة، والحق في الحصول على الخدمات الحكومية، والحق في التعليم العام، والحق في استخدام المرافق العامة.

تعتبر الحقوق المدنية مكوناً أساسياً من مكونات الديمقراطية؛ فعندما يُمنع الأفراد من المشاركة في المجتمع السياسي، يُحرمون من حقوقهم المدنية. على النقيض من الحريات المدنية، وهي الحريات التي تؤمّن من خلال فرض قيود على الحكومة، تؤمّن الحقوق المدنية من خلال إجراءات حكومية إيجابية، وغالباً ما تكون على شكل تشريعات.



وتسعى قوانين الحقوق المدنية إلى ضمان المواطنة الكاملة والمتساوية للأشخاص الذين يتعرضون عادةً للتمييز على أساس بعض السمات.

مفردات النص الأساسية

vote	تصويت	a formal choice you take in an election
guarantee	ضمان	to give an assurance that something will be done right
violation	انتهاك	an action that breaks a law, an agreement or a principle
discrimination	تمييز	the practice of treating someone less fairly than others
repression	قمع	using force to control a group of people and restrict their freedom
restraints	قيود	rules which limit what people can do
trial	محاكمة	a legal process to decide if somebody is guilty or not
deny	ينكر/ يحرم	to say that something isn't true
legislation	تشريعات	a law or set of laws

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Human rights are guaranteed to each individual in society.....

- A. after death
- B. during lifetime
- C. after the age of 18
- D. after getting married

2. In comparison with civil rights, human rights..

- A. are given to individuals by the government
- B. are acquired by nature
- C. are freedoms made by the individuals themselves
- D. both A and B

3. The right to use public facilities is an example of a

- A. human right
- B. natural right
- C. civil right
- D. none of them

4. It's.....to prevent people from participating in political life.

- A. urgent
- B. legal
- C. lawful
- D. illegal



5. Legislations are formed by the government to that people enjoy their civil rights.

- A. assure
- B. ignore
- C. protect
- D. prevent

6. People's civil rights are admitted when they are prevented from participating in political society.

- A. True
- B. False

7. Civil rights are an important component of democracy.

- A. True
- B. False

8. Civil rights are guaranteed by positive government action.

- A. True
- B. False

9. The right to vote is an example of human rights.

- A. True
- B. False

10. The word "vote" means:

- A. an action that breaks a law, an agreement or a principle
- B. the practice of treating someone less fairly than others
- C. a formal choice you take in an election
- D. using force to control a group of people and restrict their freedom

11. The word "guarantee" means:

- A. using force to control a group of people and restrict their freedom
- B. to give an assurance that something will be done right
- C. rules which limit what people can do
- D. a legal process to decide if somebody is guilty or not

12. The word "violation" means:

- A. an action that breaks a law, an agreement or a principle
- B. a formal choice you take in an election
- C. to give an assurance that something will be done right
- D. a law or set of laws

13. The word "discrimination" means:

- A. to give an assurance that something will be done right
- B. an action that breaks a law, an agreement or a principle
- C. using force to control a group of people and restrict their freedom
- D. the practice of treating someone less fairly than others

14. The word "repression" means:

- A. the practice of treating someone less fairly than others
- B. to give an assurance that something will be done right
- C. using force to control a group of people and restrict their freedom
- D. rules which limit what people can do



15. The word "restraints" means:

- A. a formal choice you take in an election
- B. rules which limit what people can do
- C. to give an assurance that something will be done right
- D. an action that breaks a law, an agreement or a principle

16. The word "trial" means:

- A. a legal process to decide if somebody is guilty or not
- B. an action that breaks a law, an agreement or a principle
- C. the practice of treating someone less fairly than others
- D. using force to control a group of people and restrict their freedom

17. The word "deny" means:

- A. using force to control a group of people and restrict their freedom
- B. rules which limit what people can do
- C. a legal process to decide if somebody is guilty or not
- D. to say that something isn't true

18. The word "legislation" means:

- A. an action that breaks a law, an agreement or a principle
- B. a law or set of laws
- C. the practice of treating someone less fairly than others
- D. using force to control a group of people and restrict their freedom

Answers: Answers:

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 1 - B | 10 - C |
| 2 - B | 11 - B |
| 3 - C | 12 - A |
| 4 - D | 13 - D |
| 5 - A | 14 - C |
| 6 - B | 15 - B |
| 7 - A | 16 - A |
| 8 - A | 17 - D |
| 9 - B | 18 - B |



Workbook

Reading

Page 42

THE RIGHT TO EDUCATION

The right to education is one of the basic **universal** rights of the human being. It is one of the goals that the education **schedule** supports and is **expected** for the year 2030 in order to **achieve sustainable** development **aimed** by the United Nations. It is a **force** that enables individuals to **get rid of poverty** and achieve individual and social well-being. It is something **mandatory** for the **state**, guaranteed by its own law, for all individuals without any form of discrimination. It is the right to education in all parts of the world that includes a number of freedoms and rights that individuals are **entitled** to. It is the right to have **primary education** for all, **free of charge**, the right to have **secondary education** available to everyone without **exception**, and in all its fields, whether technical, **vocational**, or **training**. Above all, it guarantees equal **access** to **higher education** without any **distinction** or discrimination, and **ensures quality** and **meaningful** education, whether in public or private schools and universities.

Education is the right for parents to choose **freely** appropriate schools for their children and **enroll** them in, regardless of their **beliefs** and religions. In addition, it is the right to freely **establish** any educational **institution** that **adheres** to the **standards** set by the government and the state regarding students and **academic staff**.

Education is of great importance because of its great role in building society, which is made up of all **segments** of teachers, **leaders**, **politicians** and others. Its importance **lies** in getting to know a new world. Through education, people get to know other **cultures** and **worlds**, and it helps to **enhance** understanding and **communication** between them, and open the **horizon** to the knowledge of the great and their **philosophies**. It also helps in **bringing fun** and **adventure** by getting to know new things, **interests** and new people, without looking only at the subject of books and difficult exams. Through education, a person can get to know other people and build a social network and develop different life **skills** by **applying** what one learns in different **aspects** of **economic**, social or political life.

Here in Syria, the government is working hard to **promote** all these **principles** in society through free education and **adopting** new **methods** of teaching.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتلوين

Translation

يعد الحق في التعليم أحد الحقوق العالمية الأساسية للإنسان. وهو أحد الأهداف التي يدعمها جدول التعليم والمتوقعة لعام 2030 في سبيل تحقيق التنمية المستدامة التي تهدف إليها الأمم المتحدة. فهو قوة تمكّن الأفراد من التخلص من الفقر وتحقيق الرفاهية الفردية والاجتماعية، وأمر إلزامي على الدولة يكفله قانونها الخاص لجميع الأفراد دون أي شكل من أشكال التمييز. إن الحق في التعليم في جميع أنحاء العالم يشمل عددًا من الحريات والحقوق التي يحق للأفراد التمتع بها.



فهو الحق في الحصول على التعليم الابتدائي للجميع مجاناً، والحق في الحصول على التعليم الثانوي المتاح للجميع دون استثناء، وفي جميع مجالاته سواء كان تعليمًا تقنيًا أو مهنيًا أو تدريبيًا. وفوق ذلك كله، ضمان المساواة في الحصول على التعليم العالي دون أي تفرقة أو تمييز، وضمان التعليم جيد الجودة وحسن المفعى سواء أكان في المدارس أو الجامعات الحكومية أو الخاصة.

وتشمل حقوق التعلم حق الوالدين في حرية اختيار المدارس المناسبة لأبنائهم وإحاقهم بها، بغض النظر عن معتقداتهم وأديانهم. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن من الحقوق تدشين بحرية أي مؤسسة تعليمية تلتزم بالمعايير التي تضعها الحكومة والدولة فيما يتعلق بالطلاب وأعضاء هيئة التدريس.

وللتعليم أهمية كبيرة لما له من دور كبير في بناء المجتمع الذي يتكون من جميع الشرائح من معلمين وقادة وسياسيين وغيرهم. وتكمن أهميته في التعرف على عالم جديد، فمن خلال التعليم يتعرف الناس على ثقافات وعوالم أخرى، ويساعد على تعزيز التفاهم والتواصل بينهم، ويوسع الأفق لمعرفة العظماء وفلسفاتهم. كما أنه يعين على جلب المرح والمغامرة من خلال التعرف على أشياء واهتمامات وأشخاص جدد، دون حصر النظر فقط إلى موضوعات الكتب والامتحانات الصعبة. فمن خلال التعليم يستطيع المرء التعرف على أشخاص آخرين وبناء شبكة علاقات اجتماعية وتطوير مهارات حياتية مختلفة عبر تطبيق ما يتعلمه في جوانب مختلفة من الحياة الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والسياسية.

وهنا في سورية، تعمل الحكومة جاهدة على تعزيز كل هذه المبادئ في المجتمع من خلال التعليم المجاني واعتماد أساليب جديدة في التعليم.

مفردات النص الأساسية

sustainable	مستدامة	can continue for a long time
mandatory	إلزامي	obligatory or compulsory
vocational	مهني	professional
adhere	يلتزم	behave according to law
segment	قسم/شريحة	a part of something
aspect	جانب	any specific feature or element of something



Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. The right to.....is expected to be achieved by the year 2030.

- A. a fair trial
- B. Vote
- C. education
- D. government services

2. Education..... individuals to get rid of poverty and achieve individual and social well-being.

- A. prevents
- B. stops
- C. enables
- D. disables

3. According to the UN education schedule, education is accessible to...

- A. primary school level only.
- B. secondary school level only.
- C. preparatory school level only.
- D. higher education.

4. Education people's knowledge about the world.

- A. reduces
- B. decreases
- C. increases
- D. makes less

5. It is expected to achieve development of the United Nations by the year 2030.

- A. non-renewable
- B. temporary
- C. instant
- D. sustainable

6. Education enables individuals to.....poverty and achieve individual and social well-being.

- A. get rid of
- B. employ
- C. Save
- D. keep

7. Education is the right for parents to choose freely appropriate schools for their children and enroll them in, of their beliefs and religion.

- A. regarding
- B. in relation to
- C. in reference to
- D. regardless

8. A person can develop life skills by applying what one learns in aspects of economic, social or political life.

- A. similar
- B. the same
- C. different
- D. identical

9. Individuals are able to achieve social security through education.

- A. True
- B. False

10. The right to education allows individuals to make decisions freely.

- A. True
- B. False

11. Education schedule ensures quality and meaningful education only in public schools.

- A. True
- B. False

12. Education decreases people's knowledge about the world.

- A. True
- B. False

13. The word "sustainable" means:

- A. professional
- B. a part of something
- C. behave according to law
- D. can continue for a long time



14. The word "mandatory" means:

- A. compulsory
- B. any specific feature or element of something
- C. can continue for a long time
- D. professional

15. The word "vocational" means:

- A. a part of something
- B. professional
- C. behave according to law
- D. can continue for a long time

16. The word "adhere" means:

- A. compulsory
- B. behave according to law
- C. can continue for a long time
- D. professional

17. The word "segment" means:

- A. compulsory
- B. a part of something
- C. can continue for a long time
- D. professional

18. The word "aspect" means:

- A. any specific feature or element of something
- B. professional
- C. behave according to law
- D. can continue for a long time

Answers:	Answers:
1 - C	10 - A
2 - C	11 - B
3 - D	12 - B
4 - C	13 - D
5 - D	14 - A
6 - A	15 - B
7 - D	16 - B
8 - C	17 - B
9 - A	18 - A



Vocabulary

Law idioms

Beat around / about the bush	يُراوِغ	hesitate in getting to the point
An act of God	القضاء والقدر	the will of God
Break the law	يتجاوز القوانين	acted against the law
Assemble the case	يجمع الأدلة	collect data
By the book	بموجب القانون	exactly as the rules say

Drill	أداة الحفر	A tool which is used to make a hole in something.
Photocopier	آلة تصوير	A machine which makes copies of documents.
Launderette	مصبغة أو مغسلة	A place with washing machines where you can wash your clothes.
Vacuum Cleaner	مكنسة كهرباء	A machine which you use to clean floors and carpets.
Bodyguard	حارس شخصي	A person who protects important people from being attacked.
Plumber	سباك	A person whose job is to mend central heating, taps, etc.



Pronunciation

Voiced and Voiceless Sounds

القاعدة: تصنف الأصوات إلى نوعين: Voiced – Voiceless.

Voiced		Voiceless	
حيث تهترج الحبال الصوتية عند لفظ هذه الأصوات:		حيث لا تهترج الحبال الصوتية عند لفظ هذه الأصوات:	
Vowels (a,e,i,o,u)	two	ʃ	shirt
ŋ	young, ring	tʃ	chair
dʒ	juice, gentle	θ	three
ʒ	giant, vision, age	s	pass - since
r	ring	k	cat - kite - chemical
z	zoo	p	pass
ð	the	t	term - surfed
v	vision	f	fan - phone - enough
g	give	h	hat
d	door		
b	bed		

تنويه لتسهيل الحفظ: يمكنك حفظ أحرف ونهايات الـ **voiced** وتعتبر أن كل ما تبقى **voiceless** والعكس صحيح.



في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا:



Notes

① نحاكم الكلمة على حسب الصوت لا الحرف، فإذا اجتمع حرفان وشكلاً صوتاً جديداً نعتمد الصوت الجديد في الحكم.

مثلاً: **phone** تبدأ بحرف الـ **p** ولكن عند اجتماعه مع الـ **h** يصبح الصوت **/f/** **ph**
vision تنتهي بالمقطع (**sion**) الذي يلفظ بالصوت **/ʒ/**.

② اجتماع الحرفين **th** بنهاية الكلمة تعتبر:

θ	ð
Voiceless	Voiced
إذا لم يأت بعدها حرف صوتي	إذا أتى بعدها حرف صوتي
أما كلمة Breath (نَفَس) تُلفظ (بريث) فلا نلاحظ اهتزازاً بالحلق وبالتالي voiceless .	كلمة Breathe (يتنفس) تُلفظ (بريذ) فنلاحظ اهتزازاً بالحلق وبالتالي voiced .

③ صيغة السؤال في الامتحان من الشكل:

- ① Which word has a **final** voiced sound:
- ② Which word has an **initial/first** voiced sound:

Everyday English

Complaints and Apologies

Apologies	Complaints
• I'm sorry/ awfully sorry	• Don't you think it's about time...?
• I must apologise	• It really isn't good enough
• Please forgive me.	• It's very inconvenient.
• I promise/ assure you it won't happen again	• I'm afraid I have a complaint to make
• Please accept my excuse.	• That isn't an excuse.



Choose the correct answer

1. Education must be to the development of human personality.

- A. directed B. direction C. direct D. directly

2. Civil rights are secured by a positive government

- A. active B. actively C. action D. activate

3. Political rights are a class of rights that individual's freedom.

- A. protection B. protective C. protecting D. protect

4. Civil rights guarantee equal opportunities.

- A. socialize B. society C. social D. sociability

5. Education the respect for human rights.

- A. strong B. strengthens C. strongly D. stronger

6. You should speak directly and ask for a raise. Don't

- A. go under the knife C. ace the test
B. an act of God D. beat around the bush

7. The insurance company refused to pay the money because they said that the forest fire was

- A. acing the test C. go under the knife
B. an act of God D. breaking the law

8. The lawyers were unable to

- A. go under the knife C. assemble the case
B. follow through D. beat around the bush

9. The man was forced to quit his job after it was discovered that he had

- A. broken the law C. followed through
B. assembled the case D. gone under the knife

10. Our lawyer is very good and he does everything

- A. go under the knife C. by the book
B. follow through D. an act of God

11. A is a tool which is used to make a hole in something.

- A. launderette B. photocopier C. drill D. vacuum cleaner

12. A is a machine which makes copies of documents.

- A. launderette B. photocopier C. drill D. vacuum cleaner

13. A is a place with washing machines where you can wash your clothes.

- A. launderette B. photocopier C. drill D. vacuum cleaner

14. A is a machine which you use to clean floors and carpets.

- A. launderette B. photocopier C. drill D. vacuum cleaner

15. A is a person who protects important people from being attacked.

- A. plumber B. bodyguard C. photographer D. firefighter

16. A is a person whose job is to mend central heating, taps, etc.

- A. plumber B. bodyguard C. photographer D. firefighter

17. Which of the following sounds is voiced?

- A. / s / B. / v / C. / f / D. / p /

Answers:

- 1 - A
2 - C
3 - D
4 - C
5 - B
6 - D
7 - B
8 - C
9 - A
10 - C
11 - C
12 - B
13 - A
14 - D
15 - B
16 - A
17 - B



18. Which of the following sounds is voiced?

- A. / t / B. / d / C. / sh / D. / k /

19. Which of the following sounds is voiceless?

- A. / z / B. / m / C. / l / D. / t /

20. Which of the following sounds is voiceless?

- A. / b / B. / s / C. / r / D. / d /

21. Which of the following sounds in bold is voiceless?

- A. / path / B. / run / C. / mad / D. / door /

22. Which of the following sounds in bold is voiceless?

- A. / ram / B. / cat / C. / bad / D. / zoo /

23. The bath in your hotel is full of spiders. You call the manager.

(Express complaint)

- A. You deserve this honour.
B. I'm afraid I have a complaint to make.
C. I'm awfully sorry. I assure you it won't happen again.
D. I hurt your feelings.

24. You receive a bill higher than it should be. You ring the manager of the shop.

(Express complaint)

- A. Please accept my excuse.
B. Please forgive me.
C. I'm sorry to bother you, the bill is incorrect.
D. I hurt your feelings.

25. The bookshop tells you the book you ordered three months ago still hasn't arrived.

(Express complaint)

- A. I hurt your feelings.
B. Please accept my excuse.
C. Please forgive me.
D. Don't you think it's about time you brought the book?

26. What's the matter with you?

(Express complaint)

- A. That isn't an excuse.
B. Please accept my excuse.
C. Please forgive me.
D. You're always coming late to work.

27. Please, sir. I've been busy taking care of my son these days. He's been feeling under the weather recently but he's good now.

(Express apology)

- A. hurt your feelings
B. You're always coming late to work
C. accept my excuse
D. that isn't an excuse

28. Come on darling! You know It's just there's been a lot of stress at work these days that I forgot about our anniversary!

(Express apology)

- A. that isn't an excuse
B. I'd never hurt your feelings
C. it really isn't good enough
D. I'm afraid I have a complaint to make

Answers:
18 - B
19 - D
20 - B
21 - A
22 - B
23 - B
24 - C
25 - D
26 - D
27 - C
28 - B



Relative pronouns



رابط شرح الدرس

تستخدم الضمائر الموصولة لإضافة معلومات ضرورية أو إضافية عن شخص، شيء، مكان، زمان، ملكية، و تسمى الجملة التي تضاف إليها: **شبه جملة الوصل**، مثال: **The girl who is waving to us is my cousin** الكلمات التي باللون الأحمر هي شبه جملة الوصل.

Uses

1 - who / that → People as subjects:

تستخدم مع **الفاعل** العاقل.

- The man **who** | **that** answered the phone was my friend.

Note

لا يمكن استخدام **that** عندما يكون الفاعل اسم علم.

- Maher **who** saw you was my friend.

2 - whom / that → People as objects:

تستخدم مع **المفعول به** العاقل.

- The man **who** | **that** | **whom** you saw was my friend.

Note

يمكن استخدام **who** مع المفعول به العاقل ولكن لا يمكن استخدام **whom** مع الفاعل العاقل.

- The man **whom** answered the phone was my friend. ✗

Note

عند وجود حرف جر في شبه جملة الوصل نستخدم **whom** حصراً ولا يمكن استخدام **who** ولكن إذا كان حرف الجر في النهاية يمكن وضع **that** أيضاً

- The man **in whom** you trust is my friend.

- The man **whom** | **that** you trust **in** is my friend.

3 - which / that → Things:

تستخدم مع **الفاعل** أو **المفعول به** غير العاقل.

- I bought the book **which** | **that** was very interesting.

Note

عند وجود حرف جر في بداية شبه جملة الوصل نستخدم **which** حصراً ولا يمكن استخدام **that** ولكن إذا كان حرف الجر في النهاية يمكن وضع **that** أيضاً

- I bought the book **in which** I was very interested.

- I bought the book **which** | **that** I was very interested **in**.

4 - Whose → possession (things & people):

تستخدم للدلالة على ملكية شيء أو شخص.

- The woman **whose** purse was stolen called the police.

- It is the factory **whose** products are famous all over the world

5 - Where → Places:

تستخدم مع الأماكن.

- Damascus is the city **where** I was born.

Note

عند وجود حرف جر في شبه جملة الوصل نستخدم **which** حصراً ولا يمكن استخدام **where** ولكن إذا كان حرف الجر في النهاية يمكن وضع **that** أيضاً



- Damascus is the city **in which** I was born.
- Damascus is the city **which** | **that** I was born **in**.

5 - When → Time:

تستخدم مع الوقت و الزمان.

- 1992 is the year **when** I was born.

Note

عند وجود حرف جر في شبه جملة الوصل نستخدم **which** حصراً ولا يمكن استخدام **when** ولكن إذا كان حرف الجر في النهاية يمكن وضع **that** أيضاً

- 1992 is the year **in which** I was born.
- 1992 is the year **which** | **that** I was born **in**.

6 - Relative clauses:

جمل الوصل، وتنقسم هذه الجمل الى قسمين معرفة و غير معرفة :

Defining (معرفة محددة)	None-Defining (غير معرفة محددة)
جملة متكاملة لا يمكن الاستغناء عن أي معلومة فيها	جملة فيها معلومات إضافية يمكن الاستغناء عنها
ما فيها فواصل	فيها فواصل
Example	
Here is the website which my brother made last week.	My brother, who is a teacher, won the prize.
لا يمكنك حذف أي شيء	يمكنك حذف الكلام بين الفواصل
انتبه كي لا تهبد	
يمكنك استخدام That مع الجمل المعرفة	لا يمكنك استخدام That مع الجمل غير المعرفة

النكشات

1 **تذكر:** وجود حرف جر قبل الضمير (غالباً **in**) يلغي وجود **that** في هذه الجملة.

2 **تذكر:** لا يمكن استعمال **that** في جمل الوصل غير المعرفة (التي فيها فواصل).

3 للتفريق بين **who** و **whom** و **whose** اتبع الطريقة الآتية:

whose	whom	who
تستبدل بـ		
ضمائر الفاعل	ضمائر المفعول به	صفات الملكية
I - we - you - they - he - she - it	me - you - us - them - him - her - it	my - your - our - their - his - her - its
تذكر أنواع الضمائر و الفرق باستخدامها:		



إذا وجدت أن المعنى منطقي (ليس شرطاً أن يكون صحيح قواعدياً ولكن الجملة منطقية من حيث المبدأ) فستعلم ان اختيارك صحيح، أمثلة:

- The man **who** answered the phone was my friend.
- The man **he** answered the phone was my friend.
- The man in **whom** you trust is my friend.
- The man in **him** you trust is my friend.
- The woman **whose** purse was stolen called the police.
- The woman **her** purse was stolen called the police.



Choose the correct answer

1. A drill is a tool is used to make a hole in something.

- A. that B. which C. who D. both A and B

2. Mobile phones are phones you can carry around in your pocket.

- A. where B. which C. whose D. all of them are correct

3. The man worked in a printing company visited me last night.

- A. who B. that C. which D. both A and B

4. The woman car was stolen called the police.

- A. who B. that C. whose D. both A and B

5. Lattakia, I spent my last holiday, is a wonderful city.

- A. where B. which C. who D. both A and B

6. A photocopier is a machine makes copies of documents.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. when

7. A bodyguard is a person protects important people from being attacked.

- A. where B. which C. who D. when

8. A launderette is a place with washing machines you can wash your clothes.

- A. where B. in which C. who D. both A and B

9. A plumber is a person job is to mend central heating, taps, etc.

- A. that B. which C. whose D. both A and B

10. A vacuum cleaner is a machine you use to clean floors and carpets.

- A. whose B. which C. who D. both A and B

11. The girl is waving to us is my sister.

- A. who B. which C. where D. whose

12. The guest speaker is the one to you should address the letter.

- A. who B. whose C. whom D. who

13. The manager daughter is my friend spoke to us last night.

- A. who B. which C. where D. whose

14. The bill you received last week needs to be paid tomorrow.

- A. who B. that C. where D. when

15. This is the house I grew up.

- A. who B. which C. where D. when

16. This is the house I grew up in.

- A. where B. which C. whose D. when

17. This is the house in I grew up.

- A. where B. whose C. which D. when

18. Saturday is the day I tidy the flat.

- A. who B. which C. where D. when

19. Here is the website my sister created.

- A. who B. where C. which D. whose



20. My cousin, volunteers at a local homeless shelter, won the lottery.

- A. which B. whose C. that D. who

21. We have a package for the man stopped by today.

- A. who B. whose C. where D. which

22. I met the author book is on the best-seller list.

- A. who B. which C. where D. whose

23. The income tax, he paid last year, is accurate.

- A. that B. which C. whose D. where

24. Will you be presenting the slides you took in Canada last summer?

- A. who B. which C. when D. Whose

25. This is the city in Shakespeare was born.

- A. who B. when C. whose D. which

26. This is the city Shakespeare was born.

- A. where B. who C. whose D. when

27. The evening is a time we can all relax.

- A. who B. where C. whose D. when

28. Omar met a teacher spoke Arabic.

- A. who B. which C. where D. when

29. Lubna bought a dress cost \$45. She had to return it.

- A. who B. which C. where D. when

30. Mrs. Duncan is talking to her students projects are due on Friday.

- A. who B. which C. where D. whose

31. Sally introduced me to her sister is a civil engineer.

- A. when B. which C. who D. where

32. Summer is the time of year it is the hottest.

- A. who B. which C. where D. when

33. We went to a café on Sunday was very nice.

- A. who B. which C. where D. when

34. Yesterday I ran into an old friend I hadn't seen for years.

- A. whose B. whom C. where D. all of them are correct

35. I know a man last name is Goose.

- A. whose B. which C. where D. when

36. Ali's the only one knows the answer in our class.

- A. who B. which C. where D. when

37. I know someone can help you.

- A. where B. which C. who D. when

38. The courses I'm taking this term are more difficult than the ones I took last year.

- A. who B. which C. where D. when



39. The teacher thanked the students had got high marks.

- A. when B. which C. where

D. who

Answers:

Answers:

- 1 - D 22 - D
2 - B 23 - B
3 - D 24 - B
4 - C 25 - D
5 - A 26 - A
6 - B 27 - D
7 - C 28 - A
8 - D 29 - B
9 - C 30 - D
10 - B 31 - C
11 - A 32 - D
12 - C 33 - B
13 - D 34 - B
14 - B 35 - A
15 - C 36 - A
16 - B 37 - C
17 - C 38 - B
18 - D 39 - D
19 - C 40 - C
20 - D 41 - D
21 - A

40. We enjoyed the city we spent our vacation.

- A. who B. which C. where

D. when

41. I will never forget the day I got 100% in my exam.

- A. who B. which C. where

D. when

كلمتين بيني وبينك ... ✍

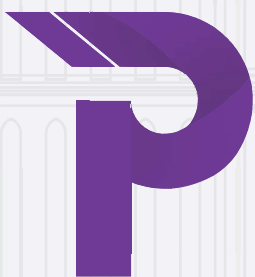
”الضغط إنك تكون دائماً بأفضل حالاتك هو وهم يستهلك طاقتك. أنت مو مضطر تكون مثالي، أنت بس لازم تكون صادق مع حالك، وتكمل، وتتعلم. التقدم الحقيقي يبدأ لما تعترف إنك إنسان، وإنو الغلط جزء من الرحلة.“



Unit number

United Nations

Module 3 : Politics



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



History of the United Nations

The United Nations was **established** by the Charter of the United Nations and **Statute** of the **International Court of Justice**. The **Charter** was **signed** on 26 June 1945 by the **representatives** of 50 countries including Syria; Poland signed on 15 October 1945. There were 51 **founding** members in 1945. The United Nations (UN) **officially** came into **existence** on 24 October 1945 after **ratification** of the Charter. The day is now **celebrated** each year around the world as United Nations Day. **The Security Council** (SC) **contains** five **permanent** members: China, France, Russian Federation, the United Kingdom, and the United States, and ten non-permanent members **elected** for two-year **terms** by the **General Assembly**.

The United Nations (UN) was the second **multipurpose** international organization established in the 20th century that was **worldwide** in **scope** and membership. Its **predecessor**, the **League** of Nations, was created by the **Treaty** of Versailles in 1919 and **disbanded** in 1946. The UN also has **regional offices** in Geneva, Vienna, and Nairobi. Its official languages are Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, and Spanish. At the beginning of the 21st century, the UN and its programmes and **affiliated** agencies **struggled** to address **humanitarian crises** and civil **wars**, **unprecedented refugee flows**, the **devastation** caused by the **spread** of **AIDS**, **global financial disruptions**, international **terrorism**, and the **disparities** in **wealth** between the world's richest and poorest peoples.

the Aims of the United Nations

- To keep **peace** throughout the world
- To develop friendly relations between **nations**
- To help nations work together to improve the lives of poor people, to **conquer hunger**, disease, **illiteracy**, and to **encourage respect** for each other's rights and **freedoms**
- To be a centre for helping nations achieve these **aims**

the principles of the United Nations

- All Member States have **sovereign** equality
- All Member States must **obey** the Charter
- Countries must try to **settle** their differences by peaceful means
- Countries must **avoid** using **force** or **threatening** to use force
- The UN may not **interfere** in the **domestic affairs** of any country
- Countries should try to **assist** the United Nations

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتلوين.



Translation

تأسست الأمم المتحدة بموجب ميثاق الأمم المتحدة وتشريع محكمة العدل الدولية. وُقِّعَ على الميثاق في 26 يونيو 1945 من قبل ممثلين 50 دولة بما فيها سورية؛ ووقعت بولندا في 15 أكتوبر 1945. بلغ عدد الأعضاء المؤسسين 51 عضواً في عام 1945. وُجِدَت الأمم المتحدة رسمياً في 24 أكتوبر 1945 بعد التصديق على الميثاق. ويُحتفل بهذا اليوم كل عام في جميع أنحاء العالم بوصفه يوم الأمم المتحدة. يضم مجلس الأمن خمسة أعضاء دائمين: الصين وفرنسا والاتحاد الروسي والمملكة المتحدة والولايات المتحدة الأمريكية، وعشرة أعضاء غير دائمين تنتخبهم الجمعية العامة لمدة عامين.

كانت الأمم المتحدة (UN) ثاني منظمة دولية متعددة الأغراض أسست في القرن العشرين وكانت عالمية النطاق والعضوية. وقد أنشئت سلفها، عصبة الأمم، بموجب معاهدة فرساي في عام 1919 حتى حُلَّت عام 1946. كما أن للأمم المتحدة مكاتب إقليمية في جنيف وفيينا ونيروبي. ولغاتها الرسمية: العربية والصينية والإنجليزية والفرنسية والروسية والإسبانية والصينية. في بداية القرن الحادي والعشرين، كافحت الأمم المتحدة وبرامجها ووكالاتها التابعة لها لمواجهة الأزمات الإنسانية والحروب الأهلية، وتحقق اللاجئين غير المسبوق، والخراب الناجم عن انتشار الإيدز، والأزمات المالية العالمية، والإرهاب الدولي، والتفاوت في الثروة بين أغنى شعوب العالم وأفقرها.

مبادئ الأمم المتحدة:

- تتمتع جميع الدول الأعضاء بالمساواة في السيادة.
- يجب على جميع الدول الأعضاء الامتنثال للميثاق.
- يجب على الدول أن تحاول تسوية خلافاتها بالوسائل السلمية.
- يجب على الدول تجنب استخدام القوة أو التهديد باستخدام القوة.
- لا يجوز للأمم المتحدة أن تتدخل في الشؤون الداخلية لأي دولة.
- يجب على الدول أن تحاول مساعدة الأمم المتحدة.

أهداف الأمم المتحدة:

- حفظ السلم في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- تطوير العلاقات الودية بين الدول.
- مساعدة الدول على العمل معاً لتحسين حياة الفقراء، وقهر الجوع والمرض والأمية، وتشجيع احترام حقوق وحريات بعضها البعض.
- أن تكون مركزاً لمساعدة الأمم على تحقيق هذه الأهداف.



مفردات النص الأساسية

charter	ميثاق	a statement of the principles and purposes of an organisation
ratification	تصديق	making something valid by confirming it
permanent	دائم	continuing to exist for a long time
predecessor	السلف/السابق	a system that existed before another one
affiliated	تابع	being joined in close association
devastation	دمار	the state of being decayed or destroyed
disparity	التفاوت	a difference between two or more things, especially an unfair one

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. The United Nations was established by.....

- A. the Charter of the United Nations.
- B. the Statute of the International Court of Justice.
- C. the General Assembly.
- D. both A and B

2. On of each year, all countries around the world celebrate the United Nations Day.

- A. June 26th
- B. October 15th
- C. October 24th
- D. October 14th

3. One of the aims of the United Nations is to keep throughout the world.

- A. poverty
- B. hatred
- C. peace
- D. discrimination

4. All Member States must the Charter

- A. reject
- B. deny
- C. neglect
- D. obey

5. The League of Nations was disbanded the creation of the United Nations.

- A. before
- B. after
- C. By the time
- D. previous to

6. The United Nations have always struggled to address.

- A. humanitarian crises and civil wars.
- B. unprecedented refugee flows.
- C. the devastation caused by the spread of AIDS.
- D. All of the above mentioned answers are true.

7. There are five official languages used in the United Nations.

- A. True
- B. False



8. The United Nations develop friendly relations between nations.

- A. True
- B. False

9. Countries must try to settle their differences by violent means.

- A. True
- B. False

10. The UN must interfere in the domestic affairs of any country.

- A. True
- B. False

11. The word "charter" means:

- A. being joined in close association
- B. the state of being decayed or destroyed
- C. a statement of the principles and purposes of an organization
- D. making something valid by confirming it

12. The word "ratification" means:

- A. a statement of the principles and purposes of an organization
- B. making something valid by confirming it
- C. continuing to exist for a long time
- D. a system that existed before another one

13. The word "permanent" means:

- A. a statement of the principles and purposes of an organization
- B. making something valid by confirming it
- C. continuing to exist for a long time
- D. a system that existed before another one

14. The word "predecessor" means:

- A. being joined in close association
- B. making something valid by confirming it
- C. continuing to exist for a long time
- D. a system that existed before another one

15. The word "affiliated" means:

- A. being joined in close association
- B. a system that existed before another one
- C. making something valid by confirming it
- D. continuing to exist for a long time

16. The word "devastation" means:

- A. a system that existed before another one
- B. being joined in close association
- C. the state of being decayed or destroyed
- D. continuing to exist for a long time.

17. The word "disparity" means:

- A. being joined in close association
- B. a system that existed before another one
- C. making something valid by confirming it
- D. a difference between two or more things, especially an unfair one

Answers:

- 1 - D
- 2 - C
- 3 - C
- 4 - D
- 5 - B
- 6 - D
- 7 - B
- 8 - A
- 9 - B
- 10 - B
- 11 - C
- 12 - B
- 13 - C
- 14 - D
- 15 - A
- 16 - C
- 17 - D



Workbook

Reading

Page 50

UNICEF

The United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), **originally** known as the United Nations International Children's Emergency **Fund**, is **responsible for** providing humanitarian and developmental **aid** to children worldwide and it has won the Nobel Prize, the first to be **awarded** to an **organisation**. **Despite** being highly **active** in **fundraising, awareness, relief** work and research, very few people know the origin of the organisation. UNICEF is **supported entirely** by the **voluntary contributions** of governments, non-governmental organisations, **foundations, corporations** and **private** individuals and **receives** no **funding** from the **assessed** dues of the United Nations. Most of the fundraising is done by UNICEF's 36 national **committees**, the voluntary support of millions of people around the world, partners in government, civil society and the private **sector**.

UNICEF was created in 1946 and began with a **definite mission** of **providing emergency** food and healthcare to children in the countries that had been **destroyed** by **World War II**. In 1953, its original name was changed to the United Nations Children's Fund to **reflect** its **broader** mission, but it **retained** the original **acronym**, after being officially **adopted** as a permanent **branch** of the UN in 1954.

The agency is among the most **widespread** and **recognisable** social **welfare** organisations in the world. Though its **headquarters** are in New York City, it **operates** in over 190 countries, focusing on the welfare of children in at-risk areas. Since 2006, the organisation has **concentrated** on a few specific **issues**; child **survival** and development, basic education and **gender** equality, child protection and **policy advocacy**, and **partnerships**. UNICEF has been a key player in global development work since its beginning.

UNICEF operates during emergencies in addition to supporting developing countries to provide children with basic **resources** and **advocate** for their rights.

At last, UNICEF is working to create a world in which no child is ever bought or **sold, stolen** from a family or **otherwise victimised**. UNICEF believes that every child **deserves** to grow up in a loving family and it supports inter-country **adoption** when **conducted ethically** in **accordance** with **prevailing** law and best **practices**. At the same time, UNICEF works to support families in need so that no one ever feels forced by **poverty** or **insecurity** to give up a child.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّه اهتماماً للتولين



Translation

يتولى الصندوق الدولي للأطفال التابع للأمم المتحدة -منظمة الأمم المتحدة للطفولة-، والذي كان يُعرف في الأصل باسم **صندوق** الطوارئ الدولي للأطفال التابع للأمم المتحدة (اليونيسف)، مسؤولية تقديم المساعدات الإنسانية والتنمية للأطفال في جميع أنحاء العالم، وقد فاز بجائزة نوبل وهي أول جائزة تُمنح لمنظمة. على الرغم من نشاطها الكبير في جمع التبرعات والتوعية وأعمال الإغاثة والأبحاث، إلا أن قلة قليلة من الناس تعرف أصل المنظمة. يُدعم اليونسف بالكامل من خلال **المساهمات الطوعية** للحكومات والمنظمات غير الحكومية والمؤسسات والشركات والأفراد ولا تتلقى أي تمويل من **المستحقات** المقررة للأمم المتحدة. تجري معظم حملات جمع التبرعات من قبل **لجان** اليونسف الوطنية الـ 36، والدعم الطوعي لملايين الأشخاص حول العالم، والشركاء في الحكومات والمجتمع المدني والقطاع الخاص.

أنشئت اليونسف في عام 1946 وبدأت **بمهمة محددة** تتمثل في توفير الغذاء والرعاية الصحية **الطارئة** للأطفال في البلدان التي **دمرتها الحرب العالمية الثانية**. في عام 1953، غُيّر اسمها الأصلي إلى منظمة الأمم المتحدة للطفولة (اليونسف) للإشارة إلى مهمتها **الأوسع نطاقاً**، لكنها **احتفظت بالاسم** الأصلي بعد **اعتمادها** رسمياً **كفرع** دائم للأمم المتحدة في عام 1954.

وتعد المنظمة من أكثر منظمات **الرعاية الاجتماعية انتشاراً وشهرة** في العالم. ورغم أن **مقرها الرئيسي** يقع في مدينة نيويورك، إلا أنها **تعمل** في أكثر من 190 دولة، وتركز على رعاية الأطفال في المناطق المعرضة للخطر. وقد **أولت** المنظمة **اهتمامها** منذ عام 2006 على عدد قليل من **القضايا المحددة** ألا وهي: **المحافظة على حياة الطفل ونمائه، والتعليم الأساسي والمساواة بين الجنسين، وحماية الطفل وتأييد سياسة الدولة، والشراكات.**

كان لليونسف وما زال دور مفتاحي في أعمال التنمية العالمية منذ بدايتها. وتعمل اليونسف خلال حالات الطوارئ بالإضافة إلى دعم البلدان النامية لتزويد الأطفال **بالموارد الأساسية والدفاع** عن حقوقهم.

أخيراً، تعمل اليونسف على ابتكار عالم لا **يُباع** فيه أي طفل أو يُشترى أو **يُسرق** من **أسرته** أو **يُعتدى** عليه بأي شكل آخر. وتعتقد اليونسف أن كل طفل **يستحق** أن ينشأ في أسرة محبة، وتدعم **التبني** على الصعيد الدولي عندما **يتم بشكل أخلاقي وفقاً للقانون السائد** وأفضل الممارسات. وفي الوقت ذاته، تعمل اليونسف على دعم الأسر المحتاجة حتى لا يشعر أحد أبداً بأنه مجبر بسبب **الفقر** أو **انعدام الأمن** على التخلي عن الطفل.



مفردات النص الأساسية

Fund	صندوق مالي/ تمويل	the activity of collecting money for a specific purpose, especially in order to help people
corporations	شركة/مؤسسة	an organisation or a group of organisations that work together for a particular purpose
adopted	يُتبنى/يتم اعتماده	to select and take or approve
advocate	يدافع/يؤيد	to defend or support
prevailing	سائد/مسيطر	existing or accepted in a particular place or at a particular time

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. The acronym UNICEF stands for....

- A. The United Nations High Commissioner for refugees.
- B. The United Nations Children's Fund.
- C. The United Nations Educational, Scientific and cultural Organization.
- D. The United Nations Relief and Works Agency.

2. UNICEF gets its funding from

- A. the UNICEF's 36 national committees.
- B. the voluntary support of millions of people around the world.
- C. partners in government.
- D. All of the above mentioned answers.

3. UNICEF... inter-country adoption.

- A. rejects
- B. refuses
- C. encourages
- D. disapproves

4. UNICEF changed its name.....

- A. to become easy to read.
- B. to become easy to write
- C. to reflect its broader mission.
- D. to reflect its limited mission

5. Which of the following sentences isn't mentioned in the text.

- A. UNICEF develops friendly relations between nations.
- B. UNICEF focuses on the welfare of children in at-risk areas.
- C. UNICEF provides children with basic resources and advocate for their rights.
- D. UNICEF works to create a world in which no child is ever bought or sold



6. UNICEF was established in 1964.

- A. True
- B. False

7. UNICEF is responsible for providing help to children worldwide.

- A. True
- B. False

8. The acronym UNICEF stands for the United Nations High Commissioner for refugees.

- A. True
- B. False

9. UNICEF's headquarters are in over 190 countries.

- A. True
- B. False

10. UNICEF does not receive funding from the assessed dues of the United Nations.

- A. True
- B. False

11. The word "fund" means:

- A. the activity of collecting money for a specific purpose, especially in order to help people
- B. existing or accepted in a particular place or at a particular time
- C. to select and take or approve
- D. an organisation or group of organisations that work together for a particular purpose.

12. The word "corporations" means:

- A. existing or accepted in a particular place or at a particular time
- B. to select and take or approve
- C. an organisation or group of organisations that work together for a particular purpose
- D. the activity of collecting money for a specific purpose, especially in order to help people

13. The word "adopt" means:

- A. existing or accepted in a particular place or at a particular time
- B. to select and take or approve
- C. to defend or support
- D. the activity of collecting money for a specific purpose, especially in order to help people

14. The word "advocate" means:

- A. existing or accepted in a particular place or at a particular time
- B. to select and take or approve
- C. to defend or support
- D. the activity of collecting money for a specific purpose, especially in order to help people

15. The word "prevailing" means:

- A. the activity of collecting money for a specific purpose, especially in order to help people
- B. to select and take or approve
- C. an organisation or group of organisations that work together for a particular purpose
- D. existing or accepted in a particular place or at a particular time

Answers:

- 1 - B
- 2 - D
- 3 - C
- 4 - C
- 5 - A
- 6 - B
- 7 - A
- 8 - B
- 9 - B
- 10 - A
- 11 - A
- 12 - C
- 13 - B
- 14 - C
- 15 - D



Vocabulary

Prefixes

Prefixes أو البوائى هي حرف أو مجموعة حروف تُضاف لبداية الكلمة فتعطي الكلمة معنىً جديداً.

وتعطي بعض البوائى عند إضافتها **ضداً** للكلمة، وهي:

Prefixes	الكلمة	ضدها
de-	activate	deactivate
dis-	courage	discourage
	agree	disagree
	prove	disprove
	connect	disconnect
in-	complete	incomplete
	dependent	independent
	correct	incorrect
	secure	insecure
il-	logical	illogical
	legal	illegal
im-	possible	impossible
	probable	improbable
ir-	regular	irregular
	responsible	irresponsible
non-	refundable	nonrefundable
un-	familiar	unfamiliar
	wrap	unwrap
	veil	unveil
	load	unload
	safe	unsafe
	paid	unpaid
	believable	unbelievable
	friendly	unfriendly
mis-	understand	misunderstand
anti-	virus	antivirus



Pronunciation

Word Stress with Two Syllables

للكلمة ذات المقطعين الصوتيين في اللغة الإنجليزية معنيان مختلفان **حسب المقطع**
المشدد منهما، فلتتبع الكلمات ذات المقطعين الصوتيين التصنيف الآتي:

Noun / Adjective

Verb

عند تشديد المقطع الصوتي **الأول** تكون الكلمة
اسماً أو صفة.

عند تشديد المقطع الصوتي **الثاني** تكون الكلمة
فعلًا.

PRESent

هدية / الحاضر

preSENT

يقدم

PERfect

لا يحوي أخطاء / مثالي

perFECT

يقوم بالعمل على أكمل
وجه

REject

منبوذ

reJECT

يرفض

ملاحظة: يوجد قاعدتان بسيطتان تحكمان تشديد المقاطع الصوتية، وهما:

1. يمكن تشديد **مقطع صوتي واحد فقط** في الكلمة، وبالتالي إذا سمعنا مقطعين صوتيين
 مشددين فهذا يعني وجود كلمتين.

2. يمكن تشديد **الأحرف الصوتية فقط** (أي المقطع يجب أن يحتوي حرف صوتي لتشدیده)،
لا الأحرف الساكنة.



في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة
 شرح القاعدة من هنا:

Everyday English

Modesty

- It was nothing really, nothing at all.

- I don't deserve any of the credit.

- That's very kind of you.

- I had very little to do with it.

- I feel the real credit must go to the whole team.

- That had really nothing to do with me.

- You're exaggerating. I only played a small part in the whole thing.

- You're very kind but it wasn't difficult at all. Anyone could have done it.

- You're embarrassing me.



Choose the correct answer

1. Children love parcels at Christmas time.
A. wrap B. unwrapping C. diswrapping D. wraps
2. I almost find that he has unusual opinions. I often with him.
A. unagree B. agreeable C. disagree D. agreement
3. I'm sure he's lying but it's going to be hard to his story.
A. inprove B. unprove C. disprove D. improve
4. After a brief speech the minister the new statue.
A. misveiled B. unveiled C. disveiled D. inveiled
5. It took the removal men an hour to our things from the van.
A. loads B. unload C. disload D. loading
6. His phone was because he didn't pay his last bill.
A. connect B. disconnect C. disconnected D. connects
7. Which one from the following words is a "verb"?
A. INcrease B. perFECT C. PERfect D. PREsent
8. Which one from the following words is a "noun"?
A. IMport B. imPORT C. conFLICT D. subJECT
9. Which one from the following words is a "verb"?
A. adDICT B. ADDict C. CONtrast D. DEcrease
10. Which one from the following words is a "noun"?
A. conDUCT B. reCORD C. proDUCE D. DEcrease
11. We need to our sales figures.
A. CONduct B. REcord C. inCREASE D. INcrease
12. he's showed a/ an..... interest in the project.
A. INcreased B. inCREASED C. perFECT D. conFLICT
13. They their goods from the UK.
A. IMport B. imPORT C. Export D. INcrease
14. This is a cheap
A. IMport B. imPORT C. exPORT D. inCREASE
15. The..... city was founded in 944.
A. preSENT B. PREsent C. imPORT D. perfect
16. he's going to..... his friend, Maher.
A. preSENT B. PREsent C. IMport D. PERfect
17. This is one of the..... from the factory.
A. exPORTS B. inCREASES C. REjects D. reJECTS
18. He..... her advice.
A. Exported B. INcreased C. REjected D. reJECTed



19. Oh, I do think you're clever, knowing all about computers and things.

(Express modesty)

- A. I deserve this honour.
- B. I'm afraid I have a complaint to make.
- C. I'm awfully sorry about it. I assure you it won't happen again.
- D. You're embarrassing me.

20. Your skiing has improved tremendously You're really a future champion.

(Express modesty)

- A. I am sorry about what happened.
- B. Oh, you're exaggerating.
- C. This isn't an excuse.
- D. I'd never hurt your feelings

21. It must be wonderful to be able to understand so many languages. I can't think how you manage it!

(Express modesty)

- A. I am sure this won't happen again.
- B. I don't think it is a good idea.
- C. That's very kind of you, but I feel the real credit must go to the teachers.
- D. How did the students react toward that?

22. I've never seen such an attractive and talented class of children. I think you, as their teacher, deserve the highest praise.

(Express modesty)

- A. That's true. I haven't thought about that before.
- B. We are proud of you.
- C. Oh no. They're a splendid group of young people. I don't deserve any of the credit.
- D. I'm sorry about what happened.

23. I'm sure they are splendid, but I don't agree that you don't deserve any credit. I know for sure that you planned the lovely decorations in their classroom.

(Express modesty)

- A. OK. I can do that.
- B. I had very little to do with it. The children contributed lots of ideas themselves.
- C. Congratulations!
- D. You mustn't let this depress you.

24. Perhaps they did, but you gave them the idea in the first place, didn't you? And that project for helping old people is the finest thing I've seen for year.

(Express modesty)

- A. Yes, you're right. I'll do that.
- B. You really deserve this honour
- C. I'm sure this won't happen again.
- D. That had really nothing to do with me. They suggested it in the first place.

25. I'm sorry, I just can't believe it had nothing to do with you. And, even if they had the original idea, I'm sure you guided them in how to organize it.

(Express modesty)

- A. You're very kind but it wasn't difficult at all. Anyone could have done it.
- B. Of course! I should've thought about that.
- C. Very well done! Keep it up.
- D. I've no doubt that you'll do much better next time.

Answers:

- 1 - B 13 - B
- 2 - C 14 - A
- 3 - C 15 - B
- 4 - B 16 - A
- 5 - B 17 - C
- 6 - C 18 - D
- 7 - B 19 - D
- 8 - A 20 - B
- 9 - A 21 - C
- 10 - D 22 - C
- 11 - C 23 - B
- 12 - B 24 - D
- 25 - A

كلمة increased شادة حيث نشدد القسم الثاني فيها إذا جاءت كصفة



Future forms



رابط شرح الدرس

Uses & Forms

1 – Future simple: (will – won't)

Subject + $\frac{will}{won't}$ + V₀ + C

1- تستخدم هذه الحالة مع التنبؤات التي لا دليل عليها.

2- الآراء الخاصة التي قد تكون ناجمة عن تجارب سابقة.

3- الأفعال المفاجئة التي لم يسبق الترتيب لها.

4- لتقديم العروض، الوعود و الاقتراحات.

- I think it **will** rain tomorrow.
- She thinks the weather **will** be clear.
- I **will** open the door. (sudden decision)
- Don't worry, I'll let everyone know.

2 – Future simple: (Be going to)

Subject + Be going to + V₀ + C

1 - تستخدم هذه الحالة مع الأحداث التي قد تحدث في المستقبل بناءً على دليل موجود في الجملة.

2 - الأفعال التي قرر القيام بها قبل لحظة التكلم بقليل.

- Look at those black clouds. I think it's **going to** rain.
- Be careful! You **are going to** fall.

3 – Present continuous:

Subject + am / is / are + V_{ing} + C

تستخدم هذه الحالة مع الأفعال أو الخطط التي تم التخطيط لها مسبقاً منذ مدة معينة.

- We **are having** a meeting next week.
- We **are flying** to Paris next month.

قد يسأل سائل: شو الفرق بين هالحالة و اللي قبلها؟
جاييك بالحديث لا تستعجل على رزقك ...

4 – Present simple:

يستخدم الحاضر البسيط للدلالة على المستقبل مع وجود جدول زمني أو مواعيد رسمية (انطلاق قطار – إقلاع طائرة – مناسبة عامة – الخ ..).

- The train **leaves** at 7 o'clock.- The plane **takes off** at 9 PM.

تذكر: مع الـ Time clauses

After	+ S + V ₁ → S + $\frac{will}{won't}$ + V ₀
Before	
By the time	
when	
Until	
As soon as	

- As soon as Bilal **graduates**, he'll **travel** to London.- Lana **will get** a new phone **after** she **sells** the old one.

☆ – Be about to:

تنويه: هذه الحالة محذوفة من المنهاج ولكن وضعناها للاحتياط و تحسباً لوجود بعض الجمل المرتبطة بها.

Subject + Be about to + V₀ + C

تستخدم هذه الحالة للتعبير عن أشياء من الممكن حدوثها في المستقبل القريب جداً أو الأحداث المرتبة من قبل جهات رسمية، و تستخدم غالباً في وسائل الإعلام و الصحافة و الجمل الرسمية.

- The plane is at the end of the runway, it's **about to** take off.



5 – Future continuous:

Subject + $\frac{will}{won't}$ + be + V_{ing} + C

1- تستخدم هذه الحالة للتنبؤ بأفعال ستستمر لمدة زمنية في المستقبل.

2- للسؤال بأدب عن مخططات شخص ما.

- I **will be working** on the report **all** next week.

لاحظ أن كلمة **all** دلت على استمرار الفعل في المستقبل

- **Will you be travelling** to Homs next week?

6 – Future perfect:

Subject + $\frac{will}{won't}$ + have + V₃ + C

تستخدم هذه الحالة للحديث عن أحداث في المستقبل ستكون منتهية بحلول وقت معين

بعض مفاتيح الحل:

- By + future time / then

- Before + future time

- in + amount of time

- By the end of the year, I **will have given** the same speech at 5 conferences.

- We **will have finished** the report **before Friday night**.

- In a week's time, I **will have written** my new story.

نكشات

1 الفرق بين present continuous & be going to

present continuous	be going to
الأفعال التي قُرر القيام بها قبل لحظة التكلم بعمدة طويلة نسبياً.	الأفعال التي قُرر القيام بها قبل لحظة التكلم بقليل.
للحديث عن الخطط و الأحداث المرتبة مسبقاً	للحديث عن الرغبات و النوايا وليس الخطط
باختصار، لا يمكن أن يتم تخييرك بين هاتين الحالتين إلا في حال وجود دليل واضح وقطعي عن وقت اتخاذ القرار.	
وفي حال تم تخييرك، فالجوابين خاطئين في حال لم يتحقق الشرط السابق	

2 مع أفعال الحركة مثل **Go - move - play** ... عادةً نستخدم الحاضر المستمر عوضاً عن **be going to** :

- I **am going to go** out in a minute. ✗

- I'm **going** out in a minute. ✓

3 لا نستخدم الحاضر المستمر مع فعل الكون **Be** في حالته العادية (عندما لا يكون مصرف):

- We **will be** in South Africa for a month. ✓

- We **are being** in South Africa for a month. ✗

4 عندما تجد شخصية مهمة أو جهة حكومية مهمة (ملك - وزير - الخ...) فالاستخدام التالي صحيح:

- The Queen **is to** visit Paris next week.

- The Prime Minister **is to** meet the Minister of Foreign Affairs next month.

تنويه: هذه الحالة محذوفة من المنهاج ولكن وضعناها للاحتياط و تحسباً لوجود بعض الجمل المرتبطة بها.



ملاحظة هامة: مواعيد الوصول في منهاجنا:

- The train **won't** arrive until 7AM. ✓

- The train **doesn't** arrive until 7AM. ✓

الجمليتين السابقتين صحيحتين لغوياً، علماً أن استخدام **الحاضر البسيط** - أي الجملة الثانية - هو الأشهر عند أهل اللغة، ولكن في كتاب اللغة الانكليزية الرسمي تم اعتماد **المستقبل البسيط** - أي الجملة الأولى - للتعبير عن مواعيد الوصول، لذلك أنصح باتباع هذا النهج و التقيد بجمل الكتاب.

عموماً، لا يُرَجَّح أن تجد الخيارين ضمن الخيارات في الامتحان في حال ورود الجملة، وفي حال وُجدا، ينصح باتباع نهج الكتاب.

للتوضيح بشكل أكبر تابع شرح الدرس على اليوتيوب

كلمتين بيني وبينك ... ✍️

”رؤف، وخلي كل شي ياخذ وقته، أنت مو متأخر، ولا لازم تسبق حدا.
في وقت لكل شي ... أهم شي تبقى ماشي بطريقك بثقة“.



Choose the correct answer

1. "I think the weather will be too hot tomorrow."

- A. The sentence talks about a fixed arrangement.
- B. The sentence talks about prediction.
- C. The sentence talks about something likely to happen in the immediate future.
- D. The sentence talks about a future event that will finish before a specific time in the future.

2. "The two companies are going to provide very different experiences."

- A. The sentence talks about an intention to do something.
- B. The sentence talks about something likely to happen in the immediate future.
- C. The sentence talks about a future event that will finish before a specific time in the future.
- D. The sentence talks about an event continuing over a period of time in the future.

3. "The team manager is holding a party on our return."

- A. The sentence talks about something likely to happen in the immediate future.
- B. The sentence talks about a future event that will finish before a specific time in the future.
- C. The sentence talks about a fixed arrangement.
- D. The sentence talks about prediction.

4. "When it goes into orbit, the spacecraft will be carrying 25 kilos of plutonium."

- A. The sentence talks about a fixed arrangement.
- B. The sentence talks about events continuing over a period of time in the future.
- C. The sentence talks about something likely to happen in the immediate future.
- D. The sentence talks about a future event that will finish before a specific time in the future.

5. "By the time you get home, I will have cleaned the house from top to bottom."

- A. The sentence talks about a fixed arrangement.
- B. The sentence talks about prediction.
- C. The sentence talks about something likely to happen in the immediate future.
- D. The sentence talks about a future event that will finish before a specific time in the future.

6. I think Manchester United..... their next game.

- A. will win
- B. has won
- C. wins
- D. will have won

7. I..... early tomorrow.

- A. will have got up
- B. will be getting up
- C. am going to get up
- D. am about to get up

8. The plane ... at 9.30.

- A. arrive
- B. arrives
- C. is arriving
- D. arriving

9. I ... a meeting tomorrow.

- A. am holding
- B. am going to hold
- C. am about to hold
- D. both A and B

10. I ... the new laptop for the next two years.

- A. would use
- B. am going to use
- C. will have used
- D. both A and B

11. One day, people ... to Mars.

- A. travel
- B. travelled
- C. were travelling
- D. will travel

12. A: Anything to drink, sir?

B: I ... a glass of water, please.

- A. am going to have
- B. am having
- C. will have
- D. both A and B



13. I ... my room tomorrow.

- A. am going to clean B. cleaned C. cleaning D. have cleaned

14. The train to the airport ... in 20 minutes.

- A. has left B. had left C. leave D. leaves

15. Can you write the report before we ... the meeting?

- A. will hold B. are going to hold C. hold D. will have hold

16. He ... a new job next week.

- A. start B. is starting C. started D. has started

17. I ... on the report all next week.

- A. worked B. will be working C. have worked D. work

18. How long ... this computer?

- A. have you used B. have you been using C. you will be using D. both A and B

19. By the end of the year, I ... the same talk at five conferences.

- A. gave B. give C. will give D. will have given

20. In a week's time, I ... the report.

- A. wrote B. will have written C. will wrote D. have written

21. When I ... the answer, I'll let you know.

- A. find B. will find C. would find D. found

22. My exams ... on 27th June.

- A. finishes B. finish C. would finish D. has finished

23. I'll be fine in the interview as long as they..... me technical questions.

- A. didn't ask B. won't ask C. don't ask D. doesn't ask

24. What time..... tomorrow?

- A. does your plane take off C. is your plane taking off
B. had your plane taken off D. has your plane taken

25. I'll hand in my notice for this job after I..... the contract for my new one.

- A. will get B. would get C. got D. get

26. I'll text you before we

- A. will set off B. would set off C. had set off D. set off

27. The bus..... until 7.30 in the evening.

- A. would have arrived B. won't arrive C. don't arrive D. wouldn't arrive

28. I've got my schedule for the Japan trip. We..... to Tokyo at 10 a.m. on Monday, and then travel by train to Kyoto for one night.

- A. flew B. are flying C. will have flown D. is going to fly

29. The moment I my results I'll phone you.

- A. will receive B. received C. receive D. has received

30. In about ten years' time, I think I in the same city.

- A. will still be living B. have lived C. was living D. lived



31. By that time, I..... my studies, and perhaps I will have found a good job.

- A. has B. will have finished C. finished D. had finished

32. By that time, I will have finished my studies, and perhaps I a good job.

- A. find B. found C. will have found D. have found

33. In a few years' time, I..... with the same friends too!

- A. probably goes B. probably went C. had probably gone D. will probably be going out

34. By the time I'm sixty, I expect that nearly everything.....

- A. will have changed B. are changing C. changed D. have changed

35. By the time I'm sixty, everyone their best to adapt to new circumstances.

- A. try B. trying C. are trying D. will have tried

36. I can't imagine that we will be using cars, because by then most of the oil in the world

- A. will have run out B. will ran out C. ran out D. will running out

37. I can't imagine that we..... cars, because by then most of the oil in the world will have run out.

- A. will been using B. have used C. will be using D. used

38. In the future, people..... in electric cars, or perhaps we will be walking everywhere.

- A. will travelling B. will be travelling C. will have travel D. will been travelling

39. I hope that scientists..... pollution problem, but who knows! Perhaps some other worse problems will have come along by then!

- A. solved B. were solving C. had solved D. will have solved

40. I've got the ticket. I to London next Friday.

- A. am traveling B. was travelling C. was going to travel D. will have travelled

41. We will move into a new flat before they.....

- A. arrived B. will arrive C. arrive D. were arriving

Answers:

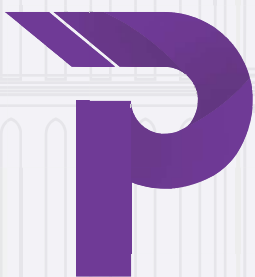
- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1 - B | 22 - B |
| 2 - A | 23 - C |
| 3 - C | 24 - A |
| 4 - B | 25 - D |
| 5 - D | 26 - D |
| 6 - A | 27 - B |
| 7 - C | 28 - B |
| 8 - B | 29 - C |
| 9 - D | 30 - A |
| 10 - B | 31 - B |
| 11 - D | 32 - C |
| 12 - C | 33 - D |
| 13 - A | 34 - A |
| 14 - D | 35 - D |
| 15 - C | 36 - A |
| 16 - B | 37 - C |
| 17 - B | 38 - B |
| 18 - D | 39 - D |
| 19 - D | 40 - A |
| 20 - B | 41 - C |
| 21 - A | |



Unit number

Microorganism

Module 4 : Biology



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



Viruses & Bacteria

The two most common **causative agents** of **infectious diseases** are the **virus** and the **bacterium**. They both are **tiny** to be seen by the **naked eye**, they can **cause similar symptoms** and are often **spread** in the **same** way.

Bacteria are living **organisms**, but viruses aren't. A bacterium is a **single complex** cell. **It** can **survive** on its own, **inside** or **outside** the body. This **allows** bacteria to live in many places **-soil**, water, **plants** and the human body. Most bacteria aren't **harmful**; we have many bacteria on and inside our body, especially in the **gut** to help **digest** food. They also **serve** many **vital** roles in nature by **decomposing organic matter** and by **converting nitrogen** to chemicals **usable** by plants. On the other hand, viruses are smaller and aren't **cells**. Unlike bacteria, **they** need a **host** such as a human or an animal to **multiply**. Viruses only grow and **reproduce** inside the host cells they infect. Their life **involves** the **hijacking** of the **biochemical** activities of a living cell.

Viruses and bacteria **differ** in **how** they cause **infections**. As the names **suggest**, viruses cause viral infections, **whereas** bacteria cause bacterial infections. Viruses infect a host cell and then multiply by the thousands, leaving the host and infecting other cells of the body. Diseases caused by a viral infection include **influenza**, common cold, **flu**, **AIDS** and **COVID - 19**. Bacteria, on the other hand, have a more **varied operation** and will often infect when the right **opportunity arises**. Bacterial infections include **pneumonia**, **strep throat**, ear infection and food **poisoning**.

In fact, it is very important to know **whether** bacteria or viruses cause an infection because the **treatments** differ. It can be very difficult to know what causes an infection because viral and bacterial infections can cause similar symptoms. Doctors need a **sample** of your **urine**, **blood** or **swab** from your **nose** or **throat** to see what infection you have.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتلوين.

Translation

من أكثر العوامل المسببة للأمراض المعدية شيوعاً: الفيروس والبكتيريا، كلاهما صغير الحجم بحيث لا يُرى بالعين المجردة، ويمكن أن يسببا أعراضاً متشابهة وغالباً ما ينتشران بنفس الطريقة.

البكتيريا كائنات حية، أما الفيروسات فليست كذلك. البكتيريا عبارة عن خلية وحيدة معقدة يمكنها البقاء على قيد الحياة بمفردها، داخل الجسم أو خارجه. وهذا ما يسمح للبكتيريا بالعيش في العديد من الأماكن: التربة، والماء، والنباتات، وجسم الإنسان.

معظم البكتيريا ليست ضارة؛ فلدينا العديد من البكتيريا على أجسامنا وداخلها، خاصة في الأمعاء للمساعدة في هضم الطعام. كما تقوم بالعديد من الأدوار الحيوية في الطبيعة عن طريق تحليل المواد العضوية وتحويل النيتروجين إلى مواد كيميائية يمكن للنباتات استخدامها. من ناحية أخرى، الفيروسات أصغر حجماً وليست خلايا. وعلى عكس البكتيريا، فإنها تحتاج إلى مضيف مثل الإنسان أو الحيوان لتتضاعف. تنمو الفيروسات وتتكاثر فقط داخل الخلايا المضيفة التي تصيبها، وتتضمن حياتها مهاجمة الأنشطة الكيميائية الحيوية للخلية الحية والتحكم بها.



تختلف الفيروسات والبكتيريا في كيفية تسبب كل منهما بالعدوى. وكما يوحى الاسم، تسبب الفيروسات عدوى فيروسية، بينما تسبب البكتيريا عدوى بكتيرية. تصيب الفيروسات الخلية المضيفة ثم تتكاثر بالآلاف، وتترك المضيف وتصيب خلايا أخرى في الجسم، تشمل الأمراض التي تسببها العدوى الفيروسية: الإنفلونزا ونزلات البرد الشائعة والزكام والإيدز وفيروس كورونا (كوفيد-19). أما البكتيريا على الجانب الآخر، لها عملية أكثر تنوعاً وغالباً ما تصيب عندما تسنح الفرصة المناسبة، وتشمل العدوى البكتيرية: الالتهاب الرئوي والتهاب الحلق والتهاب الأذن والتسمم الغذائي.

في الواقع، من المهم جداً معرفة ما إذا كانت البكتيريا أو الفيروسات هي المسببة للعدوى لأن العلاجات تختلف. قد يكون من العسير معرفة سبب العدوى لأن كلاً من العدوى الفيروسية والبكتيرية يمكن أن يسبب أعراضاً متشابهة، يحتاج الأطباء إلى عينة من بولك أو دمك، أو مسحة من أنفك أو حلقك لمعرفة نوع العدوى التي تعاني منها.

مفردات النص الأساسية

causative	العامل المسبب	acting as the cause of something
pneumonia	التهاب رئوي	an acute inflammation of the lungs
symptom	عَرَض	a sign that something exists, especially bad
gut	الأمعاء	a tube in the body through which food passes when it leaves the stomach
decompose	تحلل	to destroy gradually by natural chemical processes
digest	هضم	to change food you have just eaten into substance that your body can use
hijack	مهاجمة	attack to control something
swab	مسحة	a small amount of a substance that is taken from someone's body in order to test it

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Viruses and bacteria can't be seen by the naked eye because they are very...

- A. small
B. big

- C. large
D. huge

2. Bacteria can survive on its own, the body.

- A. outside
B. inside

- C. neither A nor B
D. both A and B

3. Which sentence about the text isn't true?

- A. Bacteria are useful in the gut because they help digest food.
B. Bacteria are useful to nature by decomposing organic matter.
C. Bacteria are useful to nature by converting nitrogen to chemicals usable by plants.
D. Bacteria can cause influenza and common cold.



4. Viruses need a host as.....to become large in number.

- A. a plant
- B. an animal
- C. a human
- D. both B and C

5. Because viral and bacterial infections can cause similar symptoms, it is to know what causes an infection.

- A. simple
- B. easy
- C. hard
- D. not difficult

6. The word "It" in italic refers to.....

- A. bacteria
- B. a bacterium
- C. an infection
- D. a symptom

7. The word "they" in italic refers to...

- A. Viruses
- B. Bacteria
- C. plants
- D. Chemicals

8. Because the treatment of viruses and bacteria differs it is important to know....

- A. if only bacteria can cause an infection.
- B. if only viruses can cause an infection.
- C. whether bacteria or viruses cause an infection
- D. whether bacteria or pesticides cause an infection

9. The gut has many bacteria to decompose organic matter.

- A. True
- B. False

10. The two most common causative agents of infectious diseases are flue and influenza.

- A. True
- B. False

11. Pneumonia is caused by a bacterial infection.

- A. True
- B. False

12. The viruses need a guest.

- A. True
- B. False

13. Common cold is caused by a viral infection.

- A. True
- B. False

14. The word "causative" means:

- A. a sign that something exists, especially bad
- B. acting as the cause of something
- C. to destroy gradually by natural chemical processes
- D. an acute inflammation of the lungs



15. The word "pneumonia" means:

- A. attack to control something
- B. a small amount of a substance that is taken from someone's body in order to test it
- C. an acute inflammation of the lungs
- D. to change food you have just eaten into substances that your body can use

16. The word "symptom" means:

- A. a sign that something exists, especially bad
- B. a tube in the body through which food passes when it leaves the stomach
- C. to change food you have just eaten into substances that your body can use
- D. an acute inflammation of the lungs

17. The word "gut" means:

- A. attack to control something
- B. a small amount of a substance that is taken from someone's body in order to test it
- C. an acute inflammation of the lungs
- D. a tube in the body through which food passes when it leaves the stomach

18. The word "decompose" means:

- A. a sign that something exists, especially bad
- B. acting as the cause of something
- C. to destroy gradually by natural chemical processes
- D. an acute inflammation of the lungs

19. The word "digest" means:

- A. attack to control something
- B. a small amount of a substance that is taken from someone's body in order to test it
- C. an acute inflammation of the lungs
- D. to change food you have just eaten into substances that your body can use

20. The word "hijack" means:

- A. to change food you have just eaten into substances that your body can use
- B. a small amount of a substance that is taken from someone's body in order to test it
- C. an acute inflammation of the lungs
- D. attack to control something

21. The word "swab" means:

- A. a small amount of a substance that is taken from someone's body in order to test it
- B. attack to control something
- C. an acute inflammation of the lungs
- D. to change food you have just eaten into substances that your body can use

Answers:	Answers:
1 - A	12 - B
2 - D	13 - A
3 - D	14 - B
4 - D	15 - C
5 - C	16 - A
6 - B	17 - D
7 - A	18 - C
8 - C	19 - D
9 - B	20 - D
10 - B	21 - A
11 - A	



Workbook

Reading

Antibiotics

Page 58

Antibiotics are **powerful** medicines used to **fight** a **wide variety** of infections or diseases caused by bacteria in people and animals. Antibiotics work to **kill** the bacteria or stop them from multiplying. Before bacteria can **multiply** and cause symptoms, the **immune system** can **typically** kill them. Sometimes, however, the number of harmful bacteria is **excessive**, and the immune system can't fight all. **At that point**, antibiotics are **urgently** needed.

Different antibiotics work **against** different types of bacteria; antibiotics that stop bacteria from multiplying and **affect** a wide **range** of bacteria are called **broad spectrum** antibiotics like **amoxicillin** and **gentamicin**, whereas antibiotics that kill bacteria and affect only a few types of bacteria are called **narrow spectrum** antibiotics such as **penicillin**.

Some people may develop an allergic **reaction** to antibiotics, especially penicillin. **Side effects** might include **rash**, **swelling** of the **tongue** and **face**, and difficulty in **breathing**. **Allergic reactions** to antibiotics might be **immediate** or **delayed**. People with **reduced liver** or **kidney function** should be **cautious** when using antibiotics. This may affect the types of antibiotics they can use or the **dose** they **receive**.

Medical professionals have **concerns** that people are **overusing** antibiotics. The more often antibiotics are used or taken incorrectly, the more **chance** bacteria have to change and become **resistant** to them. This can make bacterial infections much harder to **treat**. **Patients** should complete the **whole course** of medication to **prevent** the **return** of the infection.

The world needs to change the way it **prescribes** and uses antibiotics. Even if new medicines are developed, without **behaviour change**, antibiotics resistance will **remain a major threat**. Behaviour changes must include actions to **reduce** the **spread** of infections through **vaccination**, hand **washing** and food **hygiene**.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتولين

Translation

إن المضادات الحيوية أدوية قوية تُستخدم لمكافحة تشكيلة واسعة من الالتهابات أو الأمراض التي تسببها البكتيريا في الإنسان والحيوان. تعمل المضادات الحيوية على قتل البكتيريا أو منعها من التكاثر. وقبل أن تتكاثر البكتيريا وتسبب الأعراض، يمكن للجهاز المناعي عادةً قتلها. ومع ذلك، في بعض الأحيان، يكون عدد البكتيريا الزائدة مفرطاً، ولا يستطيع الجهاز المناعي القضاء عليها جميعاً. في هذه المرحلة، تكون هناك حاجة ماسة إلى المضادات الحيوية.

تعمل المضادات الحيوية المختلفة ضد أنواع متنوعة من البكتيريا، فالمضادات الحيوية التي تمنع البكتيريا من التكاثر وتؤثر على صنف واسع من البكتيريا تسمى المضادات الحيوية واسعة الطيف، مثل الأموكسيسيلين والجنتاميسين،



في حين أن المضادات الحيوية التي تقتل البكتيريا وتؤثر على أنواع قليلة من البكتيريا تسمى المضادات الحيوية ضيقة الطيف مثل البنسلين.

قد يصاب بعض الأشخاص برد فعل تحسسي تجاه المضادات الحيوية، خاصة البنسلين. وتشمل الآثار الجانبية: الطفح الجلدي وتورم اللسان والوجه وصعوبة في التنفس. قد تكون ردود الفعل التحسسية تجاه المضادات الحيوية فورية أو لاحقة. يجب على الأشخاص الذين يعانون من قصور في وظائف الكبد أو الكلى توخي الحذر عند استخدام المضادات الحيوية. فقد يؤثر ذلك على أنواع المضادات الحيوية التي بمقدورهم استخدامها أو الجرعة التي يتلقونها.

لدى المهنيين الطبيين مخاوف من إفراط الناس في استخدام المضادات الحيوية. فكلما زاد استخدام المضادات الحيوية أو تناولها بشكل خاطئ، زادت فرصة البكتيريا في التغير فتغدو مقاومة لها. مما قد يجعل علاج الالتهابات البكتيرية أصعب بكثير. ينبغي على المرضى إكمال دورة العلاج كاملة لمنع عودة الالتهاب.

يحتاج العالم إلى تغيير الطريقة التي يصف -يكتب وصفة طبية- بها المضادات الحيوية ويستخدمها. فحتى لو طورت أدوية جديدة، ما دامت الطريقة لم تتغير ستظل مقاومة المضادات الحيوية تشكل تهديدًا كبيرًا. ويجب أن تشمل التغييرات السلوكية إجراءات للحد من انتشار العدوى من خلال التطعيم وغسل اليدين ونظافة الطعام.

مفردات النص الأساسية

cautious	حذر	being careful about what to do
multiply	تكاثر	increase very much in number or amount
allergic	حساسية	being sensitive to a substance
excessive	مفرط	greater than what seems reasonable or appropriate
resistance	مقاومة	the act of using force to oppose something
spectrum	مجال/طيف	a range



Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Antibiotics are powerful medicines used to caused by bacteria in people and animals.

- A. multiply a wide variety of infections or diseases.
- B. increase a wide variety of infections or diseases.
- C. fight a wide variety of infections or diseases.
- D. reproduce a wide variety of infections or diseases.

2. Antibiotics work by

- A. killing the bacteria.
- B. stopping them from multiplying.
- C. increasing the bacteria.
- D. both A and B

3. If the immune system can't fight all the bacteria, are urgently needed.

- A. antibiotics
- B. viruses
- C. Bacteria
- D. infections

4. The immune system can't kill all bacteria when they are

- A. small in number
- B. limited in number
- C. great in number
- D. insufficient

5. The two kinds of antibiotics mentioned in the text are

- A. broad and wide spectrum antibiotics.
- B. limited and narrow spectrum antibiotics.
- C. extensive and wide spectrum antibiotics.
- D. broad and narrow spectrum antibiotics.

6. Penicillin is one of the spectrum antibiotics.

- A. wide
- B. narrow
- C. invasive
- D. broad

7. Amoxicillin and gentamicin are called spectrum antibiotics.

- A. wide
- B. narrow
- C. short
- D. limited

8. People with reduced liver or kidney function should be cautious when using antibiotics because

- A. this may influence the types of antibiotics they can use.
- B. this may affect the types of the dose they receive
- C. they do not have side effects.
- D. Both A and B

9. When we use a great amount of antibiotics, bacteria becomes

- A. very weak
- B. more resistant
- C. powerless
- D. unresistant

10. Antibiotics become less effective when they are used.

- A. correctly
- B. properly
- C. wrongly
- D. truthfully

11. Which sentence about the text is true:

- A. One of the side effects of penicillin is difficulty in running.
- B. One of the side effects of penicillin is difficulty in sleeping.
- C. One of the side effects of penicillin is difficulty in hearing.
- D. One of the side effects of penicillin is difficulty in breathing



12. The immune system can destroy all bacteria immediately even if they multiply

- A. True
- B. False

13. Penicillin prevents bacteria from multiplying.

- A. True
- B. False

14. Antibiotics become more effective when they are taken correctly.

- A. True
- B. False

15. Patients should continue the course of medication even if they feel better

- A. True
- B. False

16. The word "multiply" means:

- A. increase very much in number or amount
- B. being careful about what to do.
- C. reduce
- D. decrease

17. The word "spectrum" means:

- A. increase very much in number or amount
- B. a range
- C. reduce
- D. decrease

18. The word "excessive" means:

- A. decrease
- B. extremely sensitive
- C. reduce
- D. greater than what seems reasonable or appropriate.

19. The word "allergic" means:

- A. increase very much in number or amount
- B. being sensitive to a substance
- C. reduce
- D. greater than what seems reasonable or appropriate

20. The word "cautious" means:

- A. increase very much in number or amount
- B. extremely sensitive
- C. being careful about what to do
- D. greater than what seems reasonable or appropriate

21. The word "resistance" means:

- A. the act of using force to oppose something
- B. extremely sensitive
- C. reduce
- D. greater than what seems reasonable or appropriate.

Answers:	Answers:
1 - C	12 - B
2 - D	13 - B
3 - A	14 - A
4 - C	15 - A
5 - D	16 - A
6 - B	17 - B
7 - A	18 - D
8 - D	19 - B
9 - B	20 - C
10 - C	21 - A
11 - D	



Vocabulary

Verb-noun Collocations

المصطلح	الترجمة
Make an effort	يُبذل جهداً
Raise taxes	رفع الضرائب
Give a lift	يُقل / يوصل بالسيارة
Run a risk	يخاطر/يجازف
Meet expectations	يوافق التوقعات
Lose temper	يفقد أعصابه (من الغضب)

Everyday English

On the Phone Terms

• I'd like to speak to...	• hold on a minute, I'll put you through.
• May I ask who's calling, please? ↳ This is	• Just a moment .., I'll put you through.
• Could you ask ... to ring me back, please?	• ...'s line is engaged. Will you hold on or can I take a message?
• Could you ask him to call me at 025567896	• Thank you for calling.

Pronunciation

Silent Letters

الحرف الصامت أو المكتوم (Silent or Mute Letter) في أي كلمة هو الحرف الذي يُكتب ولا يُلفظ.

a	logically			knife	knee
	doubt	climb	k	knot	knight
b	bomb	comb		know	knock
	thumb	crumb		calm	salmon
c	muscle	scissors	L	yolk	talk
d	Wednesday			should	halfpenny
e	tissue	make	m	mnemonic	
gh	alight	knight	n	autumn	
	exhaust	whale	u	guitar	
h	ghost	choir	ue	colleague	
	rhyme	honest			
i	business			wrist	sword
s	island		w	wrong	write
t	castle			answer	whole

غالباً .. (هذه الملاحظة لتسهيل الحفظ وليست بالضرورة أن تكون القاعدة ثابتة في كل الحالات)

1. إذا انتهت الكلمة باللاحقة **ally** فإن الـ **a** حرف صامت.
2. إذا انتهت الكلمة بالحرفين **mb** فإن الـ **b** حرف صامت.
3. عند تتالي الحرفين **sc** فإن الـ **c** حرف صامت.
4. عند تتالي الحرفين **gh** وسط الكلمة فإنهما حرفان صامتان.
5. عند تتالي الحرفين **kn** بداية الكلمة فإن الـ **k** حرف صامت.
6. عند تتالي الحرفين **mn** بداية الكلمة فإن الـ **m** حرف صامت.
7. عند تتالي الحرفين **nn** نهاية الكلمة فإن الـ **n** حرف صامت.
8. عند تتالي الحرفين **wr** نهاية الكلمة فإن الـ **w** حرف صامت.
9. حرف **e** في نهاية الكلمة أحياناً يكون صامت.

ذكر في الجدول غالبية أمثلة الكتابين، يمكنك الإطلاع على باقي الأمثلة المتواجدة في الكتاب، ويمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا





Choose the correct answer

1. Our boss often gets angry and his when things go wrong.
A. loses... temper B. raises... taxes C. meets... expectations D. makes... an effort
2. If she never posts anything on her personal website, she the of alienating her fans.
A. loses... temper B. raises... taxes C. runs ... risk D. makes... an effort
3. Politicians often think the government should in order to get more money to spend.
A. make an effort B. raise taxes C. meet expectations D. lose temper
4. The new clerk didn't his boss and was fired after only two months.
A. lose... temper B. raise... taxes C. meet expectations D. make... an effort
5. his car broke down, so I him to the nearest garage.
A. lost... temper B. raised... taxes C. met expectations D. gave... a lift
6. Not everything happens on its own sometimes. You have to to get things done.
A. make an effort B. raise taxes C. lose temper D. meet expectations
7. The Council strives to..... the expectations and aspirations of the community in delivering top- quality services.
A. give B. lose C. meet D. raise
8. If taxes were by just one percent, hundreds of new schools and hospitals could be built.
A. given B. raised C. lost D. met
9. It will be difficult to attain your goal of fluency if you don't an effort to speak more in class.
A. make B. lose C. give D. raise
10. When I feel like I'm about to my temper, I just leave the room.
A. give B. make C. raise D. lose
11. Can you..... me a lift to work tomorrow. My car is being repaired.
A. raise B. meet C. give D. lose
12. Invest if you like, but you're..... the risk of losing everything if the business fails.
A. making B. giving C. losing D. running
13. Which letter in the word" knot" is silent:
A. k B. n C. o D. t
14. Which letter in the word" ghost" is silent:
A. g B. h C. o D. s
15. Which letter in the word" make" is silent:
A. m B. a C. k D. e
16. Which letter in the word" calm" is silent:
A. c B. a C. l D. m
17. Which letter in the word" wrist" is silent:
A. w B. r C. i D. s



18. Which letter in the word "comb" is silent:

- A. c B. o C. m D. b

19. Which letter in the word "guitar" is silent:

- A. g B. u C. i D. t

20. Which letter in the word "talk" is silent:

- A. t B. a C. l D. k

21. Which letter in the word "Wednesday" is silent:

- A. w B. d C. n D. y

22. Which of the following words has a silent letter:

- A. start B. sad C. wrist D. sun

23. The word that has silent letter is.....

- A. open B. paint C. sheep D. psychology

24. You want to talk to Dr. Amal. The operator answers your call.

- A. Don't you think you'd feel isolated? **(Ask the operator to put you through to Dr. Amal)**
B. May I ask who's calling, please?
C. " Good morning. I'd like to speak to Dr. Amal please"
D. I'd never hurt your feelings

25. " Dr. Amal's line is engaged. Will you hold or can I take a message?" (Choose the suitable response)

- A. Certainly. Thank you for calling.
B. May I ask who's calling, please?
C. Could you ask her to ring me back, please? My phone number is 0303-242892.
D. I'd never hurt your feelings

26. " hello, Frank and Brothers. how can I help you?"
yourself)

(Introduce

- A. This is Peter Martin. Can I have extension 3421
B. May I ask who's calling, please?
C. Could you ask her to ring me back, please? My phone number is 0303-242892.
D. I'd never hurt your feelings

27. " This is Peter Martin calling. Is Bob in?"

(Choose the suitable response)

- A. This is Peter Martin. Can I have extension 3421?
B. May I ask who's calling, please?
C. Could you ask her to ring me back, please? My phone number is 0303-242892.
D. I'm afraid he's out at the moment. Can I take a message?

28. " Could you ask Bob to call me at 025567896? I need to talk to him about the line. It's urgent."

(Choose the suitable response)

- A. Could you repeat the number please?
B. I'm sorry about what happened.
C. Could you ask her to ring me back, please? My phone number is 0303-242892.
D. It's very inconvenient.



A. Choose the letter of the underline word or group of words that is not correct

- 1. We won't have to leave home so early if we lived closer to the office.
- 2. If I am you, I would go with them.
- 3. If I had had your address, I would have written you a postcard.
- 4. If you had come in time, you wouldn't have missed the lesson.
- 5. Unless she had fastened her seat belt, she would have be injured.
- 6. I will give you a left into town if I finish my work in time.

B. Rearrange the following parts of a paragraph to form an organized one

- a) This allows bacteria to live in many places - soil, water, plants and the human body.
- b) Bacteria are living organisms, but viruses aren't.
- c) It can survive on its own, inside or outside the body.
- d) A bacterium is a single complex cell.

Answers:	Answers:	Answers:
1 - A	15 - D	A
2 - C	16 - C	1 - F
3 - B	17 - A	2 - F
4 - C	18 - D	3 - T
5 - D	19 - B	4 - T
6 - A	20 - C	5 - F
7 - C	21 - B	6 - F
8 - B	22 - C	B
9 - A	23 - D	b - d - c - a
10 - D	24 - C	
11 - C	25 - C	
12 - D	26 - A	
13 - A	27 - D	
14 - B	28 - A	



Conditional Sentences



رابط شرح الدرس

Uses & Forms

1 – Zero conditional (Present simple):

If + Subject + V₁ ↔ Subject + V₁

الحالة 0 (احتمال مؤكد): يستخدم هذا النوع من الشرط

للدلالة على عادات عامة أو حقائق علمية ثابتة (شيء دائماً يسبب شيء آخر) و نسبة تحققها مؤكدة لأنها دائمة.

- If we **boil** water, it **evaporates**.
- I **feel** tired if I **don't get** enough sleep.

2 – First conditional (Future simple):

If + Subject + V₁ ↔ Subject + $\frac{will}{won't}$ + V₀

الحالة 1 (احتمال متوسط): يستخدم هذا النوع من الشرط

للدلالة على حدث محتمل، واقعي غير مستحيل يمكن أن يتحقق في وقت ما في المستقبل.

- If you **study**, you **will pass**.
- We **will go** swimming if the weather **is** nice tomorrow.

Note

يمكنك استعمال الجمل الأمرية في هذه الحالة أيضاً:

- If you **need** money, **go** to the bank.
- If you **are** hungry, **eat** your meal.
- **Go** out, if you **need** some privacy.

تذكر: الجمل الأمرية هي جمل خُذف فاعلها و بقى الفعل فقط.

3 – Second conditional (Past simple):

If + Subject + V₂ ↔ Subject + $\frac{would}{wouldn't}$ + V₀

الحالة 2 (احتمال ضعيف): يستخدم هذا النوع من الشرط

للدلالة على شيء تخيلي احتمالية حدوثه ضئيلة جداً ولكن واردة الحدوث في المستقبل، ويمثل عكس الأحداث الواقعة في الماضي و المستقبل.

- If you **studied**, you **would pass**.
- He **would help** her if she **asked** him.
- If I **were** you, I **would choose** to study engineering.

Note

في الجمل الشرطية:

- If I were you ✓
- If I was you ✗

4 – Third conditional (Past perfect):

If + Subject + had + V₃ ↔ Subject + $\frac{would}{wouldn't}$ + have + V₃

الحالة 3 (احتمال مستحيل): يستخدم هذا النوع من الشرط

للدلالة على شيء تخيلي مستحيل التحقق، وهو عادةً يُمثل عكس الواقع في الماضي، ولذلك هو غير مرتبط بالمستقبل.

- If you **had studied**, you **would have passed**.
- Ahmad **would have arrived** in time if his car **hadn't broken down**.

Note

Breaking down

فعل مركب معناه تعطيل

Notes

بعض الملاحظات في الجمل الشرطية:

1 عند وجود أداة الشرط في منتصف الجملة الشرطية نحذف الفاصلة:

- If you **studied**, you **would pass**.
- You **would pass** If you **studied**.

2 Unless = if not

- if Ahmad's car **hadn't** broken down, he would have arrived in time.
- **Unless** Ahmad's car had broken down, he would have arrived in time.

3 عند التأكد من تحقق الشرط بنسبة كبيرة (أي كما في الحالة 1) يمكننا تبديل **if** بـ **when**:

- I will give you a lift into town **if** I finish my work.
- I will give you a lift into town **when** I finish my work.

4 يمكن استخدام الصيغة **Whether or** للتعبير عن الجمل الشرطية، وتكون بمعنى (فيما إذا) وتستخدم للتخيير بين شيئين:

- **Whether** you studied **or** not, you wouldn't pass the test.

وهنا تمت الإشارة الى شرطين (درست أم لم تدرس) فهناك جواب شرط واحد (الرسوب).

مقارنة بين الحالتين 2 و 3 للجمل الشرطية:

Second conditional	Third conditional
وارد التحقق ولكن نسبته قليلة جداً	مستحيل التحقق
مرتبط بالمستقبل	غير مرتبط بالمستقبل

نكشات

1 يمكن أن تأتي جملة الشرط بدون كلمة **if** ولكن تفيد معنى الشرط، وتندرج تحت الحالة 2 ويكون شكلها:

Noun $\leftrightarrow$ Subject + $\frac{\text{would}}{\text{wouldn't}}$ + V₀

- Without money, life **would be** difficult.

مع عدم وجود كلمة الشرط في الجملة السابقة إلا أننا يمكن أن نرى بوضوح أنها تفيد معنى الشرط (من دون المال، الحياة ستكون صعبة أي إذا لم يتواجد المال، الحياة ستكون صعبة)

2 تذكر: في الجمل الشرطية:

مع الضمير You:

- If I were you ✓
- If I was you ✗

مع حالات تخيلية ولكن ممكنة الحدوث:

- If I were rich ✓
- If I was rich ✓

مع حالات تخيلية ولكن مستحيلة الحدوث:

- If I were a bird ✓
- If I was a bird ✗

كيف تعرف أن الشيء مستحيل الحدوث؟

الجواب: إذا حصل هذا الشيء مع شخص آخر فهو ليس **مستحيل** الحدوث، أما إذا لم يحصل أبداً مع أي إنسان فهو **مستحيل** الحدوث، في المثال الأول أنا لست غني ولكن يوجد أشخاص آخرون أغنياء لذلك هو غير مستحيل، ولكن في المثال الثاني أنا لا يمكن أن أصبح طائر ولا يوجد أي شخص آخر يمكن أن يصبح طائر لذلك الحدث مستحيل.



Choose the correct answer

1. If I had enough money, I a Ferrari.

- A. would buy B. will buy C. would have bought D. am going to buy

2. If I had had enough money, I a Ferrari.

- A. would buy B. will buy C. would have bought D. am going to buy

3. If you..... more, your English would improve.

- A. practice B. practiced C. would have practiced D. will practice

4. I would ring the police if I a burglar breaking into my house.

- A. see B. am going to see C. saw D. had seen

5. If the referee..... the foul, he would have awarded a penalty kick to our team.

- A. had seen B. will see C. saw D. sees

6. I..... a huge house by the beach if I won the lottery.

- A. will build B. would build C. would have built D. am going to build

7. If I..... your address, I would have written you a postcard.

- A. have B. had C. would have D. had had

8. She wouldn't have arrived on time if she..... the bus.

- A. has taken B. had taken C. would take D. takes

9. I..... very unhappy if my friends didn't come to the party.

- A. would have been B. will be C. would be D. am

10. Your brother wouldn't have found such a nice job if he a university diploma.

- A. hadn't had B. didn't have C. doesn't have D. won't have

11. If you had come in time, you..... the lesson.

- A. don't miss B. wouldn't have missed C. won't miss D. wouldn't miss

12. People wouldn't have crossed the Bosphorus if they these bridges.

- A. haven't built B. didn't build C. hadn't built D. don't build

13. You would have some money in your pocket if you it so generously.

- A. wouldn't spend B. hadn't spent C. didn't spend D. don't spend

14. If I..... in debt, I would quit my job.

- A. am not B. haven't been C. hadn't been D. weren't

15. If I a bird, I would fly.

- A. am B. was C. were D. both B and C

16. If I were you, I do this.

- A. don't B. won't C. wouldn't D. both A and B

17. If I had found her address, I..... her an invitation.

- A. send B. will send C. would send D. would have sent

18. If I.... her address, I would send her an invitation.

- A. found B. find C. will find D. am finding



19. If I..... enough time now, I would visit my aunt.

- A. have B. had C. had had D. have had

20. If I had enough time now, I..... my aunt.

- A. visit B. visited C. will visit D. would visit

21. If I enough time yesterday, I would have visited my aunt.

- A. have B. had C. had had D. have had

22. I you a lift into town if I finish my work in time.

- A. will give B. would give C. would have given D. gave

23. I'll give you a lift into town when I my work.

- A. had finished B. will finish C. finished D. finish

24. Unless she.... the seat belt, she would have been injured.

- A. didn't fasten B. fastened C. had fastened D. hadn't fastened

25. If I... writing poetry, my English teacher would be surprised.

- A. started B. start C. would start D. had started

26. People would see my photo everywhere if I.... a famous model.

- A. am B. were C. would be D. had been

27. If the family had saved enough money, they a new flat.

- A. could buy B. will buy C. would buy D. would have bought

28. The buildings wouldn't have burned to ashes if the firemen..... in time.

- A. come B. came C. had come D. would come

29. If my little sister did something wrong, I'm sure she me.

- A. would have told B. tell C. would tell D. will tell

30. If the policeman had seen the thief, he him.

- A. will arrest B. would have arrested C. would arrest D. arrest

31. I would spend every winter in Kasab if I..... enough time.

- A. have B. had had C. had D. would have

32. If Sara had had enough time, she her project.

- A. finish B. would have finished C. finished D. would finish

33. Jack will buy his son a computer when he his exams.

- A. passes B. passed C. had passed D. will pass

34. If my car hadn't run out of petrol, I on time.

- A. would arrive B. will arrive C. would have arrived D. arrive

35. Jane would have attended her friend's birthday if she an invitation.

- A. would receive B. would have received C. will receive D. had received

36. Unless Caroline's car had broken down, she there.

- A. would have been B. would be C. will be D. is

37. If I had gone to bed early last night, I tired the following day.

- A. wouldn't have been B. won't be C. can't be D. wouldn't be



38. I would ring my friend now if I Her phone number.

- A. will know B. knew C. had known D. know

39. If the officials hadn't stopped the poor man, he..... his house

- A. build B. built C. could build D. could have built

40. Unless the officialsthe poor man, he could have built his house.

- A. stop B. stopped C. had stopped D. would stop

41. Our team would have moved up if they..... the match.

- A. were winning B. had won C. win D. won

42. If Christine..... in hospital now, she would be on holiday in Italy.

- A. weren't B. wasn't C. won't be D. both A and B

43. If the streets in our town weren't very crowded, I my car.

- A. drive B. will drive C. could drive D. could have driven

44. Unless the streets in our town so crowded, I could drive my car.

- A. were B. is C. was D. are

Answers:

- 1 - A 23 - D
2 - C 24 - C
3 - B 25 - A
4 - C 26 - B
5 - A 27 - D
6 - B 28 - C
7 - D 29 - C
8 - B 30 - B
9 - C 31 - C
10 - A 32 - B
11 - B 33 - A
12 - C 34 - C
13 - C 35 - D
14 - D 36 - A
15 - C 37 - A
16 - C 38 - B
17 - D 39 - D
18 - A 40 - C
19 - B 41 - B
20 - D 42 - D
21 - C 43 - C
22 - A 44 - A

كلمتين بيني وبينك ... ✍

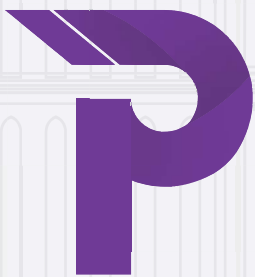
”الاستراحة ضرورة وليست رفاهية، بس تحس حالك ضايع وتعبان ارتاح، مو غلط، المهم بعد الاستراحة ترجع بقوة“.



Unit number

Facts about Human body

Module 5 : Culture



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



Human Body

The human body is a **wonderful machine** which **performs** several functions without **rest** from **birth**. Our body continues to work, without stopping for a second. The main **organs** of the human body are **lungs, heart, kidney, liver** and **brain**. These organs work together and are **controlled** by the brain. Each **system** such as **digestive** system, **excretory** system, **circulatory** system, **endocrine** system, **nervous** system or **muscular** system **carries out** a **major function**. All of them are **controlled** by the brain which gives us **intelligence** to use our **physical** and **mental abilities**.

An **average** person is **estimated** to contain trillion of **human cells**. These cells include **neurons** (nerve cells) and **glands** (specialised cells). The **hormones** and **enzymes** are produced and **secreted** by these glands that perform different functions.

The human body is covered by the **skin**, which is a **flexible** covering that protects the body and keeps water and **harmful germs** out. The body's strong **internal framework (skeleton)** is made of 206 **bones**, connected at the **joint**, such as in **legs**. These joints help us to move. The **backbone** supports the head and **limbs** and protects the **spinal cord**. Between the skeleton and the skin, there are about 500 muscles. Nerves **spread** from the brain to all parts of the body, carrying **signals** in the form of **tiny** electrical **impulses**. The **sense** organs namely eyes, nose, ears, **tongue** and skin pass the messages to the brain through nerves, which take the **instructions** from the brain to the muscles. The brain **automatically** controls **breathing, heartbeat**, digestion, etc.

The body keeps on growing. The **peak** of physical growth is reached at about 18 to 25 years of age. When we grow old, the skin becomes **wrinkled** and **less elastic**, the joints become **inflexible**, muscles **loose**, and bones become **weak**.

Here are some **tips** for **aging gracefully**: be kind to your skin which is your largest organ. You should also keep your **salt intake** to a minimum to keep your **blood pressure** down. Also, getting enough **sleep** has been **proved** to lower the risk of heart disease and **stroke**.

Adapted from evirtualguru.com

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّه اهتماماً للتلوين.

Translation

جسم الإنسان عبارة عن آلة رائعة تنجز وظائف عديدة دون راحة منذ الولادة. يستمر جسداً في العمل دون توقف لثانية واحدة. والأعضاء الرئيسية في جسم الإنسان هي: الرئتان والقلب والكلى والكبد والدماغ. تعمل هذه الأعضاء معاً ويتحكم فيها الدماغ. يقوم كل جهاز مثل الجهاز الهضمي، أو جهاز الإخراج، أو جهاز الدوران، أو جهاز الغدد الصماء، أو الجهاز العصبي، أو الجهاز العضلي بوظيفة رئيسية. يتم التحكم فيها جميعاً بواسطة الدماغ الذي يمنحنا الذكاء لاستخدام قدراتنا البدنية والعقلية.

تشير التقديرات وفقاً لأبحاث حديثة إلى أن الإنسان العادي يحتوي على تريليونات من الخلايا الحية، وتشمل هذه الخلايا عصبونات (خلايا عصبية) وغدد (خلايا متخصصة). يتم إنتاج الهرمونات والإنزيمات وإفرازها من هذه الغدد التي تؤدي وظائف مختلفة.



يُغطي **الجلد** جسم الإنسان، وهو غطاء **مرن** (قابل للطي والانكماش) يحمي الجسم ويمنع الماء والجراثيم **الضارة** من الدخول. ويتكون **الهيكل الداخلي** القوي للجسم (**الهيكل العظمي**) من 206 **عظمة** متصلة عند **المفصل**، كما هو الحال في **الساقين**. تساعدنا هذه المفاصل على الحركة، ويدعم **العمود الفقري** الرأس **والأطراف** ويحمي **النخاع الشوكي**. يوجد بين الهيكل العظمي والجلد ما يقارب 500 عضلة. **تنتشر** الأعصاب من الدماغ إلى كل أجزاء الجسم حاملةً **إشارات** على شكل **نبضات** كهربائية **صغيرة جدًا**. وتقوم أعضاء **الحواس** ألا وهي: العينان والأنف والأذنان **واللسان** والجلد، بتمرير الرسائل إلى الدماغ من خلال الأعصاب التي تنقل **التعليمات** من الدماغ إلى العضلات. يتحكم الدماغ **تلقائيًا** في **التنفس** و**ضربات القلب** والهضم وما إلى ذلك.

يستمر الجسم في النمو، ويتم الوصول إلى ذروة النمو البدني في سن 18 إلى 25 عامًا تقريبًا. عندما نتقدم في السن، يصبح الجلد **متجعدًا** وأقل **مرونة**، وتغدو المفاصل غير مرنة، والعضلات **مرتخية**، والعظام ضعيفة.

وإليك بعض **النصائح** لتصل سن **الشيخوخة بأمان**: كن لطيفًا مع بشرتك التي تعد أكبر أعضاء جسمك، كما يجب أن تقلل من **تناولك للملح** إلى الحد الأدنى للحفاظ على **ضغط الدم** منخفضًا، وقد ثبت أيضًا أن الحصول على قسط كافٍ من **النوم** يقلل من خطر الإصابة بأمراض القلب **والسكتة الدماغية**.

مُقتبس من evirtualauru.com

مفردات النص الأساسية

excretory	الإطراح	having the function of getting rid of waste material from the body
endocrine	الغدد الصم	relating to the system in your body that produces hormones
secreted	إفراز	produced
limbs	أطراف	an arm or leg
wrinkled	متجعد	with small lines and folds
elastic	مرونة	capable of stretching
loose	مترهل / مرتخي	to make less tight, to loosen

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. The human body is considered a great machine because it.

- A. doesn't perform any function.
- B. does several functions.
- C. performs one function.
- D. doesn't carry out any function.

2..... Controls all the body organs.

- A. The brain
- B. The heart
- C. The head
- D. The nervous system

3. Hormones and enzymes are produced in.....

- A. the circulatory system
- B. the nerve cells
- C. the glands
- D. the brain



4. The body can be protected from harmful germs by.....

- A. the nerves
- B. the skin
- C. the spinal cord
- D. the skeleton

5. The nerves in our body.....

- A. take the instructions from the brain to the muscles.
- B. carry signals in the form of tiny electrical impulses.
- C. pass the messages to the brain.
- D. all of the them are correct.

6. When we become older,

- A. the skin becomes wrinkled and less elastic.
- B. the joints become inflexible.
- C. the bones become weak.
- D. all of the them are correct.

7. Which sentence is not mentioned in the text

- A. The hormones and enzymes are produced and secreted by the glands.
- B. The human body is covered by the skin.
- C. The brain weighs about 2.75 pounds.
- D. Getting enough sleep has been proved to lower the risk of heart disease.

8. There are three basic organs in the human body.

- A. True
- B. False

9. The human body is covered by a flexible covering that protects the body from harmful germs.

- A. True
- B. False

10. Nerves spread from the brain to all parts of the body, carrying the blood in the form of tiny impulses.

- A. True
- B. False

11. You should reduce the salt intake to keep your blood pressure down.

- A. True
- B. False

12. The word "excretory" means:

- A. having the function to attack something
- B. having the function of getting rid of waste material from the body
- C. an acute inflammation of the lungs
- D. a sign that something exists, especially bad

13. The word "endocrine" means:

- A. relating to the system in your body that produces hormones
- B. making something valid by confirming it
- C. Produced
- D. existing before another one



14. The word “secreted” means:

- A. joined in close association
- B. devastated

- C. produced
- D. placed

15. The word “limbs” means:

- A. endings of the fingers
- B. human rights

- C. ears and eyes
- D. an arm or leg

16. The word “wrinkled” means:

- A. inflammation
- B. with small lines and folds

- C. organisms
- D. many vital roles

17. The word “elastic” means:

- A. an acute inflammation
- B. a biochemical activity

- C. capable of stretching
- D. a tube in the body

18. The word “loose” means:

- A. to host someone
- B. to make someone happy

- C. to make less tight, to loosen
- D. to cause similar symptoms

Answers:

- 1 - B
- 2 - A
- 3 - C
- 4 - B
- 5 - D
- 6 - D
- 7 - C
- 8 - B
- 9 - A

Answers:

- 10 - B
- 11 - A
- 12 - B
- 13 - A
- 14 - C
- 15 - D
- 16 - B
- 17 - C
- 18 - C



Workbook

Reading

Page 65

How does the Immune System Work?

The **immune system** has a **vital** role since it protects your body from harmful **substances**, germs and cell changes that could make you **ill**. It is **made up of** various organs, cells and proteins.

As long as your immune system is running **smoothly**, you don't **notice** that it's there. But if it stops working **properly**– because it's **weak** or can't **fight particularly aggressive** germs– you get ill. Germs that your body has never **encountered** before are also likely to make you ill. Some germs will only make you ill the first time you come into **contact** with them. These include **childhood diseases** like **chickenpox**.

The task of the immune system

Without an immune system, we would have no way to fight harmful things that **enter** our body from the outside or harmful changes that **occur inside** our body.

The **main tasks of the body's immune system** are:

- to fight disease-causing germs (**pathogens**) like bacteria, viruses, **parasites** or **fungi**, and to **remove** them from the body.
- to **recognise** and **neutralise** harmful substances from the environment.
- to fight disease-causing changes in the body, such as **cancer cells**.

How is the immune system activated?

The immune system can be **activated** by a lot of different things that the body doesn't recognise as its own. These are called **antigens**. Examples of antigens include the proteins on the **surfaces** of bacteria, and viruses. When these antigens attach to special **receptors** on the immune cells (immune system cells), a whole **series of processes** are **triggered** in the body. Once the body has come into contact with a disease-causing germ for the first time, it usually **stores** information about the germ and how to fight it. Then, if it comes into contact with the germ again, it recognises the germ **straight away** and can start fighting it faster.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّض اهتماماً للتلوين

Translation

للجهاز المناعي دور حيوي لأنه يحمي جسمك من المواد الضارة، والجراثيم، والتغيرات الخلوية التي قد تصيبك بالمرض، ويتكون من أعضاء وخلايا وبروتينات مختلفة.

وما دام جهازك المناعي يعمل بسلاسة، فلن تلاحظ وجوده. لكن إذا توقف عن العمل بشكل صحيح -بسبب ضعفه أو عدم قدرته على مواجهة الجراثيم العدوانية خاصة- فستمرض. كما أن الجراثيم التي لم يسبق لجسمك أن واجهها من قبل قد تصيبك بالمرض، وبعض الجراثيم لا تسبب لك الوعكة إلا في أول مرة تتعرض لها وتشمل هذه الأمراض أمراض الطفولة مثل جدري الماء.



مهمة الجهاز المناعي

بدون الجهاز المناعي، لن يكون لدينا أي وسيلة لمواجهة الأشياء الضارة التي **تدخل** الجسم من الخارج أو التغيرات الضارة التي **تحدث داخل** الجسم.

وتتمثل **المهام** الرئيسية لجهاز المناعة بالجسم في:

- مكافحة الجراثيم المسببة للأمراض (**الكائنات المُمرضة**) مثل البكتيريا، والفيروسات، **والطفيليات، والفطريات**، وإزالتها من الجسم.
- التعرف على المواد الضارة من البيئة المحيطة **وإبطال مفعولها**.
- مكافحة التغيرات المسببة للأمراض في الجسم، مثل **الخلايا السرطانية**.

كيف ينشط الجهاز المناعي؟

يمكن **تنشيط** الجهاز المناعي من خلال أشياء مختلفة لا يتعرف عليها الجسم على أنها جزء منه، وتسمى هذه الأشياء **بالمستضدات**. تشمل أمثلة المستضدات: البروتينات الموجودة على **أسطح** البكتيريا والفيروسات، عندما ترتبط هذه **المُستضدات بمستقبلات** خاصة على الخلايا المناعية (خلايا الجهاز المناعي)، **تحفز سلسلة** كاملة من **العمليات** في الجسم. بمجرد أن يتلامس الجسم مع جرثومة مسببة للمرض للمرة الأولى، فإنه عادةً ما **يخزن** معلومات عن الجرثومة وكيفية مواجهتها. وبعد ذلك، إذا احتك الجسم بالجرثومة مرة أخرى، يتعرف الجسم على الجرثومة **مباشرةً** ويمكنه البدء في محاربتها بشكل أسرع.

مفردات النص الأساسية

aggressive	عدوانية	behaving in an angry threatening way
encounter	مواجهة	to meet or experience something unpleasant
fungi	فطريات	a group of organisms that grow in a wound
parasites	طفيليات	organisms that live on or in another organism of a different species
antigens	مستضدات	a substance that makes the body produce antibodies
receptors	مستقبلات	nerve endings which receive information about changes in light, heat and causes the body to react in particular ways
trigger	يحفز	to make something happen very quickly



Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. The immune system plays a vital role because it our body from harmful substances.

- A. fight
- B. attacks
- C. protects
- D. decomposes

2. The immune system consists of.....

- A. only various organs.
- B. various organs, cells and enzymes.
- C. the nerves and cells.
- D. various organs, cells and proteins.

3. If the immune system is unable to work,

- A. you get better.
- B. you get ill.
- C. you become healthier.
- D. nothing happens.

4. Which sentence about the text is true?

- A. One task of the immune system is to look after disease-causing germs.
- B. One task of the immune system is to protect harmful things.
- C. One task of the immune system is to neutralize harmful substances from the environment.
- D. One task of the immune system is to help disease-causing changes in the body.

5. When the body has been exposed to a disease-causing germ for the first time,

- A. it doesn't care about it.
- B. it neglects it.
- C. it stores information about the germ and how to fight it.
- D. it ignores it.

6. The body can fight germs more quickly.

- A. if it comes into contact with the germ for a second time.
- B. if it comes into contact with the germ for the first time.
- C. if it doesn't come into contact with the germ again.
- D. both B and C

7. Germs that your body has never come across before are likely to make you better.

- A. True
- B. False

8. The immune system is made up of various organs, cells and proteins

- A. True
- B. False

9. Without an immune system, we would have one way to fight harmful things that enter our body.

- A. True
- B. False

10. The immune system can be activated by antigens.

- A. True
- B. False

11. As long as your immune system is running smoothly, you don't notice that it's there.

- A. True
- B. False



12. The word “encounter” means:

- A. to meet or experience something unpleasant
- B. a neat cut made into the skin
- C. being fixed or inserted firmly into something else
- D. a medical operation to replace a damaged organ with another one

13. The word “aggressive” means:

- A. relating to the treatment or cure of an illness
- B. behaving in an angry threatening way
- C. importance of medical technology engineering
- D. professional

14. The word “receptors” means:

- A. related to medical treatments involving cutting into someone’s body
- B. a sound that is produced or increased in one object
- C. nerve endings which receive information about changes in light, heat and causes the body to react in particular ways
- D. a medical process using the reflections of high-frequency sound waves to construct an image of a body organ

15. The word “trigger” means:

- A. to make something happen very quickly
- B. to reduce the spread of infections through vaccination
- C. to fight a wide variety of infections or diseases caused by bacteria
- D. to cause a viral infection

16. The word “parasites” means:

- A. antibiotics that stop bacteria from multiplying
- B. organisms that live on or in another organism of a different species
- C. changes in the body, such as cancer cells
- D. things that the body doesn’t recognize as its own

17. The word “antigens” means:

- A. a substance that makes the body produce antibodies
- B. a response of body tissues to injury of the body
- C. a viral infection
- D. a medical operation

18. The word “fungi” means:

- A. organisms that live on or in another organism of a different species
- B. a host cell which multiplies on other cells of the body
- C. a group of organisms that grow in a wound
- D. a medical operation to replace a damaged organ with another one

Answers:	Answers:
1 - C	10 - A
2 - D	11 - A
3 - B	12 - A
4 - C	13 - B
5 - C	14 - C
6 - A	15 - A
7 - B	16 - B
8 - A	17 - A
9 - B	18 - C



Vocabulary

Body Idioms

المصطلح	شرحه	ترجمته
A pain in the neck	annoying	شيء أو شخص مزعج
Speak one's mind	to say exactly what she thinks	يتكلم بصراحة
It costs you an arm and a leg	it is very costly	مكلف أو غال
Made someone jump out of his skin	shocked	يُفاجئ أو يُدهش
follow your heart	to go after your deeper feeling and instinct	يتبع حدسه

Everyday English

Asking for Help

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| • I need your help urgently. | • Could you...? |
| • Do you think you could possibly...? | • Would you help me prepare what to do about ...? |

Offering help

- What would you like me to help with...?



Pronunciation

Syllable Stress

القاعدة: عند تعدد المقاطع الصوتية في كلمة، فإننا لتشديد أحد المقاطع نتبع الخطوات التالية:

نحدد كل البوائى (prefixes) واللواحق (suffixes) ونستبعدهما للحصول على الجذر الأساسي للكلمة.

➡ قد يكون الجذر مكون من مقطع صوتي واحد نقوم بتشديده.

➡ أو يكون مكوناً من مقطعين صوتيين نشدد أحدهما فقط.

- من **الخاطئ** تشديد البادئة أو اللاحقة.
- من الممكن أن تحتوي الكلمة على بادئين أو لاحقين.

بعض البوائى prefixes

in- un- im- il- ir- dis- mis-
de- a- am- ob- pro- pre-
inter- anti- su- non- ex- be-

بعض اللواحق suffixes

-ness -less -ive -able -ity -fy
-ly -ous -tious -sible

Examples

irresponsible

unfriendly

unbelievable

illegal

improbable

impossible

predictable

interactive

تذكر: يوجد قاعدتان بسيطتان تحكمان تشديد المقاطع الصوتية، وهما:

1. يمكن تشديد مقطع صوتي واحد فقط في الكلمة، وبالتالي إذا سمعنا مقطعين صوتيين مشددين فهذا يعني وجود كلمتين.

2. يمكن تشديد الأحرف الصوتية فقط (أي المقطع يجب أن يحتوي حرف صوتي لتشديده)، لا الأحرف الساكنة.



في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا:



Choose the correct answer

1. The idiom "a pain in the neck" means:

- A. it is very costly
- B. to say exactly what one thinks
- C. annoying
- D. to go after your deeper feeling and instinct

2. The idiom "to speak one's mind" means:

- A. it is very costly
- B. to say exactly what one thinks
- C. annoying
- D. to go after your deeper feeling and instinct

3. The idiom "It costs you an arm and a leg" means:

- A. it is very costly
- B. to say exactly what one thinks
- C. shocked
- D. to go after your deeper feeling and instinct

4. The idiom "To jump out of one's skin" means:

- A. it is very costly
- B. to say exactly what one thinks
- C. to be shocked
- D. to go after your deeper feeling and instinct

5. The idiom "To follow your heart" means:

- A. it is very costly
- B. to say exactly what she thinks
- C. to be shocked
- D. to go after your deeper feeling and instinct.

6. Writing long essays on uninteresting topics is a.....

- A. cost an arm and a leg
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jump out of your skin
- D. speak his mind

7. She has very strong opinions and she's not afraid to

- A. cost an arm and a leg
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jump out of her skin
- D. speak her mind

8. You must visit that restaurant; the food is really good but it.....

- A. costs an arm and a leg
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jump out of his skin
- D. speak your mind

9. The doorbell made him.....

- A. cost an arm and a leg
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jump out of your skin
- D. speak his mind

10. You might make less money from that job, but if it really attracts you, you should.....

- A. follow your heart
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jump out of your skin
- D. cost an arm and a leg

11. his sudden outbursts have made him a real..... and socially unwanted.

- A. cost an arm and a leg
- B. pain in the neck.
- C. jump out of his skin
- D. speak his mind

12. Buying a brand new car is going to Maybe we should ride bikes.

- A. cost an arm and a leg
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jump out of our skin
- D. speak our minds

13. My sister is very polite. She doesn't

- A. follow her heart
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jump out of her skin
- D. speak her mind



14. The best advice is to but keep your eyes opened.

- A. follow your heart
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jump out of your skin
- D. speak your mind

15. Our neighbour almost..... When she learned her son and his wife were having triplets.

- A. followed her heart
- B. pain in the neck
- C. jumped out of her skin
- D. spoke her mind

16. Choose the stressed syllable in the word "unbelievable":

- A. un
- B. be
- C. liev
- D. able

17. Which syllable is stressed in the word "distinctive":

- A. dis
- B. tinc
- C. tive
- D. none of them

18. Which syllable is stressed in the word "misbehave":

- A. mis
- B. be
- C. have
- D. all of them

19. Which syllable is stressed in the word "unfriendly":

- A. un
- B. friend
- C. ly
- D. both A and B

20. You are in a launderette. The instructions on the washing machine are not clear. (Ask for help)

- A. Could you rush us to a nearby hospital?
- B. Do you think you could possibly bring the first aid kit with you?
- C. Could you explain to me the instructions on the washing machine.
- D. Could you tell me your address?

21. You have a long ladder to get up on the roof. Ask a friend to help you put it up and hold it while you climb up and take a bird's nest out of the drainpipe. (Ask for help)

- A. I need your help to pass my test.
- B. I think you deserve this honour.
- C. Do you think you could possibly hold the ladder for me?
- D. Could you tell me how to run away?

22. You are having a graduation party next week and you don't know what to do. (Ask for help)

- A. Would you help me prepare what to do about the graduation party?
- B. Don't you think you would feel isolated?
- C. You are exaggerating!
- D. Congratulations

A. Check whether the sentence is correct or not (True for correct, False for incorrect)

- 1. You must visit that restaurant; the food is really good but it costs you an arm and a head.
- 2. The doorbell made him jump out of his skin.
- 3. The dangerous radiation of the sun is reduced by produce melanin by the skin.
- 4. If only I have saved my friend's phone number.
- 5. I missed the flight. I really wish I had caught it.

B. Rearrange the following parts of a paragraph to form an organised one

- a) These organs work together and are controlled by the brain,
- b) Its main organs are lungs, heart, kidney, liver and brain.
- c) and each system in the human body carries out a major function.
- d) Our body continues to work, without stopping for a second.

Answers:	Answers:	Answers:
1 - C	12 - A	A
2 - B	13 - D	
3 - A	14 - A	
4 - C	15 - C	
5 - D	16 - C	
6 - B	17 - B	1 - False
7 - D	18 - C	2 - True
8 - A	19 - B	3 - False
9 - C	20 - C	4 - False
10 - A	21 - C	5 - True
11 - B	22 - A	B
		d - b - a - c



Expressing wishes



رابط شرح الدرس

Uses & Forms

Notes

نستخدم التمني للتعبير عن أحداث نتمنى حدوثها ولكنها ليست واقعة حقيقة، لذلك هو عكس الواقع.

بعض الملاحظات الهامة قبل البدء:

1 بما أن التمني هو عكس الحقيقة فعلياً أن نحول
الاثبات الى نفي و العكس أيضاً في جمل التمني مع
مراعاة المعنى:

- I **don't** know how to dance.

→ I **wish** I **knew** how to dance.

2 دائماً في قاعدة التمني نعود بالزمن خطوة للوراء:

أي، اذا كانت الجملة الأصلية في الحاضر نعيدها الى
الماضي، و اذا كانت في الماضي نعيدها الى الماضي
التام.

- I **don't** know how to dance. Present simple

→ I **wish** I **knew** how to dance. Past simple

3 I Wish = if only

- I **wish** I knew how to dance. ✓

- **If only** I knew how to dance. ✓

4 عند التحويل من نفي الى اثبات في حالة الماضي
البسيط يوجد خيارين:

- I **know** how to dance.

→ I **wish** I **didn't know** how to dance. ✓

→ I **wish** I **wouldn't know** how to dance. ✓

و الاختيار في الامتحان يكون حسب الخيارات المطروحة
ضمن السؤال.

1 – Wish in the present:

Wish + Subject + past simple

للتعبير عن الندم أو الأسف حول موقف معين في الحاضر.

- I **don't** know how to dance; I **wish** I **knew** how to dance.

- I **don't** know how to dance; **if only** I **knew** how to dance.

2 – Wish in the past:

Wish + Subject + past perfect

للتعبير عن الندم أو الأسف حول موقف معين في الماضي.

- I **didn't** go shopping yesterday; I **wish** I **had been** shopping.

- I **didn't** go shopping yesterday; **if only** I **had been** shopping.

3 – Wish in the future (Criticize):

Wish + Subject + $\frac{\text{would}}{\text{could}}$ | $\frac{\text{wouldn't}}{\text{couldn't}}$ + V₀

للتعبير عن الانزعاج والنقد أو الرغبة في التغيير.

- Mustafa is a heavy smoker, his wife **wishes** he **would stop** smoking soon.

- **If only** the children **wouldn't leave** their books on the floor, I am always falling over them.

نكشات

1 يمكن أن يتم الإبقاء على الفعل المساعد مع حذف باقي الجملة في جملة التمني:

- I **didn't** attend the class, but I wish that I **had**.

و تقدير الجملة هنا:

- I **didn't** attend the class, but I wish that I **had attended** the class.



2

عادةً عندما نريد التعبير عن الانزعاج أو إنتقاد سلوك بشري نستعمل حالة **Would** مع مراعاة التغيرات (نفي وإثبات حسب المعنى – عودة بالزمن).

- He **throws** his clothes everywhere. → I wish he **wouldn't throw** his clothes everywhere.
- My children **don't study** well. → I wish my children **would study** well.

3

ليس بالضرورة دائماً تحويل الإثبات الى نفي والعكس في جُمل التمني، يجب أن تراعي المعنى قبل أن تحول:

- I have strong desire that our head teacher limits absence in our school.

لدي رغبة قوية في أن يقوم المعلم المدير بتقييد الغياب في مدرستنا.

- I wish our head teacher **wouldn't** limit absence in our school. ✗

أتمنى ألا يقوم المدير بتقييد الغياب في مدرستنا.

- I wish our head teacher **would** limit absence in our school. ✓

أتمنى أن يقوم المدير بتقييد الغياب في مدرستنا.

في المثال السابق، النقل من إثبات الى نفي خاطئ لأنه يعطي عكس المعنى المطلوب، لذلك يجب أن تنتبه للمعنى المُراد إيصاله من الكلام قبل أن تحول.

استزادة

عادةً ما يتم استعمال فعل الكون **were** مع الضمائر **He, She, It, I** عند استخدام التمني وهو الأصح والأكثر رسمية **Formal**، مع ذلك لا يمكننا القول بأن استخدام **Was** يعتبر خاطئ ولكنه أقل رسمية أو غير رسمي **Informal** وشائع أكثر في الانكليزية اليومية، لذلك الخيارات مفتوحة أمامك، ولكن ننصح دائماً باختيار الخيار الأكثر صحةً تحسباً لأي مشاكل أو سلالم تصحيح شديدة.

- I **wish** I were rich. **Formal**

- I **wish** I was rich. **Informal**

كلمتين بيني وبينك ...

” خذ نفس، وخلي الأمور تمشي على مهلها.

أنت مو مجبور تخلص كل شي اليوم، ولا تثبت حالك كل دقيقة. في وقت لكل شيء، وكل شي عم تتأخر فيه هلاً، يمكن هو الشي اللي حتحمّد ربك عليه بعدين لأنه إجا بوقته المناسب. خليك هادي، وخلي خطواتك تكون واثقة ولو كانت بطيئة. المهم إنك عم تتحرك باتجاهك، مو باتجاه حدا ثاني.“



Choose the correct answer

1. I started smoking. I wish.....

- A. I started smoking. C. I hadn't started smoking.
B. I had started smoking. D. I didn't start smoking.

2. I have a strong desire that our head teacher limits absence in our school.

- A. I wish our head teacher can limit absence in our school.
B. I wish our head teacher will limit absence in our school.
C. I wish our head teacher could limit absence in our school.
D. I wish our head teacher wouldn't limit absence in our school.

3. I can't watch the match tonight. I wish I catch it

- A. can B. could C. couldn't D. didn't

4. I am very tired today. I wish I ... so tired.

- A. am B. would be C. was D. weren't.

5. "Our classroom doesn't have coloured walls. I wish our classroom coloured walls."

- A. had B. have had C. has D. had had.

6. The sun isn't shining right now. I wish the sun ... shining.

- A. is B. wasn't C. was D. had been.

7. I didn't go shopping last week. I wish I Shopping.

- A. go B. went C. had gone D. have gone

8. I don't know how to dance. I wish I How to dance.

- A. had known B. knew C. have known D. had been knowing

9. I can't go with you tomorrow but I wish I..... with you.

- A. went B. had gone C. go D. could go

10. Where do you wish you were right now?

- A. I wish I were at home. C. I wish I was at home.
B. I wish I am at home. D. both a and c

11. What do you wish you were doing?

- A. I wish I were walking on the beach. C. I wish I walk on the beach.
B. I wish I am walking on the beach D. I wish I have walked on the beach

12. Are you pleased with the weather today, or do you wish it were different?

- A. I wish it were warmer. C. I wish it was warmer.
B. If only it were warmer. D. all the answers are correct.

13. Look around this room. What do you wish were different?

- A. I wish we are having a smart board. C. I wish we had a smart board.
B. I wish we have a smart board. D. I wish we have had a smart board.

14. Didn't you save your friend's phone number?

- A. If only I had saved my friend's phone number.
B. If only I have saved my friend's phone number.
C. If only I haven't saved my friend's phone number.
D. If only I hadn't saved my friend's phone number.



15. I wish I..... rich.

- A. was B. were C. am D. both a and b

16. Michel didn't revise his lessons for the exam I wish he for the exam.

- A. revises B. revised C. had revised D. hadn't revised

17. James is a heavy smoker. I wish he

- A. will stop smoking B. would stop smoking C. would smoke much D. wouldn't stop smoking

18. What might you say to someone who never answers your emails?

- A. I wish you would answer my emails C. I wish you had answer my emails.
B. I wish you'd not answer my emails. D. I wish you'll answer my emails.

19. What might you say to someone who makes fun of people?

- A. I wish he would make fun of people. C. I wish he wouldn't respect people.
B. I wish he wouldn't make fun of people. D. I wish he won't make fun of people.

20. What might you say to someone who can't help you?

- A. I wish he can help me. C. I wish he could help me.
B. I wish he couldn't help me. D. I wish he has helped me.

21. What might you say to someone who didn't do the laundry for you?

- A. I wish he hadn't done the laundry for me. C. I wish he had done the laundry for me.
B. I wish he has done the laundry for me. D. I wish he does the laundry for me.

22. What might you say to someone who isn't telling you the truth?

- A. I wish he were telling me the truth. C. I wish he could tell me the truth.
B. I wish he told me the truth. D. All the answers are correct.

23. What might you say to someone who blows cigarette smoke in your face?

- A. I wish he would stop smoking. C. I wish he wouldn't stop smoking.
B. I wish he didn't stop smoking. D. I wish he will stop smoking.

24. I spent all my money. I wish now that I it.

- A. spent B. had spent C. had saved D. saved

25. I missed the flight. I really wish I it.

- A. hadn't caught B. had missed C. had caught D. missed

26. Rana left the meeting early. Rita wishes

- A. Rana had stayed in the meeting. C. Rana hadn't stayed in the meeting.
B. Rana had left the meeting. D. Rana stays in the meeting.

27. Lama refused to sign the contract. But her parents wish

- A. she hadn't accepted it. C. she had accepted it.
B. she had refused it. D. she has accepted it.

28. I looked everywhere for my key. I wish

- A. I had found it. C. I will find it
B. I hadn't found it. D. I had lost it.

29. The injured player could only watch the match. he wishes

- A. he has played the match. C. he hadn't played the match.
B. he plays the match. D. he had played the match

Answers:	Answers:
1 - C	16 - C
2 - C	17 - B
3 - B	18 - A
4 - D	19 - B
5 - A	20 - C
6 - C	21 - C
7 - C	22 - D
8 - B	23 - A
9 - D	24 - C
10 - D	25 - C
11 - A	26 - A
12 - D	27 - C
13 - C	28 - A
14 - A	29 - D
15 - D	



Workbook

Reading

The Inspiration of Civil Rights' Movements

Page 71

Gandhi was born in India in 1869. At that time, India was a part of the British **Empire** and at the age of 18, he travelled to London to study **law**. At the age of 24, Gandhi went to South Africa where he **witnessed** the **racial discrimination**.

The biggest **turning point** in young Gandhi's life was on June 7, 1893, when he was **thrown off** a train **station** by a white man when he **refused** to move to a **back seat**. That would prove to be Gandhi's first, but certainly not last, act of **civil disobedience**.

By 1906, Gandhi had organised his first civil disobedience **campaign** in South Africa. He would spend the next 9 years **fighting** for Indian rights in the country before **returning** home to fight for Indian **independence**. Over the years Gandhi would become a **leading figure** in the independence movement. After years of **struggle** and many **arrests**, Gandhi's "Quit India" movement in 1942 **paved** the way for Britain's **eventual withdrawal** from the country.

Today, Gandhi is remembered for his **commitment** to **nonviolence**, peaceful **protest** and simple living. He **inspired** millions of people to action, **preaching** a message of love, **tolerance** and avoiding **greed**.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّه اهتماماً للتلوين.

Translation

وُلد غاندي في الهند عام 1869. في ذلك الوقت، كانت الهند جزءاً من الإمبراطورية البريطانية، وفي سن الثامنة عشرة، سافر إلى لندن لدراسة **الحقوق**. في سن الرابعة والعشرين، ذهب غاندي إلى جنوب أفريقيا حيث **شهد التمييز العنصري**.

كانت أكبر **نقطة تحول** في حياة غاندي الشاب في 7 يونيو 1893، حينما **طرده** رجل أبيض من **محطة القطار** لأنه **رفض الانتقال إلى المقعد الخلفي**. كان ذلك أول عمل من أعمال **العصيان المدني** لغاندي، ولكنه بالتأكيد ليس الأخير. بحلول عام 1906، كان غاندي قد نظم أول **حملة** عصيان مدني له في جنوب إفريقيا. أمضى السنوات التسع التالية في **النضال** من أجل حقوق الهنود في البلاد، قبل أن **يعود** إلى وطنه ليكافح في سبيل **استقلال الهند**. وعلى مر السنين، أصبح غاندي **شخصية بارزة** في حركة الاستقلال. بعد سنوات من **النضال** والعديد من **الاعتقالات**، **مهّدت** حركة غاندي "اتركوا الهند" عام 1942 الطريق **لانسحاب** بريطانيا من البلاد في **نهاية المطاف**. واليوم، يُذكر غاندي **بالتزامه باللاعنف والاحتجاج** السلمي والعيش البسيط. وقد **ألهم** الملايين من الناس للعمل، حيث كان **يبشر** برسالة الحب والتسامح وتجنب الجشع.

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Gandhi studied law in.....

A. India

B. South Africa

C. London

D. Paris



2. He was thrown off the train station because....

- A. he didn't accept to move to a back seat.
- B. he refused to move to a front seat.
- C. he didn't refuse to move to a back seat.
- D. he accepted to move to a back seat.

3. Gandhi... millions of people to action, preaching a message of love, tolerance and avoiding greed.

- A. depressed
- B. motivated
- C. discouraged
- D. repressed

4. Gandhi's "Quit India" movement in 1942 the way for Britain's eventual withdrawal from the country.

- A. prevented
- B. obstructed
- C. stopped
- D. facilitated

5. Gandhi started his first civil disobedience campaign in India.

- A. True
- B. False

6. "Quit India" movement started in 1924.

- A. True
- B. False

7. Gandhi is remembered as a violent protester .

- A. True
- B. False

8. At the age of 24, Gandhi went to South Africa where he witnessed the racial discrimination .

- A. True
- B. False

9. The word "discrimination" means:

- A. the act of allowing people to say or do anything
- B. a statement or an action that you do not like or agree with something
- C. treating one person or group less fairly than others
- D. to show that something is true

10. The word "prove" means:

- A. to show that something is true.
- B. the act of allowing people to say or do anything.
- C. a statement or an action that you do not like or agree with something.
- D. treating one person or group less fairly than others.

11. The word "tolerance" means:

- A. the act of allowing people to say or do anything
- B. treating one person or group less fairly than others
- C. to show that something is true
- D. a statement or an action that you do not like or agree with something

12. The word "protest" means:

- A. treating one person or group less fairly than others
- B. to show that something is true
- C. the act of allowing people to say or do anything
- D. a statement or an action that you do not like or agree with something

Answers:

- 1 - C
- 2 - A
- 3 - B
- 4 - D
- 5 - B
- 6 - B
- 7 - B
- 8 - A
- 9 - C
- 10 - A
- 11 - A
- 12 - D

**Choose the correct answer**

1. Hani turned up late..... wasn't unusual.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. where

2. This is the repair man saw the machine and fixed it.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. where

3. That is the village.....my grandparents live in.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. where

4. All students..... the teacher asked gave correct answers.

- A. whom B. which C. whose D. where

5. February 7 is the day.....I met my best friend.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. when

6. This isn't the building.....the bus stopped.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. where

7. That is the doctor..... patients always talks highly about him.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. where

8. Bob travelled all over the world, he met a lot of famous people.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. where

9. We will spend our holiday in the same village, we have had a lot of joyful days.

- A. where B. which C. whose D. who

10. I don't know most of the people, you invited to the party.

- A. whom B. when C. whose D. where

11. The subject you wrote about last week interested everyone.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. where

12. I apologised to the woman.....coffee I spilled on her new dress.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. where

13. Whatbe doing this time tomorrow?

- A. were you B. have you C. will you D. are you

14.go if you like because I have to do some shopping.

- A. I'm B. I will C. I'd D. would have gone

15. I..... simply wait until she comes back.

- A. am B. have C. would D. will

16. he was quite definite about it and assured me he..... come.

- A. would B. shall C. will D. have

17. If they arrive late, they..... have to get their own meal.

- A. do B. had C. will D. would

18. I really hope I..... see you again.

- A. did B. would C. will D. have



- 19. What..... happen to the family if he loses all his money.**
A. does B. will C. did D. would
- 20. be buying the house or haven't you decided yet?**
A. have you B. Did you C. Were you D. Will you
- 21. I'm sure they..... get married and live happily ever afterwards.**
A. have B. shall C. will D. would
- 22. What to do when you leave school?**
A. are you intending B. do you intend C. will you intend D. could you intend
- 23. If only they..... you for help before they started.**
A. would ask B. will ask C. had asked D. asked
- 24. he wishes he back and see the Norias in Hama.**
A. could travel B. could have travelled C. could to travel D. will travel
- 25. If only the children..... their books on the floor. I am always falling over them.**
A. wouldn't leave B. left C. wouldn't have left D. leaves
- 26. It took us a long time to arrive. I wish we the train instead.**
A. catches B. would catch C. caught D. had caught
- 27. I am so tired. I wish home earlier.**
A. had gone B. go C. went D. would have gone
- 28. We are having such a lovely time in Homs. If only it..... all the time.**
A. hadn't rained B. had rained C. rained D. hasn't rained
- 29. I wish our neighbors arguing. They annoy us.**
A. stopped B. will stop C. had stopped D. would stop
- 30. It's a fantastic novel! I have almost finished it. I wish it..... longer.**
A. had been B. will be C. were/ was D. would be
- 31. If Hind..... book a seat on the train, she'll have to stand.**
A. didn't B. haven't C. will D. doesn't
- 32. If you how much the laptop was, you wouldn't have asked about the price.**
A. know B. had known C. knew D. would knew
- 33. If you..... too many things in your drawer, it will break.**
A. puts B. will put C. had put D. put
- 34. If I had enough time, I..... visit your aunt in the next town.**
A. can B. would have C. could to D. could
- 35. If you had studied earlier for the test, you**
A. will pass B. would pass C. pass D. would have passed
- 36. If you..... some help give a ring.**
A. need B. needed C. had needed D. would need
- 37. If you..... the product advertised, you could have bought it.**
A. saw B. see C. have seen D. had seen



38. Joe has inherited a lot of money. He a new villa next month.

- A. will buy B. bought C. have bought D. buys

39. It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I..... it

- A. said B. say C. had said D. hadn't said.

40. I should have listened to you. I wish I..... your advice.

- A. took B. hadn't taken C. takes D. had taken

41. At 8:30 this evening I..... my friend Tom at Yooooj Café.

- A. am going to meet B. meet C. have met D. was meeting

42. By the end of this year Imore than 1000 km. with my car.

- A. had been driven B. will have driven C. will be driving D. drive

43. Our flat is rather small. I wish it..... a bit bigger.

- A. was/ were B. is C. has been D. had been

44. The young boy wouldn't have been sad if his mother..... him to the fun city.

- A. takes B. took C. will take D. had taken

45. If it were too cold to snow, we go skiing.

- A. can B. will C. could D. shall

46. If my little brother hadn't lost his money, he..... happy.

- A. will be B. would be C. would have been D. wouldn't have been

47. If I a computer, I could surf the net.

- A. had B. has C. have D. had had

48. If I were rich enough, I..... the poor.

- A. will help B. can help C. would have helped D. would help

49. Which word has the silent letter /h/:

- A. heart B. hour C. seahorse D. downhill

50. Which word has the silent letter /w/:

- A. wait B. software C. reward D. write

51. Which word has the silent letter /k/:

- A. knee B. key C. talk D. racket

52. Which word has the silent letter /n/:

- A. dinner B. neck C. column D. mankind

53. Which word has the silent letter /p/:

- A. psychology B. sheep C. open D. apologise

54. The police officer told the suspect to stop..... and to tell him exactly where he was the night before.

- A. assembling the case C. jumping out of his skin
B. beating around the bush D. following his heart

55. Having..... the law, that 32- year- old man was sentenced for two months.

- A. broken B. beaten C. assembled D. fenced



56. Being late for the final exam, Kamel was very angry and his temper.

- A. lost B. raised C. made D. gave

57. One of the most important incomes for local councils is..... taxes.

- A. raising B. making C. running D. meeting

58. My car is broken; could you me a lift to the nearest bus stop?

- A. give B. meet C. run D. lose

59. To jump out of your skin means that you are

- A. relaxed B. shocked C. happy D. excited

60. When doing something.... this means that it is a pain in the neck.

- A. easy B. simple C. not complex D. annoying

61. It was very difficult to tell you whether you travel or not. Think carefully and then.....

- A. assemble the case C. jump out of your skin
B. beat around the bush D. follow your heart

62. Asking people to leave their mobile phones at home when they leave is something

- A. logical B. dislogical C. illogical D. imlogical

63. Uncooked meat is a/an type of food for so many people in my society.

- A. familiar B. unfamiliar C. infamiliar D. disfamiliar

64. You're at a restaurant. You order pizza but it is salty. (Express complaint to the waiter)

- A. I am sorry to bother you but the pizza is too salty.
B. Oh, you're exaggerating.
C. This isn't an excuse.
D. I'd never hurt your feelings.

65. Someone tells you that you are a great violinist and you can play all kinds of music.

- A. I am sorry about what happened. (Express modesty)
B. Oh, you're exaggerating.
C. This isn't an excuse.
D. I'd never hurt your feelings

66. You want to talk to the company manager. The operator answers your call.

- A. I am sorry about what happened. (Ask the operator to put you through to the manager)
B. Can I talk to the manager please?
C. This isn't an excuse.
D. Congratulations.

67. You have a birthday party tomorrow and there are a lot of things to do. (Ask for help)

- A. Would you help me prepare what to do about the birthday party tomorrow?
B. Can I talk to the manager please?
C. This isn't an excuse.
D. Congratulations.



A. Check whether the sentence is correct or not (True for correct, False for incorrect)

1. That is the village whose my grandparents live in.
2. We will spend our holiday in the same village, where we have had a lot of joyful days.
3. I apologised to the woman who coffee spilled on her new dress
4. I would simply wait until she comes back.
5. What do you intend to do when you leave school?
6. Bob travelled all over the world whose he met a lot of famous people.

B. Rearrange the following parts of a paragraph to form an organised one

- a) and at the age of 18, he travelled to London to study law,
- b) Gandhi was born in India in 1869.
- c) At the age of 24, Gandhi went to South Africa where he witnessed the racial discrimination.
- d) At that time, India was a part of the British Empire

Answers:

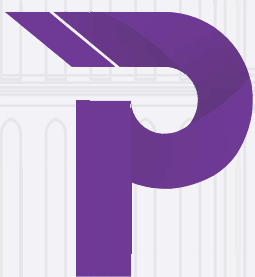
1 - B	18 - C	35 - D	52 - C	A
2 - A	19 - B	36 - A	53 - A	1 - False
3 - B	20 - D	37 - D	54 - B	2 - True
4 - A	21 - C	38 - A	55 - A	3 - False
5 - D	22 - B	39 - D	56 - A	4 - False
6 - D	23 - C	40 - D	57 - A	5 - True
7 - C	24 - A	41 - A	58 - A	6 - False
8 - D	25 - A	42 - B	59 - B	
9 - A	26 - D	43 - A	60 - D	B
10 - A	27 - C	44 - D	61 - D	b - d - a - c
11 - B	28 - A	45 - C	62 - C	
12 - C	29 - D	46 - C	63 - B	
13 - C	30 - C	47 - A	64 - A	
14 - B	31 - D	48 - D	65 - B	
15 - D	32 - B	49 - B	66 - B	
16 - A	33 - D	50 - D	67 - A	
17 - C	34 - D	51 - A		



Unit number

Citizenchip

Module 5 : Culture



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



Citizenship

Citizenship is not only the **state** of being **vested** with the rights and **duties** of a citizen, but it can also be **defined** as the **character** of an individual who is **viewed** as a **member** of a particular society. The **concept** of citizenship first **arose** in towns and city-states of ancient **Greece**, **disappeared** in Europe during the Middle Ages and **crystallised** in the 18th century. The concept of citizenship has never been **fixed** or **static**, but **constantly** changes **within** each society.

While citizenship has varied **considerably** throughout history, and within societies over time, there are some **common related elements**. Citizenship **refers** to many **aspects** of society such as family, **military service**, individual's **freedom**, ideas of right and wrong, **paying taxes** and **patterns** for how a person should behave in society.

Although Syrian citizenship **provides** many rights, it also **involves** many **responsibilities**. The Syrian government protects the rights of each individual **regardless** of their background or culture. **In spite of** the fact that all Syrian citizens enjoy freedom, protection and legal rights, they also have responsibilities that are **voluntary** as well as **obligatory**. Every Syrian citizen must **obey** state laws, and pay the **penalties** when a law is broken. All citizens must pay taxes in one form or another. It is the responsibility of citizens to pass along the importance of good citizenship to future **generations** by teaching their children how to obey the law. The **nationality** law does not give Syrians the right to **unilaterally abandon** their Syrian nationality.

Syrians have the right to **pride** themselves on being good citizens in a nation of ancient civilisations that helped to build and **enrich** human culture. They have had a vital role in developing human civilisation. From the earliest years, laws **representing** various **points of view** have been passed and **guidelines** have been developed through generations to **instruct** citizens on Syrian history, **values**, rights, and responsibilities.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّه اهتماماً للتولين.

Translation

المواطنة ليست فقط حالة التمتع بحقوق وواجبات المواطن، بل يمكن تعريفها أيضًا على أنها شخصية الفرد الذي يُعتبر عضوًا في مجتمع معين. نشأ مفهوم المواطنة لأول مرة في دول المدن (مدن ذات حكم كبير) الإغريقية القديمة، واختفى في أوروبا خلال العصور الوسطى ثم تبلور في القرن الثامن عشر، لم يكن مفهوم المواطنة ثابتًا أو مستقرًا أبدًا، بل كان يتغير باستمرار داخل كل مجتمع.

بينما اختلفت المواطنة بشكل كبير عبر التاريخ، وداخل المجتمعات على مر الزمن، إلا أن هناك بعض العناصر المشتركة ذات الصلة. تشير المواطنة إلى جوانب عديدة في المجتمع مثل: الأسرة، والخدمة العسكرية، وحرية الفرد، وأفكار الصواب والخطأ، ودفع الضرائب، ونماذج يحتذى بها في المجتمع.

ومع أن الجنسية السورية توفر الكثير من الحقوق، إلا أنها تنطوي أيضًا على العديد من المسؤوليات، فالحكومة السورية تحمي حقوق كل فرد بصرف النظر عن خلفيته أو ثقافته. وعلى الرغم من أن جميع المواطنين السوريين يتمتعون بالحرية والحماية والحقوق القانونية، إلا أن عليهم أيضًا مسؤوليات **تطوعية وإجبارية**.



يجب على كل مواطن سوري **الامتثال** لقوانين الدولة، ودفع **الغرامات** عند خرق القانون. كما يجب على جميع المواطنين دفع الضرائب بشكل أو بآخر، وتقع على عاتقهم مسؤولية تمرير أهمية المواطنة الصالحة للأجيال القادمة من خلال تعليم أبنائهم كيفية إطاعة القانون، لا يمنح قانون الجنسية السوريين الحق في **التخلي** عن جنسيتهم السورية **من جانب واحد**.

يحق للسوريين أن **يفتخروا** بكونهم مواطنين صالحين في أمة ذات حضارات عريقة ساهمت في بناء وإثراء الثقافة الإنسانية، حيث كان لهم دور حيوي في تطوير الحضارة الإنسانية. فمنذ السنوات الأولى، صدرت قوانين **تمثل وجهات نظر** مختلفة ووضعت مبادئ **توجيهية** عبر الأجيال **لتعليم** المواطنين السوريين التاريخ والقيم والحقوق والمسؤوليات السورية.

مفردات النص الأساسية

citizenship	المواطنة	the legal right of belonging to a particular country
vested	التمتع	given the official right to do or own something
concept	مفهوم	an idea that is connected with something
voluntary	تطوعي	done willingly, not because you are forced
abandon	التخلي	leave something forever
unilaterally	من جانب واحد	done by only one member without the agreement of others

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. The concept of citizenship first appeared in

- A. Syria
- B. Britain
- C. Ancient Greece
- D. all Europe

2. Citizenship refers to many aspects of society such as

- A. family and military service.
- B. individual's freedom and ideas of right and wrong.
- C. paying taxes and patterns for how a person should behave in society.
- D. all the above answers are correct.

3. Which sentence of the following isn't true?

- A. Every Syrian citizen must obey state laws.
- B. Every Syrian citizen must be paid the penalties when he breaks the law.
- C. Every Syrian citizen must pay taxes in one form or another.
- D. Every Syrian citizen must pass along the importance of good citizenship to future generations

4. People pay penalties when they state laws.

- A. obey
- B. act upon
- C. follow
- D. break



5. It is necessary to pass the concept of citizenship to the coming generation to citizens on Syrian history, values, rights, and responsibilities.

- A. mislead
- B. misinform
- C. educate
- D. all answers are true

6. Citizenship means the acquisition of a citizen to his rights and duties.

- A. True
- B. False

7. The concept of citizenship is the same in all societies.

- A. True
- B. False

8. In Syria, the rights of each individual are preserved due to background or culture.

- A. True
- B. False

9. Obeying state laws and paying taxes are two kinds of responsibilities of citizenship.

- A. True
- B. False

10. The nationality law does not give Syrians the right to individually desert their Syrian nationality.

- A. True
- B. False

11. Syria has enjoyed involvement and interaction with many different civilizations.

- A. True
- B. False

12. Throughout history, Syrians have played a minor role in building human civilization.

- A. True
- B. False

13. It is optional for citizens to obey the laws of their society.

- A. True
- B. False

14. The word "citizenship" means:

- A. done willingly, not because you are forced
- B. leave something forever
- C. done by only one member without the agreement of others
- D. the legal right of belonging to a particular country

15. The word "vested" means:

- A. done by only one member without the agreement of others
- B. the legal right of belonging to a particular country
- C. given the official right to do or own something
- D. an idea that is connected with something



16. The word "concept" means:

- A. given the official right to do or own something
- B. an idea that is connected with something
- C. done willingly, not because you are forced
- D. leave something forever

17. The word "voluntary" means:

- A. done willingly, not because you are forced
- B. the legal right of belonging to a particular country
- C. given the official right to do or own something
- D. an idea that is connected with something

18. The word "abandon" means:

- A. done willingly, not because you are forced
- B. leave something forever
- C. done by only one member without the agreement of others
- D. the legal right of belonging to a particular country

19. The word "unilaterally" means:

- A. done willingly, not because you are forced
- B. leave something forever
- C. done by only one member without the agreement of others
- D. the legal right of belonging to a particular country

Answers:

- 1 - C
- 2 - D
- 3 - B
- 4 - D
- 5 - C
- 6 - A
- 7 - B
- 8 - B
- 9 - A
- 10 - A
- 11 - A
- 12 - B
- 13 - B
- 14 - D
- 15 - C
- 16 - B
- 17 - A
- 18 - B
- 19 - C



Vocabulary

Adjectives Followed by Prepositions

1. Some adjectives can be followed by a **preposition + noun**:

of	afraid of	خائف من	I'm afraid of spiders.
	proud of	فخور بـ	The parents were proud of their child's achievement.
with	angry with	غاضب من	He is angry with his brother.
	busy with	مشغول بـ	Tom was busy with his work.
	careless with	لا مبالي بـ	He is careless with his money.
at	brilliant/good at	جيد/رائع بـ	Mike is good at math.
on	keen on	مؤلّع بـ	He's very keen on chess.
for	grateful for	ممتن لـ	They were grateful for our help.
about	sure about	متأكد من	Are you sure about the information?
by	surprised by	متفاجئ من	I was surprised by her exam results.
to	cruel to	قاس مع	Suzy's dog was cruel to her.

إضافة: الصفة pleased (بمعنى راضي) تتبع بأحد حرفي الجر about/with واسم:
pleased about/with

2. Some adjectives can be followed by a **preposition + -ing form**:

of	sick of	يسأم من	She was sick of cleaning dishes.
to	used to	معتاد على	My brother is used to working at night.



Vocabulary

Words Family

عضو	member	↔	membership	عضوية
حقيقة	act	↔	active	حقيقي/فعال
يتصرف	behave	↔	behavior	تصرف/سلوك
ينتخب	elect	↔	election	انتخاب
كرّس	devote	↔	devotion	تكريس/إخلاص
يوظّف	employ	↔	employment	توظيف

يمكنك مراجعة درس الاشتقاقات على اليوتيوب لتوضيح وفهم الفكرة



Words Related to Citizenship

community	مجتمع	positive involvement	مشاركة إيجابية
patriotism	وطنية	moral norms	مبادئ أخلاقية
rights	حقوق	elections	انتخابات

Everyday English

Accepting and Declining Offers

Offering help	Accepting offers	Declining offers
• Can I ...? • Shall I...? • Would you like ...? • Do you want me to...? • I'd be glad to help...	• Yes, please. I'd love to. • If you wouldn't mind. • Thank you. That would be great. • if I may.	• It's OK. I can do it myself. • Don't worry. I'll do it. • No, thank you. • Not just at the moment, thank you.



Pronunciation

Homographs

القاعدة: كلمات لها التهجئة ذاتها ولكن لها معنى، وأصلاً، ولفظاً مختلفاً.

bow	قوس	a weapon used for shooting arrows
	ينحني احتراماً	the polite gesture of bending at the waist
close	يغلق	to shut
	قريب	being nearby
lead	قيادة	starting in front
	فولاذ	a type of metal
wind	ملتوي	to move or have a curving course
	رياح	the moving of air
object	شيء	an item
	رفض	to disagree
present	يقدم	to offer or give
	هدية	a gift
tears	يمزق	to damage
	دموع	drops of liquid come out of eyes
wound	جرح	an injury in the skin
	يلفّ/يضمّد	twisted or wrapped around
live	يعيش	to survive
	حيّ	not dead



في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا:

**Choose the correct answer**

- 1. Citizenship is in a political community.**
A. member B. membership C. members D. memorize
- 2. Some citizens take an role in the community.**
A. action B. actively C. act D. active
- 3. Civic is what citizens are expected to demonstrate in their daily lives.**
A. behavior B. behave C. behaved D. behaves
- 4. She was too young to vote in the national**
A. employ B. elector C. election D. elect
- 5. Patriotism is love of and to one's country.**
A. devote B. devotion C. devotee D. devoted
- 6. In economics, voluntaryis unpaid.**
A. employer B. employees C. employ D. employment
- 7. Good citizens would participate in by choosing the candidate they feel the best.**
A. elect B. elective C. elections D. elector
- 8. Citizens have but they must also be aware of their responsibilities towards their community.**
A. rites B. rights C. write D. writes
- 9. Good citizens must work for the of the community they live in.**
A. prosper B. prospective C. prosperous D. prosperity
- 10. They should also respect the norms of the society.**
A. morality B. moral C. morally D. moralize
- 11. Civic engagement is the positive in the affairs of the community.**
A. involvement B. involves C. involve D. involved
- 12. is when someone has the passion to serve their country.**
A. patriotic B. patriotically C. patriot D. patriotism
- 13. I'm afraid spiders.**
A. against B. in C. of D. about
- 14. Laila is angry her little brother.**
A. against B. in C. of D. with
- 15. Mike is brilliant math.**
A. at B. in C. of D. about
- 16. John is good math.**
A. against B. in C. at D. about
- 17. He's very keen chess**
A. against B. on C. of D. about
- 18. Tom was busy his work.**
A. against B. in C. of D. with



19. My grandfather is careless his money.

- A. with B. in C. of D. about

20. The people were grateful our help.

- A. against B. in C. for D. about

21. The parents were proud their child's achievement.

- A. against B. in C. of D. about

22. Are you sure the information he has just given you?

- A. against B. in C. at D. about

23. I was surprised her exam results.

- A. against B. by C. of D. in

24. Suzy's dog was cruel her.

- A. to B. in C. of D. about

25. She was sick cleaning dishes.

- A. against B. in C. of D. about

26. My brother is used working at night.

- A. against B. in C. of D. to

27. Why are you angry Jack?

- A. against B. with C. of D. about

28. Jack is very careless his money.

- A. against B. in C. with D. on

29. A: Is their son good school work?

- A. at B. in C. of D. about

30. Ahmad is brilliant everything.

- A. against B. in C. at D. about

31. Are you pleased Anna's exam result?

- A. against B. at C. of D. about

32. We are very proud our daughter.

- A. of B. in C. against D. about

33. Why is Mr. Jack's dog afraid him?

- A. against B. in C. of D. about

34. Because he is often cruel it.

- A. against B. to C. of D. about

35. After shooting the bull with his bow, the Spanish archer made a grand bow to the audience.

The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. the polite gesture of bending at the waist C. to shut
B. a weapon used for shooting arrows D. being nearby



36. After shooting the bull with his bow, the Spanish archer made a grand bow to the audience. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. the polite gesture of bending at the waist
- B. a weapon used for shooting arrow
- C. to disagree
- D. an item

37. As she went to the store close to her house, the woman was careful to close and lock the front door. The underlined word in this sentence means

- A. the polite gesture of bending at the waist
- B. a weapon used for shooting arrows
- C. to shut
- D. being nearby

38. As she went to the store close to her house, the Woman was careful to close and lock the front door. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. the polite gesture of bending at the waist
- B. a weapon used for shooting arrows
- C. to shut
- D. being nearby

39. The city took the lead in getting lead out of the municipal waste. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. a type of metal
- B. starting in front
- C. to shut
- D. being nearby

40. The city took the lead in getting lead out of the municipal waste. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. a type of metal
- B. starting in front
- C. to shut
- D. being nearby

41. The wind blew softly as we watched the river wind its way through the valley. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. A type of metal
- B. Starting in front
- C. The moving of air
- D. To move or have a curving course

42. The wind blew softly as we watched the river wind its way through the valley. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. A type of metal
- B. Starting in front
- C. The moving of air
- D. To move or have a curving course

43. I object to being given this object. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. an item
- B. to disagree
- C. the moving of air
- D. to move or have a curving course

44. I object to being given this object. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. an item
- B. to disagree
- C. the moving of air
- D. to move or have a curving course

45. I object to that object in class because a cell phone is distracting. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. an item
- B. disagree
- C. nearby
- D. to shut

46. I object to that object in class because a cell phone is distracting. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. an item
- B. disagree
- C. nearby
- D. to shut



47. It is the perfect time to present the present to your mother. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. an item
- B. disagree
- C. a gift
- D. to offer or give

48. It is the perfect time to present the present to your mother. The underlined word in this sentence means

- A. an item
- B. disagree
- C. a gift
- D. to offer or give

49. She has tears in her eyes whenever she tears old photos. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. to damage
- B. a gift
- C. to give
- D. drops of liquid come out of eyes

50. She has tears in her eyes whenever she tears old photos. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. to damage
- B. a gift
- C. to give
- D. drops of liquid come out of eyes

51. The bandage was wound around the wound. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. a gift
- B. an injury in the skin
- C. to offer
- D. twisted or wrapped around

52. The bandage was wound around the wound. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. a gift
- B. an injury in the skin
- C. to offer
- D. twisted or wrapped around

53. how long will the live fish live without food? The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. to survive
- B. not dead
- C. a gift
- D. to shut

54. how long will the live fish live without food? The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. to survive
- B. not dead
- C. a gift
- D. to shut

55. The shoes were too close to the door for it to close completely. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. to survive
- B. not dead
- C. near
- D. to shut

56. The shoes were too close to the door for it to close completely. The underlined word in this sentence means:

- A. to survive
- B. not dead
- C. a gift
- D. to shut

57. The person opposite you in the train has been trying to read your newspaper. What do you say? (Choose the appropriate response)

- A. Yes, of course. Do you want me to write the reply too?
- B. Sure. I don't think it will start on time anyway.
- C. Would you like to read the newspaper?
- D. Can you make it the week after? I need to write the report first.



58. The person on your right is looking hungrily at the vegetable dish on your left. What do you say? (Choose the appropriate response)

- A. Yes, of course. Do you want me to write the reply too?
- B. Shall I pass on the vegetable dish to you?
- C. Sorry, I'm afraid I can't at the moment, as the machine is broken.
- D. Can you make it the week after? I need to write the report first.

59. Your bag is full of crisps, chocolate and fruit. Offer them to others.

- A. Yes, of course. Do you want me to write the reply too? (Choose the appropriate response)
- B. Sure. I don't think it will start on time anyway.
- C. Sorry, I'm afraid I can't at the moment, as the machine is broken.
- D. Would you like to try some crisps?

60. We need to see Mr. Jackson and his team. Shall I arrange for an early meeting next week?

- A. Yes, of course. Do you want me to write the reply too? (Choose the appropriate response)
- B. Would you like to try some crisps?
- C. Sorry, I'm afraid I can't at the moment, as the machine is broken.
- D. Can you make it the week after? I need to write the report first.

61. I'm going to be late for the meeting, can you tell Rose for me?

- A. Shall I pass on the vegetable dish to you? (Choose the appropriate response)
- B. Sure. I don't think it will start on time anyway.
- C. Sorry, I'm afraid I can't at the moment, as the machine is broken.
- D. Can you make it the week after? I need to write the report first.

62. I have a lot of things to do today, so could you do some photocopying for me?

- A. Yes, of course. Do you want me to write a reply too? (Choose the appropriate response)
- B. Sure. I don't think it will start on time
- C. Sorry, I'm afraid I can't at the moment, as the machine is broken.
- D. Can you make it the week after? I need to write the report first.

63. I've just got a fax from Mr. Ramos in Paris. Could you read it and translate it for me, please?

- A. Yes, of course. Do you want me to write the reply too? (Choose the appropriate response)
- B. Sure. I don't think it will start on time anyway.
- C. Sorry, I'm afraid I can't at the moment, as the machine is broken.
- D. Would you like to try some crisps?

64. I'm away next week. If I get any important e- mails, can you forward them to me?

- A. Would you like to read the newspaper? (Choose the appropriate response)
- B. Sure. I don't think it will start on time anyway.
- C. Sorry, I'm afraid I can't at the moment, as the machine is broken.
- D. No problem. Shall I do the same with the faxes?

**A. Check whether the sentence is correct or not (True for correct, False for incorrect)**

1. Are you sure with the information he has just given you?
2. The parents were proud of their child's achievement.
3. Some citizens take an active role in the community.
4. That book is neither interested nor accurate.
5. Both the teacher or the student are here.
6. Neither the teacher nor the student is here.
7. Not only my brother but also my sister has a doctorate in science.
8. Either the students or the teacher have planned to come.
9. Either the teacher or the students is planned to come.
10. Neither my brother nor my sisters are teachers.
11. Not only my mother but also my sister likes chocolate.
12. Civic engagement is the positive involved in the affairs of the community.

B. Rearrange the following parts of a paragraph to form an organized one

- a) They have had a vital role in developing human civilization
- b) Syrians have the right to pride themselves
- c) that helped to build and enrich human culture.
- d) on being good citizens in a nation of ancient civilizations.

Answers:

A	1 - B	23 - B	45 - B
1 - False	2 - D	24 - A	46 - A
2 - True	3 - A	25 - C	47 - C
3 - True	4 - C	26 - D	48 - D
4 - False	5 - B	27 - B	49 - D
5 - False	6 - D	28 - C	50 - A
6 - True	7 - C	29 - A	51 - D
7 - True	8 - B	30 - C	52 - B
8 - False	9 - D	31 - D	53 - B
9 - False	10 - B	32 - A	54 - A
10 - True	11 - A	33 - C	55 - C
11 - True	12 - D	34 - B	56 - D
12 - False	13 - C	35 - B	57 - C
	14 - D	36 - A	58 - B
B	15 - A	37 - D	59 - D
b - d - a - c	16 - C	38 - C	60 - D
	17 - B	39 - B	61 - B
	18 - D	40 - A	62 - C
	19 - A	41 - C	63 - A
	20 - C	42 - D	64 - D
	21 - C	43 - B	
	22 - D	44 - A	



Grammar

Paired Conjunctions



رابط شرح الدرس

Uses & Forms

1 – Both ... and ...

Both + S₁ + and + S₂

تستخدم للجمع بين شيئين أو إثبات صفة مشتركة بينهما، ودائماً بعدها جمع حتى لو كان الاسمان بحالة المفرد.

- Both the students **and** the teachers are here.
- Both the student **and** the teachers are here.
- Both the students **and** the teacher are here.
- Both the student **and** the teacher are here.

2 – Neither ... nor ...

Neither + S₁ + nor + S₂

لنفي شيئين أو نفي صفة مشتركة عنهما، و يأتي الفعل أو الضمير بعدها متناسب مع الاسم الأقرب للفعل في حالة الإفراد أو الجمع.

- Neither the managers **nor** the employees are coming to the meeting.
- Neither the manager **nor** the employees are coming to the meeting.
- Neither the managers **nor** the employee is coming to the meeting.
- Neither the manager **nor** the employee is coming to the meeting.

3 – Either ... or ...

Either + S₁ + or + S₂

للتخيير بين شيئين أو إثبات صفة على أحدهما دون الآخر، و يأتي الفعل أو الضمير بعدها متناسب مع الاسم الأقرب للفعل في حالة الإفراد أو الجمع.

- Either I **or** my friend is giving the speech.
- Either I **or** my friends are giving the speech.
- Either my friends **or** I am giving the speech.

4 – Not only ... but also ...

Not only + S₁ + but also + S₂

تستخدم للجمع بين شيئين أو التأكيد على صفة مشتركة بينهما، ويفيد للتعبير عن الدهشة و التمازج، و يأتي الفعل أو الضمير بعدها متناسب مع الاسم الأقرب للفعل في حالة الإفراد أو الجمع.

- Not only my father **but also** my mother **was** attending the conference.
- Not only my siblings **but also** my parents **were** attending the conference.
- Not only my brother **but also** my parents **were** attending the conference.
- Not only my parents **but also** my brother **was** attending the conference.

Note

يمكن أن تأتي جميع التراكيب السابقة كروابط بين الجمل:

- This project requires **both** money **and** time.
- We saw **not only** tigers **but also** elephants in the zoo.

نكشات

1 انتبه على الخدع البهلوانية في السؤال:

- Either ... or ... ✓
- Either ... nor ... ✗
- Neither ... nor ... ✓
- Neither ... or ... ✗
- Niether ... nor ... ✗

2 لا يأتي النفي بعد الـ **Neither** لأنها تفيد معنى النفي بالأساس.



حالة الفعل مع كل رابطة من الروابط:	
Both ... and ...	دائماً في حالة الجمع أياً كانت حالة الاسم
Either ... or ...	يكون في حالة الجمع أو المفرد حسب حالة أقرب اسم له
Neither ... nor ...	يكون في حالة الجمع أو المفرد حسب حالة أقرب اسم له
Not only ... but also ...	يكون في حالة الجمع أو المفرد حسب حالة أقرب اسم له
ملاحظة: قد يكون الفعل من أفعال الكون am – is – are – was – were ولا يُشترط أن يكون فعل صريح Play - move	

✍ كلمتين بيني وبينك ...

” الشغف والتحفيز أم الاستمرارية والالتزام؟

كثير منسّم من طلاب البكالوريا - أو كل الفئات بشكل عام - كلمة فاقد الشغف، أو مالي حيل ادرس، وهالكلمة فعلياً معبرة و أنا شخصياً باستخدامها، لأن الواحد بيمر بلحظات بكون ماله نفس يعمل الشغل اللي عليه، مع انه هو مو تعبان جسدياً بالعكس ممكن يكون هلاً لسا فايق من النوم، بس حقيقة في نوع ثاني من الارهاق وهو الارهاق الذهني، وهو - برأيي - أصعب من الارهاق الجسدي لأنه كيفية التعافي منه مو كثير واضحة بالنسبة لك، بتحس حالك محتار وتعبان و الحياة لونها أصفر من كتر الملل والتعب.

طبعاً الحالة السابقة طبيعية في حالة طالب البكالوريا أو الشخص اللي عم يقوم بمهام تتطلب جهد كل يوم لمدة طويلة، يعني باختصار طبيعي تحس هيك ما انت صرّك حوالي السنة عم تدرس يومياً عدة ساعات متواصلة، هي غير القلق و التخطيط و التخطيط بنظام النوم والذي منه، يعني حقك تكون مرهق ذهنياً، بس بالمقابل هالشي ممكن يَأْثُر على انجازك مع الوقت، فمن الطبيعي انك رح تلجأ لطرق معينة لاستعادة التركيز أو هالقدرة عالعمل.

وهون بييجي دور التحفيز، كثير ناس بتحاول تدور على محفزات لحتي تساعدوا تكمل بالشغل اللي عم تشتغله (هدف مستقبلي - عبارات رنانة - أشياء أخرى) و هالشي مو غلط فعلياً، بس فيه عدة مساوئ، ألا وهي: مو كل الناس بتتحفز بنفس الطريقة، فمممكن ما تلاقي الشي اللي يحفزك 100٪ و هيّك مارح تستفيد شي، الشي الثاني انك ممكن مع الوقت وكثرة التحفيز بنفس المحفز رح يفقد قيمته، ومارح يعطي نفس التأثير و الموقع عليك ووقتها رح نرجع لنقطة البداية، والشي الأهم انو هالعبارات التحفيزية الرنانة رح تعطيك طاقة رهيبية أول ما تسمعها وتحس حالك رح تحرق الدنيا ولكن مع مرور شوية وقت رح ترجع مثل قبل وتقعّد تستنى المحفز اللي بعده وهكذا، يعني بالمختصر رح تدرس يومين وتفقد الشغف 3 ايام و هيّك. لذلك، أنت مالازم تعتمد عالتحفيز بشكل كامل خلال دراستك أو شغلك، لأنو هالمحفز مثل ما حكينا بيعطي دفعات متباعدة من الإنجاز، طيب شو العمل؟

العمل بكل بساطة انو تشتغل / تدرس وانت مالل عادي، لا تخاف من هالفكرة، واذا فقدت التركيز قلل الكمية، يعني كما يُقال "القليل المستمر خير من الكثير المنقطع" قد ما كانت الكمية قليلة المهم خلي الشي اللي عم تعمله ما ينقطع مشان يضل مألوف، لأنك اذا وقفت أو تركت رح يصير عليك أصعب انو ترجع، وكل ما طالت مدة التوقف رح تزيد صعوبة الرجعة أكثر، لذلك خلي العمل مستمر بدون توقف ولو قللت الكمية، باختصار خليك ملتزم بنسق معين ولو ماكنت متحفز أو طايق الشي اللي عم تعمله، خليك مسؤول يعني.

**Choose the correct answer**

1. Both my mother my sister are here.

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

2. Not only my mother my sister is here.

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

3. my sister but also my parents are here

- A. Both B. Not only C. Either D. Neither

4. Neither my mother my sister is here.

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

5. my sister nor my parents are here.

- A. Both B. Not only C. Either D. Neither

6. The research project will take time and money.

- A. both B. not only C. either D. neither

7. Sue saw not only a fox in the woods a bear

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

8. I'll take either or physics next quarter.

- A. chemical B. chemically C. chemistry D. chemist

9. That book is neither interesting nor

- A. accurate B. accurately C. accuracy D. both A and B

10. Fred and Linda like helping their friends.

- A. Both B. Not only C. Either D. Neither

11. Harry or Helen used help Ann

- A. Both B. Not only C. Either D. Neither

12. We should learn to accept our strengths but also our weaknesses.

- A. both B. not only C. either D. neither

13. He listens to nor advises his friends when they have a problem.

- A. both B. not only C. either D. neither

14. I've betrayed not only your trust your love for me.

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

15. he felt disappointed and misunderstood.

- A. both B. not only C. either D. neither

16. Brian nor Tom is very considerate.

- A. Both B. Not only C. Either D. Neither

17. A true friend is someone who is both caring loving.

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

18. Rachel should apologise or leave

- A. both B. not only C. either D. neither

Answers:

1 - A

2 - B

3 - B

4 - D

5 - D

6 - A

7 - B

8 - C

9 - A

10 - A

11 - C

12 - B

13 - D

14 - B

15 - A

16 - D

17 - A

18 - C



19. Neither Richard John kept her secret.

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

20. Both the teacher and the student here.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

21. Neither the teacher nor the student here.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

22. Not only the teacher but also the student here.

- A. have B. are C. is D. has

23. Not only my brother but also my sister a doctorate in science.

- A. has B. are C. have D. is

24. Either the students or the teacher planning to come.

- A. has B. are C. have D. is

25. Either the teacher or the students planned to come.

- A. has B. are C. have D. is

26. Either my brother or my sister going to tutor me in science.

- A. has B. are C. have D. is

27. Neither my brother nor my sisters teachers.

- A. has B. are C. was D. are

28. Not only my mother but also my sister chocolate.

- A. like B. likes C. is liking D. are liking

29. my brother sister live here.

- A. Both / and B. Not only / but also C. Either / or D. Neither / or

30. Neither you nor I to visit the Cathedral when we were in London.

- A. are needing B. have needed C. needed D. were needing

31. a hammer or a piece of stone might help us with this kind of work.

- A. Both B. Not only C. Either D. Neither

32. You shouldn't have called neither the police the neighbors.

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

33. She broke the silence but also said something very useful.

- A. both B. not only C. either D. neither

34. Neither Peter nor his wife the idea of going to the talk.

- A. liked B. like C. is liking D. are liking

35. You can take either Sally any other person with you. I really don't care that much.

- A. and B. but also C. or D. nor

Answers:

19 – D

20 – B

21 – A

22 – C

23 – A

24 – D

25 – C

26 – D

27 – D

28 – B

29 – A

30 – C

31 – C

32 – D

33 – B

34 – A

35 – C



Unit number

Culture Shock

Module 5 : Culture



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



Culture Shock

Culture shock is an experience people may have when they move to a **foreign** country with a new cultural environment, which is different from their own. These unfamiliar surroundings can **lead to** a feeling of being a little bit lost. For example, when a student starts studying abroad, he/she **experiences** different things in custom, dress and food.

There are many symptoms of transition shock including: anger, **boredom**, extreme **homesickness**, eating **disturbances** and excessive **critical** reactions to host culture. Sometimes the symptoms last just few days, but more often they **last** weeks or even months.

People experiencing culture shock usually move through four **stages**; they will **initially** have the honeymoon stage which is characterised by a positive feeling that everything is new and exciting. Then there will be the **frustration** stage, it may be marked by **rejection** of the new culture, as well as romanticising one's home culture. But then, with some time and perhaps help from locals, people will start the **adjustment** stage and begin to feel more familiar and comfortable with the new environment. **Adaption** and **acceptance** is the final stage which **contributes** to the successful **integration**.

In fact, there is no magic solution for dealing with culture shock. Everyone has to find his or her own balance between the values of home country and those of the host country. In other words, knowing what culture shock is and being able to identify your feelings is a **relief**. This experience **shapes** one's personality and gives an **invaluable** lesson that despite our differences, we are all similar and **interconnected** on this incredibly beautiful planet.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتلوين.

Translation

الصدمة الثقافية تجربة قد يمر بها الناس عند الانتقال إلى بلد **أجنبي** ذي بيئة ثقافية جديدة مختلفة عن بيئتهم. **تقود** هذه البيئة غير المألوفة إلى الشعور بالضياع قليلاً. على سبيل المثال، عندما يشرع الطالب في الدراسة خارج بلاده، فإنه **يواجه** أموراً متفاوتة في العادات واللباس والطعام.

هناك عدة أعراض للصدمة الانتقالية بما في ذلك: الغضب، والملل، والحنين الشديد إلى الوطن، واضطرابات الأكل، وردود الفعل **الانتقادية** المفرطة تجاه الثقافة المضيفة. في بعض الأحيان **تستمر** الأعراض بضعة أيام فقط، ولكن في كثير من الأحيان تدوم لأسابيع أو حتى أشهر.

عادة ما يمر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من الصدمة الثقافية خلال أربع **مراحل**؛ حيث يمرون في **البداية** بمرحلة شهر العسل والتي تتسم بشعور إيجابي بأن كل شيء جديد ومثير للاهتمام. ثم تأتي مرحلة **الإحباط**، والتي قد تتميز **برفض** الثقافة الجديدة، بالإضافة إلى إضفاء الطابع الرومانسي على ثقافة الوطن الأم. ولكن بعد ذلك، ومع مرور بعض الوقت وربما بمساعدة السكان المحليين، ستبدأ مرحلة **التناسب** والشعور بالألفة والراحة مع البيئة الجديدة. **التكيف** والقبول هي المرحلة الأخيرة التي **تساهم** في **الاندماج** الناجح.



في الواقع، لا يوجد حل سحري للتعامل مع الصدمة الثقافية. ينبغي على كل شخص أن يجد التوازن الخاص به بين قيم البلد الأم وقيم البلد المضيف. بعبارة أخرى، إن معرفة ماهية الصدمة الثقافية والقدرة على تحديد مشاركتك أمر مريح. هذه التجربة تصقل شخصية المرء وتعلمه درسًا لا يقدر بثمن ألا وهو رغم اختلافاتنا، إلا أننا جميعًا متشابهون ومترابطون على هذا الكوكب الجميل بشكل لا يصدق.

مفردات النص الأساسية

homesickness	الحنين إلى الوطن	a strong, sad feeling of missing one's home when physically away
disturbance	اضطراب	the feeling of being annoyed because you cannot control a situation
frustration	إحباط	an unhappy and worried mental state
adjustment	تناسب	a change in the way that someone behaves or thinks
integration	اندماج	the process of fitting into a community
invaluable	لا يقدر بثمن	extremely useful

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Which of the following sentences isn't true?

- A. When people move to an unfamiliar country, they might have culture shock.
- B. When people move to a different country, they might have culture shock
- C. When people move to their own country, they might have culture shock.
- D. When people move to a strange country, they might have culture shock.

2. One of the transition shock symptoms is ...

- A. anger
- B. boredom
- C. extreme homesickness
- D. all of them are correct

3. In the stage people begin to feel more confident and relaxed in a new cultural environment

- A. honeymoon
- B. frustration
- C. adjustment
- D. adaption and acceptance

4. People can reduce the impact of culture shock when.....

- A. they find their balance between the values of home country and those of the host country.
- B. they come back to their own countries.
- C. they reject the values of the host country
- D. they refuse the values of their home country.

5. Eating disturbances and excessive critical reactions to host culture are two examples of transition shock symptoms.

- A. True
- B. False



6. Frustration stage is the final stage which contributes to the successful integration.

- A. True
- B. False

7. The honeymoon stage is characterized by the rejection of the new culture.

- A. True
- B. False

8. With some time and perhaps help from locals, people will begin to adapt to new environment.

- A. True
- B. False

9. The word "frustration" means:

- A. the feeling of being annoyed because you cannot control a situation
- B. extremely useful
- C. an unhappy and worried mental state
- D. a strong, sad feeling of missing one's home when physically away

10. The word "homesickness":

- A. the feeling of being annoyed because you cannot control a situation
- B. extremely useful
- C. an unhappy and worried mental state
- D. a strong, sad feeling of missing one's home when physically away

11. The word "disturbance" means:

- A. a change in the way that someone behaves or thinks
- B. the process of fitting into a community
- C. the feeling of being annoyed because you cannot control a situation
- D. extremely useful

12. The word "invaluable" means:

- A. change in the way that someone behaves or thinks
- B. the process of fitting into a community
- C. an unhappy and worried mental state
- D. extremely useful

13. The word "adjustment" means:

- A. a change in the way that someone behaves or thinks
- B. a strong, sad feeling of missing one's home when physically away
- C. an unhappy and worried mental state
- D. extremely useful

14. The word "integration" means:

- A. an unhappy and worried mental state
- B. the process of fitting into a community
- C. extremely useful
- D. a strong, sad feeling of missing one's home when physically away

Answers:

- 1 - C 8 - A
- 2 - D 9 - C
- 3 - C 10 - D
- 4 - A 11 - C
- 5 - A 12 - D
- 6 - B 13 - A
- 7 - B 14 - B



Workbook

Culture Shock

Page 80

Reading

Diana, a student from Aleppo, Syria, is studying in Montreal. The following passages are taken from her **diary** during her first six months in Canada.

February 17

Moving to a country with a very different climate could be a **challenge**! In Syria we have a Mediterranean weather, with **mild**, rainy winters. Here in Canada winter is very cold and snowy. Temperature **average** is between the **single digits** and the -20s. I was very worried about the cold. But it wasn't a problem because most buildings here are well heated. Actually this city knows how to stay warm. When the weather gets too **chilly**, I **head to** the Underground City – a series of **interconnected tunnels beneath** Montreal which run for over 32 kms. The tunnels connect shopping malls, universities, banks and seven metro stations.

April 10

I miss my mom's cooking a lot, the food here is delicious but it's not really the same. Foods, **typically considered national** dishes of Canada, include poutine, Montreal bagels and butter tarts. My most amazing experience was Sugar time, usually at the end of March. It is the season when maple syrup is **produced**, and some parties are **organised in** "la cabane à sucre", a place where maple **sap** is **boiled** to produce maple syrup. It is heated above 100 degrees, and the drops are placed on the snow. It becomes like a candy, a caramel that is **served on a stick**!

July 31

Getting used to different culture is difficult. My experience during these six months taught me to avoid quick **judgements** and try to understand the point of view of the people in another culture.

I'm staying in a building with a Quebecois family who are teaching me about Montreal a lot. They told me not to make quick decisions, and not to leave right away even if I wanted to. They were right! People don't take the time to **adapt**, so they don't accept the new culture and just go back.

Did you know:

- Sirop d'érable (Maple syrup) is made from the sap of maple trees.
- The Canadian province Quebec is the largest producer, responsible for 70% of the world's output of maple syrup.
- Maple syrup production farm is called Sugar shack.
- The maple leaf has come to symbolise Canada, and is depicted on the country's flag.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتلوين



Translation

خلال الأشهر الستة. ديانا طالبة من حلب، سوريا. تدرس في مونتريال. الفقرات التالية مُقتبسة من مذكراتها الأولى لها في كندا

فبراير 17:

قد يمثل الانتقال إلى بلد بمناخ مختلف تماماً تحدياً! في سوريا الطقس لطيف والشتاء معتدل وماطر. هنا في كندا الشتاء بارد جداً وثلجي، يتراوح متوسط درجات الحرارة بين الأرقام الأحادية والعشرينات تحت الصفر. كنت قلقة للغاية بخصوص البرد، ولكن لم يشكّل ذلك مشكلة لأن معظم المباني هنا مدفأة جيداً. في الواقع، تعرف المدينة كيف تحافظ على الدفء، فعندما يصبح الطقس شديد البرودة أتوجه إلى مدينة تحت الأرض، الأنفاق بين مراكز. وهي سلسلة من الأنفاق المترابطة تحت مونتريال تمتد لأكثر من 32 كيلومتراً، تربط التسوق، والجامعات، والبنوك وسبع محطات مترو

أبريل 10:

أفتقد طهي والدتي كثيراً، الطعام هنا لذيذ ولكن يختلف عنه. تشمل الأطعمة -التي تُعتبر عادةً أطباقاً وطنية في كندا-: البوتين، وكعك مونتريال، وكعك الزبدة. كانت تجربتي الأروع هي موسم السكر، عادةً ما يكون في نهاية شهر مارس، ويتم فيه إنتاج شراب القيقب، وتنظيم بعض الحفلات في كوخ السكر، وهو المكان على الذي تُغلى فيه عصارة القيقب لإنتاج شراب القيقب، حيث تسخن لما يزيد عن 100 درجة، وتوضع القطرات الثلج، فيصبح مثل الحلوى والكراميل الذي يُقدّم على عصا

يوليو 31:

الاعتقاد على ثقافة مختلفة أمر صعب، علّمتني تجربتي خلال هذه الأشهر الستة أن أتجنب الأحكام السريعة، وأن أحاول فهم وجهة نظر الناس ذوي الثقافة الأخرى. أقطن في مبنى مع عائلة كيبكية عزّفتني الكثير عن مونتريال، أخبروني ألا أتخذ قرارات سريعة، وألا أغادر على الفور حتى لو أردت ذلك. لقد كانوا على حق! فالناس لا يمضون الوقت الكافي للتأقلم، لذلك لا يتقبلون الثقافة الجديدة ويعودون أدراجهم

هل تعلم أن:

- شراب القيقب يُصنع من عصارة أشجار القيقب.
- تُعد مقاطعة كيبيك الكندية أكبر منتج لشراب القيقب، وهي مسؤولة عن 70% من إنتاج شراب القيقب في العالم.
- يُطلق على مزرعة إنتاج شراب القيقب اسم كوخ السكر .
- أصبحت ورقة القيقب ترمز إلى كندا، وهي مرسومة على علم البلاد .



Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Which sentence is not given in the text:

- A. In Canada, people can go shopping underground.
- B. Montreal has been a destination for many immigrants.
- C. Maple syrup is prepared in Canada at the end of March.
- D. The people Diana lived with taught her to take more time when making decisions.

2. The cold weather wasn't a problem to Diana because.....

- A. she was accustomed to cold weather
- B. most buildings there are well heated
- C. she wore Heavy clothes
- D. she liked cold weather

3. Poutine, Montreal bagels and butter tarts are considered....

- A. national dresses
- B. national drinks
- C. national flags
- D. national dishes

4. Sugar time is.... is produced.

- A. the place where maple syrup
- B. the season when maple syrup
- C. the time when Montreal bagel
- D. Both A and B

5. Diana thinks that we should try to.....the point of view of the people in another culture.

- A. misunderstand
- B. misguide
- C. mistake
- D. know

6. People don't accept the new culture and just go back because they....

- A. don't take the time to adapt.
- B. like the new environment
- C. don't like their home country
- D. know the people there

7. In Canada, people can go shopping underground.

- A. True
- B. False

8. Maple syrup is prepared in Canada around the year.

- A. True
- B. False

9. The people Diana lived with taught her to take more time when making decisions.

- A. True
- B. False

10. Being accustomed to a different culture is easy.

- A. True
- B. False

Answers:

- 1 - B
- 2 - B
- 3 - D
- 4 - B
- 5 - D
- 6 - A
- 7 - A
- 8 - B
- 9 - A
- 10 - B



Vocabulary

Idioms around the world

المصطلح	شرحه	ترجمته
To have a wide face	To have many friends and be well liked	محبوب، لديه الكثير من الأصدقاء
To save face	You save face when you do something to prevent yourself or someone else from being embarrassed	يحفظ ماء وجهه
To lose face	You lose face when you do or say something disrespectful	يخسر ماء وجهه
To give someone pumpkins	To reject somebody or turn someone down	يخذل
To break bread with	To be close friends and have a meaningful connection	يبنى علاقة وطيدة

Everyday English

Expressing surprise

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| • How amazing! | • You're kidding! |
| • Oh, that's incredible | • - He has got a new job.
- A new job? |
| • Are you serious? | • - He's promoted
- Is he? |



Pronunciation

Question Intonation

Rising intonation

- 1) The question words in wh-questions

↗ ↘
- What's the time?

- 2) The last content word or phrase in Yes/No questions

↗ ↘
- Have you got a pen?

- 3) Question tags showing less certainty

↗ ↘
- You're French, aren't you?

- 4) The first choice(s) in questions that offer choices

↗ ↘ ↗ ↘
- would you rather be a doctor, a psychologist or an engineer?

Falling intonation

- 1) The last content word in wh-questions

↗ ↘
- Where do you live?

- 2) Question tags expecting confirmation

↗ ↘
- You're French, aren't you?

- 3) The last choice in questions that offer choices

↗ ↘ ↗ ↘
- Do you prefer reading poetry or prose?



في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا:

Speaking

Asking for advice

What do you think I should do?

Can I ask your advice/opinion about something?

Do you think I should?

I'm thinking of what do you think?

Giving advice

You should/shouldn't

If I were you, I would

Make sure (that) you

The best thing is to



Writing

Emails

Formal	Informal
Dear Mrs Anastasia Brown,	Hi Anastaisa
It has been a pleasure to meet you the other day.	Very good to see you the other day.
I hope you had a safe journey back to Beijing.	Hope you got back to Beijing safely.
I forgot to mention that I am travelling to China next month on business to visit a supplier.	I'm travelling to China next month on business to visit a supplier.
I am unfamiliar with the customs in China and wondering if there is anything that I ought to be particularly aware of.	I've really got no idea about business customs in China and I wonder if there is anything I should know especially.
I wonder whether I should take some gifts with me.	For example, should I take some gifts with me?
Will they be offended that I do not speak any Chinese? I certainly do not want to displease my hosts in any way.	Will they be annoyed that I don't speak any Chinese? I certainly don't want to annoy my hosts in any way.
I would be most grateful if you could give me some advice.	I don't want to bother you, but if you've got a moment to write a few words of advice, it'd be great.
I apologise for any inconvenience caused.	—
With kind regards	All the best,
John Melton	John Melton



Choose the correct answer

1. Moving..... a country with a very different climate could be a challenge.
A. at B. on C. of D. to
2. I was very worried..... the cold.
A. into B. about C. out of D. to
3. When the weather gets too chilly, I head..... the Underground City.
A. to B. at C. in D. on
4. Some parties are organized "la cabane à sucre".
A. to B. in C. from D. on
5. I'm staying..... a building with a Quebecois family
A. to B. on C. in D. from
6. People with.....can supposedly be more successful in life.
A. narrow faces B. wide faces
C. long faces D. losing faces
7. I trusted him but unfortunately, he.....
A. broke bread B. had a wide face
C. saved face D. gave me pumpkins
8. I have known her for a long time now. We Together.
A. broke bread B. had narrow faces
C. lost faces D. gave pumpkins
9. I think we'll be good friends. We both.....
A. break faces B. have wide faces
C. lose faces D. give pumpkins
10. You have to study hard in order not to your parents.....
A. have/ wide face B. break/ bread
C. give/pumpkins D. save/ face
11. You can't..... with everyone you meet in life.
A. break bread B. lose the law
C. ace a test D. lose face
12. I don't want to ruin my friendship with him for we have with each other.
A. broken bread B. broken faces
C. given pumpkins D. lost faces
13. he thinks he would..... If he admitted the mistake.
A. break bread B. ace a test
C. get into D. lose face
14. She has many friends; she has
A. pain in the neck B. a wide face
C. broke the law D. backed the wrong horse
15. I wanted to..... with my colleagues by explaining why I've been late.
A. save face B. lose face
C. break bread D. keep up
16. He invited her to the party, but she
A. had a wide face B. gave him pumpkins
C. broke bread with him D. lost the law



17. Which question of the following has the right intonation?

- A. What's the time? (intonation: ↘)
- B. What's the time? (intonation: ↗)
- C. What's the time? (intonation: ↘)
- D. What's the time? (intonation: ↗)

18. Which question of the following has the right intonation?

- A. Where do you live? (intonation: ↘)
- B. Where do you live? (intonation: ↗)
- C. Where do you live? (intonation: ↘)
- D. Where do you live? (intonation: ↗)

19. Which question of the following has the right intonation?

- A. Are you going to the party tonight? (intonation: ↗)
- B. Are you going to the party tonight? (intonation: ↘)
- C. Are you going to the party tonight? (intonation: ↗)
- D. Are you going to the party tonight? (intonation: ↘)

20. Which question of the following has the right intonation?

- A. You're French, aren't you? (intonation: ↘)
- B. You're French, aren't you? (intonation: ↗)
- C. You're French, aren't you? (intonation: ↘)
- D. Both A and B

21. Which question of the following has the right intonation?

- A. Would you rather be a doctor, a psychologist or an engineer? (intonation: ↗)
- B. Would you rather be a doctor, a psychologist or an engineer? (intonation: ↘)
- C. Would you rather be a doctor, a psychologist or an engineer? (intonation: ↗)
- D. Would you rather be a doctor, a psychologist or an engineer? (intonation: ↘)

22. Which question has a rising intonation at the end?

- A. Where was the article published?
- B. have you talked to a professor?
- C. Would you rather have tea, coffee or cappuccino?
- D. Do you prefer to study nursing or education?

23. Which question has a falling intonation at the end?

- A. Do you prefer to study nursing or education?
- B. have you talked to a professor?
- C. Do you like pop music?
- D. Can you swim?

24. Your brother has won a lottery. (Expressing Surprise)

- A. OK. I can do that.
- B. Maybe you're right.
- C. I'm not sure if this is the best thing to do now.
- D. Has he? How amazing!



25. A friend won a school competition last week. (Expressing Surprise)

- A. I am sorry about that.
- B. Oh, that's incredible!
- C. I'm sure this won't happen again.
- D. He mustn't let this depress him.

26. Your friend's family is going to spend their holiday on the beach. (Expressing Surprise)

- A. They really deserve this honour.
- B. Very well done! Keep it up.
- C. On the beach?
- D. I'm sorry about what happened.

27. A friend tells you she's going to have her hair dyed orange. (Express surprise)

- A. You're going to do WHAT?
- B. I am sorry about what happened
- C. that is very kind of you
- D. please hold on

28. Your partner is late for your date as usual, but promises to be on time next time. (Choose the write response)

- A. You deserve this honour
- B. Do you seriously expect me to believe that?
- C. I need your help urgently
- D. Can I talk to Dr. Amal, please.

29. A taxi driver tells you that you have to pay double fare. (Express surprise)

- A. Congratulation!
- B. You are kidding!
- C. I'll take word for it.
- D. I need your help urgently

30. Someone tells you that their dog can sing pop songs. (Choose the response)

- A. I'll believe that when I see it.
- B. I need your help urgently.
- C. Do you seriously expect me to believe that?
- D. both A and C

31. Your friend tells you that he's tired. You know that he's always staying up late. (Choose the response)

- A. I'm not surprised.
- B. No wonder.
- C. Do you seriously expect me to believe that?
- D. both A and B

32. Someone tells you that he's just seen Messi at the local supermarket. (Express surprise)

- A. That's absolutely amazing!
- C. I'll take word for it.
- B. I can do that.
- D. I have a complaint to make.



A. Check whether the sentence is correct or not (True for correct, False for incorrect)

1. the frustration stage is characterized by the rejection of the new culture.
2. You can't brake bread with everyone you meet in life.
3. You must wait here. It is not allowed.
4. You should smoke. It is bad for your health.
5. Did you had to get a visa when you went to Canada.
6. She has many friends; she has pain in the neck.
7. You should apologise from the boss for being late.
8. Diana is studying in montreal.

B. Rearrange the following parts of a paragraph to form an organised one

- a) Everyone has to find his or her own balance
- b) In other words, knowing what culture shock is and being able to identify your feelings is a relief.
- c) between the values of home country and those of the host country.
- d) In fact, there is no magic solution for dealing with culture shock.

Answers:

1 - D	12 - A	23 - A	A
2 - B	13 - D	24 - D	1 - F
3 - A	14 - B	25 - B	2 - F
4 - B	15 - A	26 - C	3 - F
5 - C	16 - B	27 - A	4 - F
6 - B	17 - B	28 - B	5 - F
7 - D	18 - A	29 - B	6 - F
8 - A	19 - A	30 - D	7 - F
9 - B	20 - D	31 - D	8 - F
10 - C	21 - D	32 - A	B
11 - A	22 - B		d - a - c - b



Obligation Modals



رابط شرح الدرس

Uses

1 – Must

Present form – في حالة الحاضر

- 1 – عندما يكون الإيجار ذاتي.
 - 2 – مع القوانين المكتوبة (اللوحات و الإرشادات).
 - 3 – عادةً يكون هناك عقوبة عند المخالفة.
 - 4 – لإبداء الآراء التي يؤمن بها المتحدث بقوة.
- I haven't spoken to Sandra for ages, I **must** call here.
 - Passengers **must** fasten their seat belts.
 - I believe that people **must** stop using their car to go everywhere.

Perfect form – في حالة التام

- على عكس الاستخدام بالحاضر، فإن استخدام **must** في الماضي لا يدل على الإيجار بالماضي، بل يدل على الوصول الى استنتاجات في الزمن الماضي.
- I can't find my mom; she **must have left** early in the morning.

في الجملة الماضية المقصود ليس الإيجار بالماضي بل هو يفترض أو يستنتج أن أمه غادرت باكراً لأنه لم يحدّها.

Note

لا يوجد حالة للـ **Must** مع الماضي البسيط، فقط مع الحاضر التام

Mustn't – في حالة النفي

- مع الأشياء المحظورة والتي قد تكون على شكل قوانين مكتوبة (اللوحات و الإرشادات) أو لا.
- You **mustn't** talk in the library.
 - You **mustn't** park here, it's not allowed.

2 – Have to

Present form – في حالة الحاضر

- 1 – عندما يكون الإيجار من الخارج و ليس ذاتي.
 - 2 – قانون تفرضه بيئة خارجية (في أماكن العمل أو الدراسة أو ...)
- We **have to** get up early tomorrow morning to catch the plane.
 - You **have to** wear a uniform at school.

Past form – في حالة الماضي

إن استخدام **had to** يدل على الإيجار بالماضي، وله نفس استخدامات **must** و **have to** معاً ولكن يكون زمن الجملة ماضي.

- I hadn't spoken to Sandra for ages, I **had to** call here.
- Passengers **had to** fasten their seat belts when we flew to Egypt.
- I believed that people **had to** stop using their car to go everywhere.

– في حالة النفي – Don't / Doesn't have to

لإبداء انطباع أن القيام بالفعل غير ضروري بل اختياري (لست مجبراً للقيام بشيء معين ولن يحدث شيء ان قمت به).

- If he has a credit card, he **doesn't have to** pay in cash.
- You **don't have to** attend every class to pass the test.

2 – Should

Present form – في حالة الحاضر

1 – للنصيحة.

2 – للتوصيات.



- You **should** obey your parents.

- You **should** have a map when you go to the old city of Tadmor.

- He has a backache he **shouldn't** carry heavy things.

7 – نصيحة أو توصية في الحاضر:

- Passengers **should** fasten their seat belts, it's better for their safety.

- Passengers **shouldn't** fasten their seat belts all the time in the plane, it disturbs their movement.

Perfect form – في حالة التام

استخدام **should** في الماضي يدل على النصيحة في

الماضي، و تكون عادةً نابعة عن الندم على موقف سابق، أو انتقاد فعل معين في الماضي.

- I failed my exam; I **should have studied** harder for it.

- It's raining hard, I **shouldn't have left** my home today.

8 – نصيحة أو توصية في الماضي (نابعة عن انتقاد أو ندم):

- Passengers **should have fastened** their seat belts when we took off, it's better for their safety.

- Passengers **shouldn't have fastened** their seat belts all the time in the plane, it disturbed their movement.

9 – فعل اختياري، ليس الزامي:

توضيحات عامة

1 – إجبار في الحاضر (شخصي أو قوانين مكتوبة):

- Passengers **must** fasten their seat belts.

2 – إجبار في الحاضر (خارجي):

- We **have to** wear a uniform at school.

3 – إجبار في الماضي (بكل الحالات):

- Passengers **had to** fasten their seat belts when we travelled to Paris.

- We **had to** wear a uniform at school when we were kids.

4 – منع في الحاضر:

- Passengers **mustn't** fasten their seat belts.

5 – منع في الماضي (غير مذكورة في المنهاج):

- Passengers **weren't allowed to** fasten their seat belts when we travelled to Paris.

- Passengers **couldn't** fasten their seat belts when we travelled to Paris.

6 – استنتاج حدث حصل في الماضي، الجزم بأن شيئاً ما حدث:

- Passengers **must have fastened** their seat belts on the plane, most airlines enforce this law.

- Passengers **don't have to** fasten their seat belts all the time in the plane, it's not necessary.

النكشات

1 ليست كل الـ Modals تأخذ to:

Must to ✗
Should to ✗
Could to ✗
Would to ✗
Have to ✓
Ought to ✓

2 عند السؤال:

Do we should ...? ✗
Should we ...? ✓
Do we must ...? ✗
Must we ...? ✓
Do we have to ...? ✓
Have to we ...? ✗

3 لا يمكن نفي أو اختصار الـ Have to

You haven't to ✗
I've to ✗

4 Ought to = Should ولكن أكثر الزاماً بقليل:

- You ought to apologize to her. ✓
- You should apologize to her. ✓



Choose the correct answer

1. We use to express personal obligation.

- A. should B. shouldn't C. must D. mustn't

2. We use to express general obligation: a law, a rule at school or work.

- A. should B. shouldn't C. must D. have to

3. We use to give an opinion or a recommendation.

- A. should B. shouldn't C. must D. mustn't

4. We use..... to express negative advice.

- A. should B. shouldn't C. must D. have to

5. We use to express absence of obligation.

- A. should B. shouldn't C. must D. don't have to

6. means you are not allowed to do this, it's against the rules.

- A. Should B. Shouldn't C. Must D. Mustn't

7. In Britain, you..... drive on the left.

- A. must B. should have C. have to D. mustn't have

8. he has a backache. he..... carry heavy things.

- A. should B. shouldn't C. must D. has to

9. I'm very hungry. I eat something.

- A. must B. mustn't C. shouldn't D. have to

10. You..... use your mobile phone in a gas station.

- A. must B. mustn't C. have to D. should

11. Tom doesn't study enough. He..... study harder.

- A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. should D. doesn't have to

12. If he has a credit card, he..... pay for something in cash. he can use the card.

- A. mustn't B. should C. has to D. doesn't have to

13. You..... disturb other players, but you don't have to be silent.

- A. mustn't B. must C. have to D. don't have to

14. You must finish on time, but you..... start on time.

- A. have to B. don't have to C. must D. should

15. You don't have to play with club balls, but if you do, you take them home.

- A. have to B. must C. don't have to D. mustn't

16. You mustn't eat or drink outside the canteen, but you buy your food in it if you don't want to.

- A. should B. mustn't C. don't have to D. must



17. You must have a shower, and you wear clean clothes.

- A. must B. shouldn't C. mustn't D. don't have to

18. Passengers fasten their seat belts.

- A. must B. don't have to C. mustn't D. shouldn't

19. I haven't spoken to Sandra for ages. I call her.

- A. must B. don't have to C. must D. shouldn't

20. We get up early tomorrow to catch the plane.

- A. must B. mustn't C. have to D. shouldn't

21. You apologize to the boss for being late.

- A. has to B. shouldn't C. mustn't D. should

22. You get a good map of London before you go there.

- A. mustn't B. should have C. should D. shouldn't

23. You wait here. It is not allowed.

- A. must B. mustn't C. shouldn't D. don't have to

24. You wait here. It is not necessary.

- A. have to B. must C. don't have to D. mustn't

25. You smoke. It is bad for your health.

- A. must B. should C. don't have to D. shouldn't

26. I report the incident to the police yesterday.

- A. have to B. will C. must D. had to

27. Did you get a visa when you went to Canada?

- A. have to B. will C. must D. had to

28. She arrived in time. She left early.

- A. must have B. wouldn't have C. mustn't have D. shouldn't have

29. I went out and I got angry with my friend. I stayed at home.

- A. must has B. shouldn't have C. mustn't have. D. should have

30. Do I wear a uniform?

- A. must B. should C. have to D. shouldn't

31. You dress smartly at Carstairs College. You can't wear jeans.

- A. mustn't B. have to C. don't have to D. shouldn't

32. Do you think I take my laptop computer with me?

- A. must have B. should C. don't have to D. should have

33. You take your laptop! You have to write all your essays by hand!

- A. must B. have to C. don't have to D. should



34. You use email! It is not necessary.

- A. shouldn't B. must C. mustn't D. don't have to

35. I don't have a ticket for the train this evening. I reserved a seat, though. I have to stand all the way to Scotland.

- A. should have B. must have C. might have D. could have

36. Do you think I give you a ring later and see how things are going?

- A. must have B. should C. don't have to D. should have

37. You can use your mobile phone but you switch it off during the school day.

- A. must B. don't have to C. must have D. shouldn't

38. I think you visit the lake near the college. It's beautiful.

- A. mustn't B. should C. shouldn't D. don't have to

39. You talk in the library. It is not allowed.

- A. must B. mustn't C. don't have to D. shouldn't

40. You put the books back on the shelf. We will put them back.

- A. must B. have to C. don't have to D. should

41. You go into the antique shop if you don't want to.

- A. must B. mustn't C. don't have to D. should

42. You eat inside the antique shop. It is not allowed.

- A. must B. mustn't C. don't have to D. shouldn't

43. You arrive half an hour early. It is not necessary.

- A. have to B. mustn't C. don't have to D. should

44. You arrive late. Arriving late is not allowed.

- A. shouldn't B. mustn't C. don't have to D. must

45. Jenny work on Saturday last week.

- A. should B. must C. had to D. has to

46. Colin work on Saturday last week.

- A. mustn't B. didn't had to C. didn't have to D. doesn't have to

47. Carol on Sunday but she was ill.

- A. mustn't B. doesn't have to work
C. didn't have to work D. should have worked

48. Colin last Sunday.

- A. has to work B. must worked
C. don't have to D. had to work



A. didn't have to B. doesn't have to
C. mustn't D. should

A. didn't have to work B. doesn't have to work
C. mustn't have worked D. should have worked

A. should work B. didn't have to work
C. must work D. doesn't have to work

A. didn't have to work B. had to work
C. mustn't have worked D. should have worked

A. should have worked B. must have worked
C. had to work D. didn't have to work

1 - C	19 - C	37 - A
2 - D	20 - C	38 - B
3 - A	21 - D	39 - B
4 - B	22 - C	40 - C
5 - D	23 - B	41 - C
6 - D	24 - C	42 - B
7 - C	25 - D	43 - C
8 - B	26 - D	44 - B
9 - A	27 - A	45 - C
10 - B	28 - A	46 - C
11 - C	29 - D	47 - D
12 - D	30 - C	48 - D
13 - A	31 - B	49 - A
14 - B	32 - B	50 - A
15 - D	33 - C	51 - B
16 - C	34 - D	52 - B
17 - A	35 - A	53 - D
18 - A	36 - B	

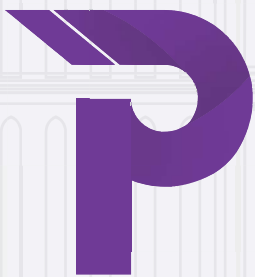
في أيام حلوة، وأيام باردة مافيهها إنجاز، وأيام فاضية، وهي كلها جزء من الرحلة. المهم ما توقف تحلم، ولا توقف محاولة. يمكن اليوم ماله معنى، بس بكرة لما تتذكره، حتقول: "منيح إني ما استسلمت" ^{٤٦}.



Unit number

Artificial Intelligence

Module 6 : Thecnology



**Made by
Pixel educational team**



Artificial Intelligence

Artificial Intelligence (AI) is the **branch** of science and engineering **specialised in** making clever machines, **capable of** thinking and **imitating** human-level intelligence.

One of the **primary targets** of AI field is to produce fully intelligent **agents** that **interact** with **the surroundings** and **conduct** human-like behaviors. These agents are tools, having the ability **to judge matter** and **differentiate** what is wrong.

The field has started with robots, which can **sense** and react to the world around them. They also cover **purely** software-based agents, which can **be actuated with** natural language and **multimedia**. Currently, the field **expands** to driving, **aviation**, medicine, **online advertising**, **image recognition**, and **personal assistance**. The AI field is based on computer science, information engineering, mathematics, psychology, **linguistics**, philosophy and many other fields.

The first **spark** started in the year 1950, when a test of the ability of a machine to **exhibit** intelligent behaviour **equivalent** to that of a human was done. Since then, the **term** AI has been introduced and closely **associated with** the field of artificial intelligence which was popular until the end of the 1980s. In the 1990s, the new **concept** of "intelligent agent" **emerged** when AI was not only limited to computer science, but developed to include other areas like health, security, education, music, art, and business applications.

Many AI applications are deeply **embedded in** the **infrastructure** of every industry, and they are expected, in a few years, to touch nearly all the industries.

However, AI technologies are still limited to very specific applications. One of the AI limitations is the lack of "common sense"- the power to judge information **beyond** its **acquired** knowledge. AI is also limited in terms of emotional intelligence. Moreover, AI can only **detect** basic human emotional states such as anger, joy, sadness, stress, pain, fear, and **neutrality**.

Emotional intelligence is one of the next **hurdles** to higher levels of **personalisation**. **Rational** and **harmonic** interactions are required between application-specific projects and research ideas to **sustain** the progress of AI.

There are also **fears** about the impact of technology on our society. Such fears should not **hinder** the progress of AI, but motivate the development of a systematic framework on which future AI will **flourish**, so it is quite important to **distinguish** science fiction from practical reality.

Despite the common belief that machines are man-made products, many think of them as the new **controllers** of our near future!

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتلوين.

Translation

الذكاء الاصطناعي فرع من فروع العلوم والهندسة متخصص في صنع آلات ذكية قادرة على التفكير ومحاكاة الذكاء البشري.

أحد الأهداف الأساسية لمجال الذكاء الاصطناعي هو إنتاج آلات ذكية تمامًا تتفاعل مع البيئة المحيطة وتنفذ سلوكيات شبيهة بسلوكيات الإنسان، هذه الآلات تُعد أدوات تستطيع الحكم على الأمور وتمييز ما هو خاطئ. وقد بدأ هذا المجال بالروبوتات التي بمقدورها استشعار العالم من حولها والتفاعل معه. كما أنه يشمل أيضًا الوسائل المستندة إلى البرامج التي تعتمد على البرمجيات البحتة، والتي يمكن تشغيلها باستخدام اللغة الطبيعية والوسائط المتعددة. ويتوسع هذا المجال حاليًا ليشمل القيادة، والملاحة الجوية، والطب، والإعلان عبر الإنترنت، والتعرف على الصور، والمساعدة الشخصية. يركز مجال الذكاء الاصطناعي على علوم الحاسوب، وهندسة المعلومات، والرياضيات، وعلم النفس، واللغويات، والفلسفة، والعديد من المجالات الأخرى.

بدأت الشرارة الأولى في عام 1950، عندما أُجري اختبار لقدرة الآلة على إظهار سلوك ذكي مكافئ لسلوك الإنسان. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ظهر مصطلح الذكاء الاصطناعي وارتبط ارتباطًا وثيقًا بمجال الذكاء الاصطناعي الذي كان شائعًا حتى نهاية الثمانينيات. وفي التسعينيات، برز المفهوم الجديد لمصطلح "الوكيل الذكي" عندما لم يقتصر الذكاء الاصطناعي على علوم الحاسوب فحسب، بل تطور ليشمل مجالات أخرى مثل الصحة، والأمن، والتعليم، والموسيقى، والفن، وتطبيقات الأعمال.

وقد دُمجت العديد من تطبيقات الذكاء الاصطناعي في البنية الأساسية لكل الصناعات، ومن المتوقع أن تفسح في غضون سنوات قليلة جميع الصناعات تقريبًا.

ومع ذلك، لا تزال تقنيات الذكاء الاصطناعي تقتصر على تطبيقات محددة للغاية. أحد قيود الذكاء الاصطناعي هو الافتقار إلى "الحس السليم"، أي قدرة الحكم على المعلومات بما يتجاوز المعرفة المكتسبة. كما أن الذكاء الاصطناعي محدود من حيث الذكاء العاطفي. علاوة على ذلك، يمكن للذكاء الاصطناعي تحري فقط الحالات العاطفية الإنسانية الأساسية مثل الغضب، والفرح، والحزن، والتوتر، والألم، والخوف، وحيادية المشاعر.

الذكاء العاطفي يعد أحد العقبات المقبلة أمام مستويات أعلى من التشخيص، ولا بد من وجود تفاعلات عقلانية ومتناسقة بين المشاريع الخاصة بالتطبيقات والأفكار البحثية لدعم تقدم الذكاء الاصطناعي.

هناك أيضًا مخاوف بشأن تأثير التكنولوجيا على مجتمعا، يجب ألا تعيق هذه المخاوف تقدم الذكاء الاصطناعي، بل أن تشجع على تطوير إطار عمل منهجي يزدهر فيه الذكاء الاصطناعي المستقبلي، لذا من المهم جدًا الفصل بين الخيال العلمي والواقع العملي.

وعلى الرغم من الاعتقاد الشائع بأن الآلات منتجات من صنع الإنسان، إلا أن الكثيرين يعتبرونها المتحكم الجديد في مستقبلنا القريب!

مفردات النص الأساسية

agents	آلات, عميل	people or things that do an action.
aviation	الملاحة الجوية	the designing, building and flying of aircraft.
spark	شرارة	a very small burning piece of material.
equivalent	مكافئ	equal in value, amount, meaning, importance, etc.
neutrality	حيادية المشاعر	the state of not supporting either side in a disagreement, competition or war.
hinder	يعيق	to make it difficult for somebody to do something.

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. Artificial agents.....

- A. can't imitate human beings
B. can imitate human
C. can interact with the surroundings
D. both B and C

2. The field of (AI) started with...

- A. mini devices
B. robots
C. giant mobiles
D. all mentioned

3. and..... are two branches which AI depends on.

- A. Linguistics/ chemistry
B. Philosophy/linguistics
C. Athletics/psychology
D. Both A and B

4. The future of artificial intelligence is expected to touch....

- A. a limited number of industries
B. some industries
C. a few industries
D. all the industries

5. One of the next obstacles to higher levels of personalization is....

- A. emotional intelligence
B. education
C. industrial Revolution
D. all mentioned

6. Clever machines, capable of imitating humans, are examples of natural intelligence.

- A. True
B. False

7. Clever machines have the ability to judge matter and distinguish what is wrong.

- A. True
B. False

8. Artificial intelligence emerged after doing many experiments on machines to imitate humans' behavior.

- A. True
B. False



9. Nowadays, AI applications are used in all industries.

A. True

B. False

10. To sustain the progress of AI, there would be a consistent interchange between research theory and practice.

A. True

B. False

11. The word "agents" means:

A. people or things that do an action.

B. a small burning piece of material.

C. the designing, building and flying of aircraft.

D. equal in value, amount, meaning, importance, etc.

12. The word "aviation" means:

A. people or things that do an action.

B. a small burning piece of material.

C. the designing, building and flying of aircraft.

D. equal in value, amount, meaning, importance, etc.

13. The word "hinder" means:

A. a small burning piece of material.

B. the designing, building and flying of aircraft.

C. to make it difficult for somebody to do something

D. equal in value, amount, meaning, importance, etc.

14. The word "neutrality" means:

A. to make it difficult for somebody to do something.

B. a small burning piece of material.

C. the state of not supporting either side in a war or competition.

D. equal in value, amount, meaning, importance, etc.

15. The word "equivalent" means:

A. a small burning piece of material.

B. people or things that do an action.

C. to make it difficult for somebody to do something.

D. equal in value, amount, meaning, importance, etc.

16. The word "spark" means:

A. a very small burning piece of material.

B. the designing, building and flying of aircraft.

C. to make it difficult for somebody to do something.

D. equal in value, amount, meaning, importance, etc.

Answers: Answers:

1 - D 9 - B

2 - B 10 - A

3 - B 11 - A

4 - D 12 - C

5 - A 13 - C

6 - B 14 - C

7 - A 15 - D

8 - A 16 - A



Workbook

Robots

Page 88

Reading

The word “robot” **stems from** the Czech “Robotnik” which means a “**slave**”.

Man has built a robot after his/her image. Possibly, that is why human beings have a variety of strong emotions, both negative and positive towards robots.

The **relative advantage** of robots and intelligent machines is accompanied with their ability to play a range of movements and thinking endlessly and **tirelessly**.

When designing robots, it is essential for planners to focus on the robots’ ability to **follow patterns**. Due to this engineering reality, robots are certainly specialised in the first step.

Another complicated sort is **the generalised robot**, which can **to some extent imitate** humans. In the future, the memory of robots is expected to become very **extensive**. This will allow huge amounts of data storage, the thing which **will be reflected** in the robot’s ability to **fulfill** a lot of **operational tasks**. Consequently, the use of robotics will be expanded.

Robots offer people a helping hand to focus on the creative process when relying on such intelligent machines to take care of unpleasant physical and mechanical work.

The greatest benefits of robots should mean for people staying away from unhealthy environments, such as **mines** and deep waters. For many industrial countries, using robots could increase production with low costs. The third **domain** for robots would be doing productive activities that people cannot easily perform.

At present, the main challenge of robotisation is in combining human and robot activities, trying to find the best human-robot match. Meanwhile, robots have the ability to do **heavy-duty jobs** with accuracy and **repeatability**, human beings have the **privilege** of creativity, flexibility, decision-making and **adaptability**. When experts reach high degree of **co-operation**, **manufacturers** would enhance efficiency and **capacity**, as well as improve quality and industrial working conditions.

Motivational influences of robotics among workers and managers can be amazing. This issue has been recognised in the **medical sector** in some **empirical** operations despite the fact that the use of robotics in risky tasks need special attention from safety and health experts.

As the modern world is **eager to witness** all that is **innovative**, **intellectual** and smart, there is an urgent need to **eliminate** the negative side-effects of new robot applications and that is the **key** challenge in **ongoing technological transition period**.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتلوين

Translation

كلمة "روبوت" مشتقة من كلمة "روبوتيك" التشيكية التي تعني "عبد". ابتكر الإنسان روبوتاً على هيئته، ربما هذا هو السبب وراء امتلاك البشر مجموعة متنوعة من المشاعر القوية، السلبية والإيجابية تجاه الروبوتات. تترافق الفائدة النسبية للروبوتات والآلات الذكية مع قدرتها على القيام بمجموعة من الحركات والتفكير بلا نهاية وبلا كل.

عند تصميم الروبوتات، من الضروري أن يركز المخططون على قدرة الروبوتات على اتباع الأنماط/الأساليب. ونظراً لهذا الواقع الهندسي، فإن الروبوتات متخصصة بالتأكد في المرحلة الأولى. النوع الآخر المعقد هو الروبوت العام الذي يمكنه إلى حد ما محاكاة البشر، ومن المتوقع أن تصبح ذاكرة الروبوتات في المستقبل واسعة للغاية مما سيسمح بتخزين كميات هائلة من البيانات، الأمر الذي سينعكس على قدرة الروبوت على إنجاز الكثير من المهام التشغيلية. وبالتالي، سيوسّع نطاق استخدام الروبوتات. تقدم الروبوتات يد العون للناس للتركيز على العملية الإبداعية عند الاعتماد على مثل هذه الآلات الذكية للاهتمام بالأعمال البدنية والميكانيكية غير المحببة. ومن أعظم فوائد استخدام الروبوتات هي ابتعاد الناس عن البيئات غير الصحية، مثل المناجم والمياه العميقة. وبالنسبة للعديد من الدول الصناعية، يمكن أن يؤدي استخدام الروبوتات إلى زيادة الإنتاج بتكاليف منخفضة. أما المجال الثالث للروبوتات فهو القيام بالأنشطة الإنتاجية التي لا يمكن للبشر القيام بها بسهولة. وفي الوقت الحاضر، يكمن التحدي الرئيسي لاستخدام الروبوتات في الجمع بين الأنشطة البشرية والروبوتات، مع محاولة إيجاد أفضل تطابق بين الإنسان والروبوت. وفي الوقت الذي تتمتع فيه الروبوتات بالقدرة على القيام بالمهام الشاقة بدقة وتكرار، يتمتع البشر بميزة الإبداع والمرونة والقدرة على اتخاذ القرار والتكيف. عندما يصل الخبراء إلى درجة عالية من التعاون، فإن المصنعين سيعززون الكفاءة والقدرة على العمل، بالإضافة لتحسين الجودة وظروف العمل الصناعية. قد تكون التأثيرات التحفيزية للروبوتات بين العاملين والمديرين مذهلة. تم التعرف على هذا الأمر في القطاع الطبي في بعض العمليات التجريبية على الرغم من أن استخدام الروبوتات في المهام الخطرة يحتاج إلى انتباه خاص من خبراء السلامة والصحة. ومع تطلع العالم الحديث إلى رؤية كل ما هو مبتكر، ومنطقي، وذكي، هناك حاجة ملحة للقضاء على الآثار الجانبية السلبية لتطبيقات الروبوتات الجديدة وهذا هو التحدي الأساسي في فترة التبدل التقني الجاري.

مفردات النص الأساسية

slave	عبد	a person owned by another person and is forced to work for them
fulfill	ينجز	to do or achieve what is hoped or expected
domain	مجال	an area of knowledge or activity that someone is responsible for
privilege	ميزة	a special right or advantage that a particular person has
capacity	القدرة	the ability to understand or do something



Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. People consider robots.....because Man has built a robot after his/her image.

- A. both friends and enemies
- B. either friends or enemies
- C. neither friends nor enemies
- D. friends only

2. The crucial thing for designers to pay close attention to is.....

- A. the robots' ability to get married
- B. the robots' ability to speak
- C. the robots' ability to follow patterns
- D. the robots' ability to teach

3. The generalised robot is.....other robots in the way it can to some extent imitate humans.

- A. similar to
- B. the same as
- C. not different from
- D. different from

4. Intelligent machines will....people to focus on the creative process when depending on them.

- A. help
- B. discourage
- C. not allow
- D. depress

5. Humans are superior to robots in....

- A. creativity
- B. flexibility
- C. decision-making
- D. all mentioned

6. The Czech word "Robotnik" is the origin of "robot".

- A. True
- B. False

7. The use of robotics will be expanded in the future because of the robots' specialisation.

- A. True
- B. False

8. Working in mines and deep waters are the things that humans are forced to do in the future.

- A. True
- B. False

9. Robots will make production process quicker and at a low cost.

- A. True
- B. False

10. Accuracy and repeatability are the main features of man-made production.

- A. True
- B. False

11. The key challenge in ongoing technological transition period is finding a man-machine match.

- A. True
- B. False

12. The word "slave" means:

- A. a person owned by another person and is forced to work for them.
- B. the ability to understand or do something.
- C. to do or achieve what was hoped or expected.
- D. an area of knowledge or activity that someone is responsible for.

13. The word "fulfill" means:

- A. the designing, building and flying of aircraft.
- B. people or things that do an action.
- C. the ability to understand or do something.
- D. to do or achieve what was hoped or expected.



14. The word "domain" means:

- A. a person owned by another person and is forced to work for them.
- B. the ability to understand or do something.
- C. to do or achieve what was hoped or expected.
- D. an area of knowledge or activity that someone is responsible for.

15. The word "capacity" means:

- A. to state that something is legally yours.
- B. the ability to understand or do something.
- C. a small burning piece of material.
- D. the process by which you gain something.

16. The word "privilege" means:

- A. additional results of something you do.
- B. to state that something is legally yours.
- C. a special right or advantage that a particular person has.
- D. the process by which you gain something.

Answers: Answers:

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 1 - A | 9 - A |
| 2 - C | 10 - B |
| 3 - D | 11 - A |
| 4 - A | 12 - A |
| 5 - D | 13 - D |
| 6 - A | 14 - D |
| 7 - A | 15 - B |
| 8 - B | 16 - C |



Vocabulary

Words Family

يحفّز, يحث	motivate ↔ motivation	تحفيز
ذكاء	intelligence ↔ intelligent	ذكي
يتطلب	require ↔ requirements	متطلبات
رمزي	symbolic ↔ symbol	رمز
في الوقت الراهن	currently ↔ current	حالي
تخصص	specialisation ↔ specialise	يتخصص
أثر	effect ↔ affect	يؤثر
قلق	anxiety ↔ anxious	قلق
يتنفس	breathe ↔ breath	نفس
تجميع, تركيب	combination ↔ combine	يجمع
غياب	absence ↔ absent	غائب



يُمكنك مراجعة شرح الاشتقاقات على اليوتيوب لتوضيح الفكرة:

Vocabulary

Verbs used in science
and technology

To experiment with the materials	تجربة المواد
To utilise the materials	استخدام المواد
To press a button	الضغط على الزر
The lights flash	الأنوار تضيء
To pull the lever	سحب المقبض
The wheel rotates	العجلة تدور
To dissect the animal	تشريح الحيوان
To extract the organs	استخراج الأعضاء
To combine the chemicals	مزج المواد الكيميائية
The chemicals react violently with each other	المواد الكيميائية تتفاعل بقوة مع بعضها
To analyse the problem	تحليل المشكلة
To conclude there is a flaw in the theory	استنتاج وجود خطأ في النظرية
To insert the disk	إدخال القرص
To install the software	تحميل البرنامج

قم بحفظ كل اسم والفعل الذي يأتي معه وحرف الجر إن وُجد



Pronunciation

Strong and Weak Forms of Auxiliary verbs

Weak	Strong
- In the beginning of the sentence - In the middle of the sentence	- In the end of the sentence
Examples:	
- Are they going? - Who's coming? - Has the rose died?	- Yes, they are. - Ali is. - Yes, it has.
 في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا:	

Everyday English

Being tactful

Past Forms:	- We were planning to go to the cinema tomorrow.
Modal:	- It could have been a bit hotter. - I'd go for black instead if I were you
Not sounding negative:	- I think darker colours suit you better. - I've seen better performances.
Adverbs of attitude:	- Honestly, I've heard better singers. - Unfortunately, the food was salty.



Choose the correct answer

1. He with different materials before utilizing the most suitable one.
A. pressed B. pulled C. experimented D. dissected
2. He experimented different materials before utilizing the most suitable one.
A. for B. in C. with D. off
3. The engineer a button and lights started flashing.
A. gave B. pressed C. met D. concluded
4. When she the lever, the wheel began to rotate.
A. pulled B. met C. rose D. gave
5. When she pulled the lever, the wheel began to
A. pull B. meet C. rotate D. give
6. The vet the animal and extracted its organs.
A. printed B. combined C. rotated D. dissected
7. The vet dissected the animal and its organs.
A. inserted B. extracted C. rotated D. analysed
8. When they were combined, the two chemicals violently with each other.
A. inserted B. extracted C. rotated D. reacted
9. After the problem, she concluded that there was a flaw in the theory.
A. analyzing B. extracting C. dissecting D. rotating
10. After analyzing the problem, she concluded that there was a in the theory.
A. flu B. flaw C. flew D. flow
11. Insert the disk into the DVD drive to the software or visit the website to download it.
A. dissect B. extract C. install D. press
12. the disk into the DVD drive to install the software or visit the website to download it.
A. Dissect B. Extract C. Install D. Insert
13. These chemicals with each other.
A. dissect B. react C. install D. insert
14. If you that lever, it starts the machine.
A. dissect B. extract C. pull D. insert
15. The zoologist the organs from the animal.
A. analysed B. extracted C. installed D. inserted
16. When you that button, it turns the printer on.
A. dissect B. extract C. install D. press
17. They with different liquids.
A. dissected B. extracted C. experimented D. inserted
18. I believe there is a in the theory.
A. flu B. flaw C. flew D. flow
19. They had to the animal to see why it died.
A. dissect B. press C. install D. insert
20. A red light started to after a few seconds.
A. dissect B. install C. flash D. flow
21. The wheel began to very quickly.
A. insert B. utilise C. combine D. rotate
22. We can these chemicals together.
A. install B. analyse C. combine D. rotate
23. You should the strongest material.
A. install B. utilise C. analyse D. rotate
24. We analysed the problem and ... that it was a computer virus.
A. analyzed B. utilised C. concluded D. rotated
25. We the problem and concluded that it was a computer virus.
A. analyzed B. utilised C. concluded D. rotated
26. is an essential factor for making any success in life.
A. Motivate B. Motivated C. Motivation D. Motivator



27. He should be able to solve the problem. He's reasonably
A. intelligent B. intelligence C. intellect D. intelligently
28. Before going to the airport, you should check your travel
A. require B. requirements C. requiring D. required
29. Many colours are used in the national flag. Each has a specific
A. symbolize B. symbolic C. symbol D. sympathy
30. The necklace would be worth over SYP 500,000 at prices.
A. currently B. current C. currency D. currents
31. After finishing secondary school, he's going to in medicine.
A. specialization B. special C. specialize D. specialty
32. The amount of stress people suffer can their life.
A. affect B. effect C. effective D. affective
33. He felt too when he heard that his father had been involved in a car accident.
A. anxiety B. anxious C. anxiously D. anxiousness
34. Tom was nearly out of when he reached that high point.
A. breathe B. breathing C. breather D. breath
35. Hama, being an ancient city, the past and the present everywhere you walk there.
A. combination B. combined C. combining D. combines
36. I was from school last month due to the fact that I had a broken leg.
A. absent B. absence C. absentee D. absenteeism
37. Which sentence or question has a strong form of the auxiliary verbs?
A. I'm tired. B. Yes, they are.
C. Where is John? D. "Can I help you?"
38. Which sentence or question has a weak form of the auxiliary verbs?
A. She was late. B. Yes, they are.
C. Where is John? D. Both A and C
39. Your sister has just moved into a new flat, which you think is horrible. (Respond tactfully)
A. I'm sorry about that. B. Honestly, I've seen better flats.
C. Are you serious? D. both B and C
40. Your friend is excited about a CD he's bought which you really dislike. (Respond tactfully)
A. I've heard better singers CDs. B. No, thanks.
C. Are you serious? D. both A and B
41. Your aunt invites you to a party, but you really don't want to go. (Respond tactfully)
A. Unfortunately, I'd like to go but I have an exam.
B. Congratulations!
C. That's bad.
D. That's terrible.
42. Your partner has taken you to the cinema as a birthday present. You didn't like the film but your partner did. (Respond tactfully)
A. Are you serious? B. No, thank you.
C. I've seen better performances. D. Congratulations!
43. Do my legs look fat in these? (Respond tactfully)
A. I've seen better designs. B. It could do with being a bit louder.
C. It was sort of interesting at times. D. I think a looser pair would suit you better.
44. Honestly, what did you think of my speech? (Respond tactfully)
A. I've seen better designs.
B. Are you serious?
C. It was sort of interesting at times.
D. I think a looser pair would suit you better.
45. What did you think of that article I sent you? (Respond tactfully)
A. Frankly, it could have been a bit more detailed.
B. It wasn't on the short side.
C. I was planning to get an early night.
D. I'd turn it down if I were you.



46. What do you think of my new mobile? (Respond tactfully)

- A. It was sort of interesting at times B. I was planning to get an early night.
C. I'd turn it down if I were you. D. I've seen better designs.

47. Do you think the music is too loud? (Respond tactfully)

- A. It was sort of interesting at times. B. I was planning to get an early night.
C. I'd turn it down if I were you. D. I've seen better

48. Do you fancy going out for a dinner later? (Respond tactfully)

- A. It was sort of interesting at times. B. I was planning to get an early night.
C. I'd turn it down if I were you. D. I've seen better designs.

49. What did you think of their new kitchen? (Respond tactfully)

- A. I've seen better designs B. I was planning to get an early night
C. I'd turn it down if I were you. D. it was sort of interesting at times.

50. Did you manage to read my report? Sorry it was quite short. (Respond tactfully)

- A. Frankly, it could have been a bit more detailed.
B. It wasn't on the short side.
C. I was planning to get an early night.
D. Both A and B

A. Check whether the sentence is correct or not (True for correct, False for incorrect)

1. Tom was nearly out of breathe when he reached that high point.
2. The amount of stress people suffer can effective their life.
3. She asked him how he will travel to work.
4. The wheel began to rotate very quickly.
5. We can rotate these chemicals together.

Answers:

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|---|
| 1 - C | 18 - B | 35 - D | A
1 - F
2 - F
3 - F
4 - T
5 - F |
| 2 - C | 19 - A | 36 - A | |
| 3 - B | 20 - C | 37 - B | |
| 4 - A | 21 - D | 38 - D | |
| 5 - C | 22 - C | 39 - B | |
| 6 - D | 23 - B | 40 - A | |
| 7 - B | 24 - C | 41 - A | |
| 8 - D | 25 - A | 42 - C | |
| 9 - A | 26 - C | 43 - D | |
| 10 - B | 27 - A | 44 - C | |
| 11 - C | 28 - B | 45 - A | |
| 12 - D | 29 - C | 46 - D | |
| 13 - B | 30 - B | 47 - C | |
| 14 - C | 31 - C | 48 - B | |
| 15 - B | 32 - A | 49 - A | |
| 16 - D | 33 - B | 50 - D | |
| 17 - C | 34 - D | | |

Reported Speech

Grammar



رابط شرح الدرس

Forms

للتحويل من الكلام المباشر الى الكلام المنقول
يجب أن نقوم بثلاث خطوات أساسية.

3 - Time and place references:

Time

Here	→	There
This	→	That
These	→	Those

القريب يتحول الى بعيد

Place

Last night	→	- The night before - The previous night
Yesterday	→	- The day before - The previous day
Tomorrow	→	- The day after - The next day - The following day
Now	→	- Then
Ago	→	- Before

1 - Pronouns switch:

نحول جميع ضمائر المتكلم الى ضمائر الغائب، أيأ كان
نوعها (فاعل - مفعول به - ملكية).

I	→	He	Our	→	Their
		She			
We	→	They	Ours	→	Theirs
Me	→	Him	it	→	it
		Her			
My	→	His	its	→	its
		Her			
Mine	→	His	You	→	أي ضمير فاعل أو مفعول به
		Hers			
Us	→	Them			

2 - Tenses switch:

نعود بزمان الجملة دائماً خطوة واحدة للوراء.

ماضي تام → ماضي → حاضر

Present Simple	→	Past Simple
Present Continuous	→	Past Continuous
Present Perfect	→	Past Perfect
Past Simple	→	Past Perfect

Note

أي فعل مسبق بـ **to** المصدرية أو **Modal** لا يتغير عند التحويل:

- Teacher: "You have to speak English in my class".

- Teacher said that we had to **speak** English in her class.

4 - The reporting phrase:

الخطوة الأخيرة تتجلى بوضع الجملة الافتتاحية للكلام المنقول (... **said that** ...).

- Waleed: "I'm enjoying my new job now".
→ Waleed said that he was enjoying his new job then.

- Rama: "I slept for 10 hours yesterday".
→ Rama told me that she had slept for 10 hours the previous night.

- Omar: "I can't wait to see my exam result".
→ Omar announced that he couldn't wait to see his exam result.

- Parents: "We haven't slept well recently".
→ My parents said they hadn't slept well recently.



Reported Question

النكشات

1 – Yes / No question:

سؤال مبدؤ بفعل مساعد أو فعل كون

1 – نضع الجملة الافتتاحية.

(He asked, He wondered, He inquired, He wanted to know, He questioned)

2 – نضع **if** أو **whether** بعد الجملة الافتتاحية.

3 – نجري التغييرات المناسبة حسب ما سبق من قواعد نقل

الكلام الى صيغته غير المباشرة.

4 – لا نقلب بين الفاعل و الفعل المساعد أو فعل الكون ولا

نضع إشارة استفهام.

- Did you enjoy the party?

→ She asked them if they had enjoyed the party.

- Are we late?

→ He wondered if they were late.

2 – Wh- question:

سؤال مبدؤ بكلمة سؤال

1 – نضع الجملة الافتتاحية.

(He asked, He wondered, He inquired, He wanted to know, He questioned)

2 – نحذف الفعل المساعد إذا كان السؤال قبل النقل بالحاضر (البسيط do / does) ونبقى فيما سوى ذلك.

3 – نجري التغييرات المناسبة حسب ما سبق من قواعد نقل

الكلام الى صيغته غير المباشرة.

4 – لا نقلب بين الفاعل و الفعل المساعد (ان وُجد) أو

فعل الكون ولا نضع إشارة استفهام.

- Ahmad: "Where do you live?"

→ Ahmad wanted to know where I lived.

- Fadi: "Where have you been?"

→ Fadi wanted to know where I had been.

- Karim: "Whom are you waiting for?"

→ Karim asked me whom I was waiting for.

- Me: "When did you finish the project?"

→ I asked him when he had finished the project.

1 لا يُشترط وجود **that** في جملة الكلام المنقول

- Ahmad said that ... ✓

- Ahmad said ... ✓

2 بعد الفعل **told** يأتي مفعول به ليُذَل من الذي تماخباره، أما بعد الفعل **said** لا يأتي مفعول به بل نباشر بالكلام فوراً.

- Ahmad told me ... ✓

- Ahmad said me ... ✗

ممكّن أن يأتي بعد **said** مفعول به بشرط وجود **to**.

- Ahmad said to me ... ✓

3 انتبه عند وجود **could, would, should, might**

في الجملة نبقىهم على حالهم بعد التحويل ولا نغير فيهم شيء

- I **would** arrive late to the concert today.→ He said he **would** arrive late to the concert that day.أما بالنسبة لـ **Must** فيمكن أن تبقى على حالها أو ممكن أن تتحول إلى **Had to**

- Teacher: "You must speak English in my class".

→ Teacher said that we **must** speak English in her class. ✓→ Teacher said that we **had to** speak English in her class. ✓خلاصة: لا يمكن وجود أي **Modal** بالزمن الحاضر في جمل الكلام المنقول



Choose the correct answer

1. "We are taking the 9 o'clock train."
Judy told me the nine o'clock train.
A. they are taking B. they were taking C. they had been taking D. they took
2. "I will have to get up early."
She said that she get up early.
A. would to have to B. will have to C. would have to D. had to
3. "I don't really like travelling by train."
July said she travelling by train.
A. doesn't really like B. didn't really like C. hadn't really like D. both B and C
4. "It's an easy way to travel."
He said it an easy way to travel.
A. was B. is C. had been D. have been
5. "I want to see the waterwheels there."
She told me the waterwheel s there.
A. she wanted to see B. she wants to see C. she would want to see D. she sees
6. "We've been to Hama before."
She told me they to Hama before.
A. have been B. had been C. were D. went
7. "We didn't see everything."
She said that they everything.
A. doesn't see B. didn't see C. hadn't seen D. hasn't seen
8. "What is the time?"
He asked me
A. what is the time. B. what the time was? C. what the time was. D. both A and B
9. "Do you live in Damascus?"
He asked Mary in Damascus.
A. if she lived B. if she has lived C. if she had lived D. if she lives
10. "How long does it take you to get home?"
He asked me me to get home.
A. How long does it take B. How long it takes C. How long it took D. How long did it take
11. "Are you going to the cinema at the weekend?"
He asked me to the cinema at the weekend.
A. if I was going B. if I won't go C. if I were going D. if I have gone
12. "Where is the key?"
My mother wanted to know
A. where the key is B. where the key was C. where is the key D. where the key
13. "Who do you want to meet, sir?"
Sami asked Mr. Hamad
A. who he wanted to meet
B. who did he want to meet
C. who does he want to meet
D. both A and C



14. "What time did the film start?"

My friend wanted to know what time

- A. did the film start B. does the film start C. the film had started D. does the film start

15. "What kind of films do you like watching?"

Mary asked Natalie what kind of films

- A. she liked B. did she like C. does she like D. she likes

16. "Have you ever been to London?"

He wanted to know if I to London.

- A. I had ever been B. I have ever been C. had I ever been D. I had been

17. "I have just lost my umbrella."

Kareem announced that he his umbrella.

- A. has lost B. have lost C. lost D. had lost

18. "He's my son."

She said he her son.

- A. were B. are C. was D. has

19. "I saw her yesterday."

He said he

- A. saw her yesterday.
B. had seen her tomorrow.
C. had seen her the day before.
D. saw her today.

20. "Where is the station?"

He asked

- A. if the station was
B. where is the station
C. where the station is
D. where the station was

21. Maria: "The train arrives on time."

Maria said on time.

- A. the train arrived B. the train arrives C. the train will arrive D. the train arriving

22. Jack: "I have to finish this report by three o'clock."

Jack said he this report by three o'clock.

- A. has to finish B. had to finish C. had to finished D. have to finish

23. The doctor: "The boy will improve quickly."

The doctor said the boy quickly.

- A. will improve B. would improve C. would improved D. improve

24. William: "I am leaving later today."

William said he

- A. is leaving later today.
B. is leaving that day.
C. was leaving later that day.
D. were leaving later the previous day.



25. Joly: "I saw that movie last night."

Joly said she

- A. saw the movie the next night.
- B. had seen the movie the night before.
- C. had seen the movie the night after.
- D. saw the movie tonight.

26. Helen: "I have read that book."

Helen said she that book.

- A. was reading
- B. have read
- C. had read
- D. can't read

27. Mary: "I cannot go to the movie with you."

Mary said she go to the movie with

- A. couldn't / I
- B. can't / him
- C. couldn't / me
- D. can't / her

28. "Where do you live?"

He asked me

- A. if I had lived
- B. where I lived
- C. when did I live
- D. where I had lived

29. "Have you worked before?"

I asked him if before.

- A. if I had worked
- B. he had worked
- C. she had worked
- D. you had worked

30. "Why do you want the job?"

She asked him

- A. why wanted he the job.
- B. if he wanted that job.
- C. why he wants that job.
- D. why he wanted the job.

31. "How did you hear about it?"

She asked him

- A. how he heard about it
- B. how he had heard about it
- C. if he had heard about it
- D. how heard he about it

32. "Have you got any experience before?"

She asked him

- A. why he had got any experience
- B. if he got any experience
- C. if he had got any experience
- D. if he has any experience

33. "Can you work seven days a week?"

She asked him

- A. if he could work seven days a week.
- B. whether he worked seven days a week.
- C. if he worked seven days a week.
- D. both B and C



34. "How will you travel to work?"

She asked him

- A. how he would travel to work.
- B. if he had travelled to work.
- C. how would he travel to work.
- D. how he will travel to work.

Answers:

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1 - B | 20 - D |
| 2 - C | 21 - A |
| 3 - B | 22 - B |
| 4 - A | 23 - B |
| 5 - A | 24 - C |
| 6 - B | 25 - B |
| 7 - C | 26 - C |
| 8 - C | 27 - C |
| 9 - A | 28 - B |
| 10 - C | 29 - B |
| 11 - A | 30 - D |
| 12 - B | 31 - B |
| 13 - A | 32 - C |
| 14 - C | 33 - A |
| 15 - A | 34 - A |
| 16 - A | 35 - B |
| 17 - D | 36 - D |
| 18 - C | 37 - B |
| 19 - C | |

35. "Do you have a car or do you prefer walking?"

He asked him

- A. if he had a car or he prefers walking.
- B. if he had a car or he preferred walking.

C. if he has a car or he prefers walking.

D. if had he a car or he prefers walking.

36. "How much do you expect to earn?"

They asked him

- A. how much he expects to earn.
- B. how much will he expect to earn.
- C. how much he had expected to earn.
- D. how much he expected to earn.

37. "When can you start?"

We asked him

- A. if he could start?
- B. when he could start.
- C. when he can start.
- D. when he could started.

كلمتين بيني وبينك ...

” كثير بتلاقي طلاب بنهاية السنة تقريباً عم تشكي من الوضع السيئ وبتقلق ماعم نقدر ندرس وفارشين ومن هالقصاص، طبعاً كلكم لاحظتوا أنو الأغلب عندهم نفس الشعور، ياترا هالشئ صدفة؟

الجواب: لا .. حقيقةً هي الفترة فعلياً بيمر فيها كل طلاب البكالوريا، بتكون عبارة عن فترة ضياع وتراكمات وملل وتعب وبتشتد بنهاية السنة، ولكن .. اللي فهمان الوضع صح رح يعرف انو البكالوريا هي لعبة نفسية، انت غير مطالب بأنك تكون مبسوط وطاير عقلك بالدراسة، ولكن مطالب انو تحافظ على كمية معينة من الدراسة يومياً، ولو كنت مانك بأفضل أحوالك حالياً، بدك تضغط على حالك شوي لحتى تقدر تخلص الكمية اللي عليك ولو حسيت بالتعب والارهاق والملل، مو معقول تكب تعب سنة كاملة - أو أكثر - بسبب شوية ملل، لأنو شعور الندم أسوء بكثير من شعور الملل اللي انت فيه حالياً، وبدك تحط ببالك فكرة كثير مهمة: « كُلُّ مَيْسَرٍ لِمَا خِلَفَ لَهُ » فيعني لا تخاف وتضل متوتر ومتلبك، انت بس اعمل اللي عليك وأعطِ قد ما بتقدر لحتى يكون ضميرك فعلياً مرتاح.

وبالنسبة للي عنده تراكم وفاقد الأمل، في نماذج لكثير طلاب بلشت دراسة بالانقطاع وحالياً هي عم تدرس طب وتحضيرية وغيره من الأفرع اللي بدوها علامات، وهي مانها حالة ولا حالتين في كثير حالات، كلهم شفناهم بغروب إراقة خلال السنوات السابقة، مع العلم انو انقطاعهم كان أقصر من انقطاعكم، فإذا انت عندك تراكم كبير لا تفقد الأمل لسا كثير كبير، لا تفكر انك عم تدرس وتنجح وتجب علامات بشطارتك، هي كلها فضائل عليك من رب العالمين، وهو الذي إذا أعطى أذهل.

لذلك اطلعلي من مود الاكثاب الله يرضى عليك، وحطلي ببالك هالكلمتين:

يقول ابن الجوزي رحمه الله: « ان الخيل اذا شارفت نهاية المضمار، بذت قصارى جهدها لتفوز بالسباق، فلا تكن الخيل أظن منك، فانما الأعمال بالخواتيم، فانك اذا لم تحسن الاستقبال، لعلك تحسن الوداع »

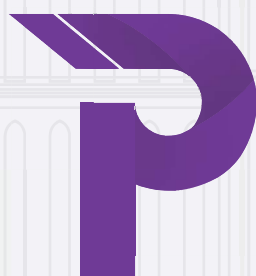
فشد الهمة وتوكل على الله، وبنهاية السنة، ارجع لهي الصفحة وقلني كيف بذعت بالامتحانات “.



Unit number

Digital Literacy

Module 6 : Thecnology



**Made by
Pixel educational team**

E-government

E-government means everything from online government services to **exchange** of information and services electronically with citizens, businesses, and other **bodies of the government**.

Traditionally, e-government has been considered as the use of Information and Communication Technology (ICT) for improving the **effectiveness** of government **agencies** and providing government services online. Nowadays, the **framework** of e-government has been evolving to include the use of ICT by government for **conducting** a wide range of **interactions** with citizens and businesses as well as open government data and the use of ICT to enable **novelty** all over the country.

E-government enables the use of ICT more effectively and **professionally** by the delivery of government services to citizens and businesses, applying ICT to government operations and achieving public goals by **digital means**. The essential principle of e-government is to improve the **internal mechanisms of the public sector**.

This can be done to reduce financial costs and **transaction** times, **integrate work flows** and **processes** and enable effective resource applications across the various public sector agencies aiming for **workable** solutions.

Through **innovation** and e-government, governments around the world can be more efficient as they provide better services and **respond to** the **demands** of their citizens by **transparency** and **liability**. They can be **more comprehensive** and restore the trust of citizens in their governments.

E-government services have three **classifications**. Firstly, Government-to-Government (G2G) involves sharing data and conducting electronic exchanges between governmental sectors, as well as exchanges between the national, **regional**, and local levels. Secondly, Government-to-Business (G2B) includes business-specific transactions (e.g. payments, sale and **purchase** of **goods** and services) as well as delivery online of business-focused services. Finally, Government-to-**Consumer** (G2C) **comprises initiatives** designed to simplify people's interaction with the government as consumers of public services and contribute to the **consultation** and decision-making process.

E-government in Syria

In recent years, Syria **has adopted** this new technology to **facilitate** public services for its citizens. This **requires** links to governmental organisations that supply services and information such as governmental documents, fees, etc. electronically. Various ministries are working on completing the data-entry process. This will pave the way to have more e-services. Many observers, experts and politicians expect that Syria will witness a great progress in all fields in the coming years.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعر اهتماماً للتولين.



Translation

تعني **الحكومة الإلكترونية** كل ما يشمل الخدمات الحكومية عبر الإنترنت ووصولاً إلى تبادل المعلومات والخدمات إلكترونياً مع المواطنين والشركات والهيئات الحكومية الأخرى.

تقليدياً، اعتُبرت الحكومة الإلكترونية أنها استخدام تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات لتحسين **فعالية** الهيئات الحكومية وتقديم الخدمات الحكومية عبر الإنترنت. أما في الوقت الحاضر، فقد تطور **هيكل** الحكومة الإلكترونية ليشمل استخدام الحكومة لتكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات **لإجراء** مجموعة واسعة من **التفاعلات** مع المواطنين والشركات، بالإضافة إلى البيانات الحكومية المفتوحة واستخدام تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات لتمكين **الحداثة** في جميع أنحاء البلاد.

وتتيح الحكومة الإلكترونية استخدام تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات بشكل أكثر فعالية و**احترافية** من خلال تقديم الخدمات الحكومية للمواطنين والشركات، وتطبيق تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات في العمليات الحكومية وتحقيق الأهداف العامة **بالوسائل الرقمية**. ويتمثل المبدأ الأساسي للحكومة الإلكترونية في تحسين **الآليات الداخلية للقطاع العام**.

ويمكن القيام بذلك لتقليل التكاليف المالية وأوقات **المعاملات**، و**دمج سير العمل والعمليات**، وتمكين التطبيقات الفعالة للموارد عبر مختلف وكالات القطاع العام بهدف إيجاد حلول **عملية**.

ومن خلال **الابتكار** والحكومة الإلكترونية، يمكن للحكومات في جميع أنحاء العالم أن تكون أكثر فاعلية في تقديم خدمات أفضل **والاستجابة لمطالب** مواطنيها من خلال **الشفافية والمسؤولية القانونية**. ويمكنها أن تكون **أكثر شمولاً** وتستعيد ثقة المواطنين في حكوماتهم.

تنقسم خدمات الحكومة الإلكترونية إلى ثلاثة **تصنيفات**. أولاً، حكومة إلى حكومة (G2G) تشمل تبادل البيانات وإجراء التبادلات الإلكترونية بين القطاعات الحكومية، فضلاً عن التبادلات بين المستويات الوطنية **والإقليمية والمحلية**. ثانياً، تشمل المعاملات بين الحكومة وقطاع الأعمال (G2B) المعاملات الخاصة بالأعمال (مثل المدفوعات وبيع **وشراء السلع والخدمات**) بالإضافة إلى تقديم الخدمات التي تركز على الأعمال التجارية عبر الإنترنت. وأخيراً، **يشمل** التواصل بين الحكومة **والمستهلك** (G2C) **المبادرات** المصممة لتبسيط تفاعل الناس مع الحكومة كمستهلكين للخدمات العامة والمساهمة في عملية **التشاور** وصنع القرار.

الحكومة الإلكترونية في سوريا

تبنت سوريا في السنوات الأخيرة هذه التقنية الجديدة **لتسهيل** الخدمات العامة لمواطنيها، **ويتطلب** ذلك ربط المؤسسات الحكومية التي تقدم الخدمات والمعلومات مثل الوثائق الحكومية والرسوم وغيرها إلكترونياً. وتعمل مختلف الوزارات على استكمال عملية إدخال البيانات. وسيمهد هذا الطريق للحصول على المزيد من الخدمات الإلكترونية. ويتوقع العديد من المراقبين والخبراء والسياسيين أن تشهد سوريا تقدماً كبيراً في جميع المجالات في السنوات القادمة.



مفردات النص الأساسية

effectiveness	فعالية	the act of producing a successful result
novelty	حدثا	being new, different and interesting
transaction	معاملات	a business deal such as buying or selling something
transparency	شفافية	the quality of something to make it easy to understand
liability	مسؤولية قانونية	the state of being legally responsible
purchase	شراء	the act of buying something
initiative	مبادرة	a new plan for achieving a particular purpose
consultation	تشاور	discussion with a group of people before making a decision

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. The e-government offers its services to

- A. citizens.
- B. businesses.
- C. other governmental bodies.
- D. all mentioned

2.category is in charge of payments.

- A. (G2G)
- B. (G2B)
- C. (G2C)
- D. (C2G)

3. E-government enables the use of ICT

- A. inefficiently
- B. less effectively
- C. more efficiently
- D. more badly

4. The ICT abbreviation stands for

- A. Information Technology
- B. Information and Communication Technology
- C. Communication Technology
- D. E-government

5. Ministries in Syria are trying to enhance e-government by

- A. working on completing the data-entry process
- B. raising taxes
- C. reducing the number of employees in the public sector
- D. both A and B



6. Information technology can decrease the effectiveness of government bodies.

- A. True
- B. False

7. Financial costs and transaction times will be reduced by applying e-government.

- A. True
- B. False

8. E-government has already been applied in all the Syrian governmental sectors.

- A. True
- B. False

9. E-government gives its services only to consumers.

- A. True
- B. False

10. The word "effectiveness" means:

- A. the act of buying something
- B. discussion with a group of people before making a decision
- C. a new plan for achieving a particular purpose
- D. the act of producing a successful result

11. The word "novelty" means:

- A. the act of buying something
- B. being new, different and interesting
- C. a new plan for achieving a particular purpose
- D. the act of producing a successful result

12. The word "transaction" means:

- A. a business deal such as buying or selling something.
- B. being new, different and interesting
- C. a new plan for achieving a particular purpose
- D. the act of producing a successful result

13. The word "transparency" means:

- A. the act of buying something
- B. the quality of something to make it easy to understand
- C. a new plan for achieving a particular purpose
- D. the act of producing a successful result

14. The word "liability" means:

- A. a business deal such as buying or selling something
- B. being new, different and interesting
- C. the state of being legally responsible
- D. the act of producing a successful result



15. The word "purchase" means:

- A. the act of buying something
- B. the quality of something to make it easy to understand
- C. a new plan for achieving a particular purpose
- D. the act of producing a successful result

16. The word "initiative" means:

- A. the act of buying something
- B. the quality of something to make it easy to understand
- C. a new plan for achieving a particular purpose
- D. the act of producing a successful result

17. The word "consultation" means:

- A. discussion with a group of people before making a decision
- B. the quality of something to make it easy to understand
- C. a new plan for achieving a particular purpose
- D. the act of producing a successful result

Answers:

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 1 - D | 10 - D |
| 2 - B | 11 - B |
| 3 - C | 12 - A |
| 4 - B | 13 - B |
| 5 - A | 14 - C |
| 6 - B | 15 - A |
| 7 - A | 16 - C |
| 8 - B | 17 - A |
| 9 - B | |



Workbook

Page 96

Reading

E-learning

E-learning is the use of **networked information** and **communication technology** in teaching and learning. It combines all **educational activities** that **are carried out** by individuals or groups working online or offline, and on networked or separate computers and other electronic devices.

E-learning is highly **interactive** and **relies heavily upon** graphics, video, and audio. However, there are often **simulations** to support in learning achievement, which could include **3D components**.

New software training is an example of a course that often includes a high degree of interactivity and simulations.

The impact of e-learning is noticed in self-responsibility among students when they decide to study or not. It helps **expand** their knowledge by researching using the World Wide Web. Teachers allow them to **acquire** various computer skills and **apply** their knowledge and skills. This helps in the communication with their students at all times and increases the students' ability to study **on their own**.

The importance of e-learning **lies in** the fact that the students need to be busy with what they are doing to improve learning **outcomes**. E-learning enables students to become thinkers, learners and risk takers in a protected environment, so they need not **rely on** the teachers, as they can be independent. Learning can happen anywhere, anytime and anyhow. It encourages students to **seek** more from school.

When the course is developed, it can be run as many times, at as many locations and for as many learners and thus it reduces the general cost and time.

As **the digital revolution** has led to **remarkable** changes in how the **content** is accessed, consumed, discussed, and shared, e-learning is best **suited for** everyone especially at weekends or evenings. Besides, content of lessons can be accessed at an unlimited number of times: at the time of revision and when preparing for an exam.

The **chief** benefit of learning online is that you are in **harmonisation** with modern learners by **accessing** updated content whenever they want it. E-learning provides a quick delivery of lessons, so the learning time is reduced as the student does not need to travel to the **training venue**. You can learn comfortably from your own place. Besides, e-learning is **cost effective** compared to traditional forms of learning because learning through this mode happens quickly and easily and a lot of training time is reduced regarding trainers, travel, **course materials**, and **accommodation**. Recently such type of learning has become popular in Syria, especially after applying it at **Syrian Virtual University**.

On the other hand, if an individual lacks self-**discipline**, they will not be motivated to study bringing about delay. This is where traditional classroom learning is **convenient** whereby; you are followed if you **are falling behind** in your studies. In addition, health problems normally **occur** when an individual is always on his/her computer or tablet; it brings about **straining problems, poor vision** and the like.



To sum-up, e-learning provides the students with the ability to **fit learning** around their lifestyles, effectively allowing even the busiest person to **promote** a career and **gain** new **qualifications**. Some of the most important **developments** in education have happened since the **launch** of the Internet. Nowadays learners are **well-acquainted with** the use of smart phones, messaging and using the Internet so **contributing in and running an online course** has become a simple **affair**.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّ اهتماماً للتولين

Translation

التعلم الإلكتروني هو استخدام المعلومات الشبكية وتكنولوجيا الاتصالات في التعليم والتعلم. ويجمع كل الأنشطة التعليمية التي تُنفذ من الأفراد أو المجموعات عبر الإنترنت أو دون الاتصال بها، وعلى أجهزة الكمبيوتر المتصلة بالشبكة أو المنفصلة وغيرها من الأجهزة الإلكترونية.

يتسم التعلم الإلكتروني بالتفاعلية العالية ويعتمد بشكل كبير على الرسوميات والفيديو والصوت. ومع ذلك، غالباً ما تكون هناك عمليات محاكاة لدعم التحصيل التعليمي، والتي يمكن أن تتضمن مكونات ثلاثية الأبعاد.

يعد التدريب على البرامج الجديدة مثلاً على الدورات التعليمية التي غالباً ما تتضمن درجة عالية من التفاعل والمحاكاة.

يلاحظ تأثير التعلم الإلكتروني في المسؤولية الذاتية لدى الطلاب عندما يقررون الدراسة من عدمها، فيساعد على توسيع معارفهم من خلال البحث باستخدام شبكة الويب العالمية. ويتيح المعلمون اكتساب مهارات الحاسوب المختلفة وتطبيق معارفهم ومهاراتهم، ويسهم ذلك في التواصل مع طلابهم في جميع الأوقات ويزيد من قدرة الطلاب على الدراسة بمفردهم.

تُكمن أهمية التعلم الإلكتروني في احتياج الطلاب إلى الانشغال بما يقومون به لتحسين نتائج التعلم. يُمكن التعليم الإلكتروني الطلاب من أن يصبحوا مفكرين ومتعلمين ومجازفين في بيئة محمية، فلا يضطرون إلى الاعتماد على المعلمين، حيث يمكنهم أن يكونوا مستقلين. يمكن أن يحدث التعلم في أي مكان وفي أي وقت وبأي طريقة، يشجع الطلاب على السعي لاكتساب المزيد من المدرسة - الإلكترونية -.

عندما تنطلق الدورة، يمكن تشغيلها مرات عديدة، وفي مختلف المواقع ولأكبر عدد من المتعلمين، وبالتالي فإنها تقلل من التكلفة العامة والوقت.

بما أن الثورة الرقمية أدت إلى تغيرات ملحوظة في كيفية الوصول إلى المحتوى واستهلاكه ومناقشته ومشاركتها، فإن التعلم الإلكتروني هو الأنسب للجميع خاصة في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع أو في المساء. إلى جانب ذلك، يمكن الوصول إلى محتوى الدروس في عدد غير محدود من الأوقات: في وقت المراجعة وعند التحضير لامتحان.



تتمثل الفائدة الرئيسية للتعليم عبر الإنترنت في تحقيق **الانسجام** مع المتعلمين المعاصرين من خلال الوصول إلى المحتوى المحدث متى أرادوا ذلك. يوفر التعلم الإلكتروني وصولاً سريعاً للدروس، وبالتالي يقل وقت التعلم حيث لا يحتاج الطالب إلى السفر إلى **مكان التدريب**. يمكنك التعلم بكل أريحية من مكانك الخاص. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن التعلم الإلكتروني **فعال من حيث التكلفة مقارنةً** بأشكال التعلم التقليدية لأن التعلم من خلال هذا النمط يتم بسرعة وسهولة ويختصر الكثير من وقت التدريب فيما يتعلق بالمدرسين والسفر **ومواد الدورة التدريبية والإقامة**. في الآونة الأخيرة أصبح هذا النوع من التعلم شائعاً في سوريا، خاصة بعد تطبيقه في الجامعة الافتراضية السورية.

من ناحية أخرى، إذا كان الفرد يفتقر إلى **الانضباط** الذاتي، فلن يكون لديه الدافع للدراسة مما يؤدي إلى التأجيل. حينها يكون التعلم التقليدي في الصفوف الدراسية **مناسباً** حيث تتم متابعتك إذا كنت **مقصرًا** في دراستك. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، تحدث المشاكل الصحية عادةً عندما يكون الفرد دائماً على حاسوبه أو جهازه اللوحي؛ حيث يؤدي ذلك إلى **مشاكل الإرهاق وضعف الرؤية** وما شابه ذلك.

وبخلاصة القول، يوفر التعليم الإلكتروني للطلاب القدرة على التعلم بما يتناسب مع أنماط حياتهم، مما يسمح بشكل فعال **بتعزيز** الحياة المهنية **واكتساب مؤهلات** جديدة حتى لأكثر الأشخاص انشغالاً. حدثت بعض أهم **التطورات** في التعليم منذ **إطلاق** الإنترنت، فقد أصبح المتعلمون في الوقت الحاضر **على دراية جيدة** باستخدام الهواتف الذكية والمراسلة واستخدام الإنترنت، لذا أصبح **الاشتراك في دورة تعليمية عبر الإنترنت وإدارتها** شأن بسيط.

مفردات النص الأساسية

interactive	تفاعلية	that allows information to be passed continuously in both directions between the computer and user
simulation	محاكاة	the technique of representing the real world by a computer
acquire	اكتساب	to get or buy something
harmonisation	انسجام	the act of making different people, plans, situations, etc. suitable for each other
accommodation	إقامة	a place to stay when you are travelling
discipline	انضباط	the ability to control yourself or other people, even in difficult situations
promote	تعزيز	to encourage people to like, buy, use, do, or support something
launch	إطلاق	an event to celebrate something new



Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. E-learning can be applied by individuals or groups working.....

- A. online or offline
- B. on networked or separate computers
- C. only offline
- D. both A and B

2. E-learning is interactive and depends on.....

- A. graphics.
- B. videos and audio.
- C. traditional ways of learning.
- D. both A and B

3. One of the negative effects of E-learning is.....

- A. poor vision
- B. simulation
- C. interactivity
- D. harmonization

4. Without their teachers, students can become.....through E-learning.

- A. risk takers and thinkers
- B. less efficient
- C. less active
- D. both B and C

5. E-learning allows students to have direct interaction.

- A. True
- B. False

6. E-learning promotes computer skills and self-learning.

- A. True
- B. False

7. Traditional learning is more expensive than E-learning.

- A. True
- B. False

8. One disadvantage of E-learning is that it needs more time and can be applied in one place.

- A. True
- B. False

9. When running on online course, you have to be free of any responsibility.

- A. True
- B. False

10. The word "interactive" means:

- A. an event to celebrate something new
- B. a place to stay when you are travelling
- C. that allows information to be passed continuously between computer and user
- D. the ability to control yourself or other people, even in difficult situations

11. The word "simulation" means:

- A. the technique of representing the real world by a computer.
- B. a place to stay when you are travelling
- C. that allows information to be passed continuously between computer and user
- D. the ability to control yourself or other people, even in difficult situations



12. The word “harmonisation” means:

- A. the act of making different people, plans, situations, suitable for each other
- B. a place to stay when you are travelling
- C. that allows information to be passed continuously between computer and user
- D. the ability to control yourself or other people, even in difficult situations

13. The word "accommodation" means.

- A. the act of making different people, plans, etc. suitable for each other
- B. a place to stay when you are travelling
- C. that allows information to be passed continuously between computer and user
- D. the ability to control yourself or other people, even in difficult situations

14. The word “discipline” means:

- A. to get or buy something
- B. a place to stay when you are travelling
- C. that allows information to be passed continuously between computer and user
- D. the ability to control yourself or other people, even in difficult situations

15. The word “promote” means:

- A. to encourage people to like, buy, or do something
- B. a place to stay when you are travelling
- C. that allows information to be passed continuously between computer and user
- D. the ability to control yourself or other people, even in difficult situations

16. The word “launch” means:

- A. to get or buy something
- B. an event to celebrate something new
- C. that allows information to be passed continuously between computer and user
- D. the ability to control yourself or other people, even in difficult situations

Answers:

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 1 - D | 9 - B |
| 2 - D | 10 - C |
| 3 - A | 11 - A |
| 4 - A | 12 - A |
| 5 - A | 13 - B |
| 6 - A | 14 - D |
| 7 - A | 15 - A |
| 8 - B | 16 - B |



Vocabulary

Phrasal verbs

The phrasal verb	The literal meaning	The idiomatic meaning
To look up	To raise your eyes up	To look for an information in a dictionary
To get something out	To collect from a place	To produce or publish something
To pick something up	To take hold of something and hold it up	To go somewhere in your car and collect someone who is waiting for you
To put something on	To dress something	To gain weight (put on kilos)
To come back	To return	To reply somebody angrily or with force

Everyday English

Permissions

Asking for permission	Giving permission	Refusing permission
• May I/ Can I?	• sure.	• Sorry,
• Do you think I could.....?	• yes, of course.	• I'm afraid that's not possible.
• Is it ok if I?	• help yourself.	Note: - To refuse permission politely, we usually don't say "no". - We give reasons why we refuse giving permission, beginning with the word "sorry".
• Do/ would you mind if I.....?	• No problem.	
	• It's OK.	



Pronunciation

Sound Linking

القاعدة: نقوم بدمج الكلمتين لفظاً عندما تنتهي الأولى بحرف ساكن وتبدأ الثانية بحرف صوتي.

Examples

at **eight o'clock**.

as soon **as possible**.

an interesting film.

a car **accident at night**.



في الجدول عدة أمثلة فقط، باقي الأمثلة متواجدة في الكتاب، يمكنك أيضاً مراجعة شرح القاعدة من هنا:

**Choose the correct answer**

1. I the tree, but I couldn't see my cat.

- A. put on B. looked up C. come back D. pick up

2. There is some chocolate in the fridge. Can you it?

- A. look / up B. come / back C. get / out D. look / into

3. Why is the towel on the floor? Please it

- A. pick / up B. look / out C. look / up D. put/off

4. something warm. It's cold today.

- A. Put off B. Put on C. Put down D. Pick up

5. When are you coming to Syria?

- A. into B. onto C. back D. for

6. I the spelling in my dictionary.

- A. looked out B. looked up C. picked up D. took off

7. Will we the book by the end of the year?

- A. get/out B. get / on C. get / of D. get/ round

8. I will pick you at 5:00.

- A. on B. for C. up D. out

9. She looks like she's several kilos.

- A. put off B. put on C. taken off D. pick up

10. She at the speaker with some sharp questions.

- A. picked up B. put on C. came back D. come back

11. The plane to Russia has just

- A. taken off B. taken after C. taken for D. taken down

12. Take that dish the table. It's going to fall.

- A. on B. for C. after D. off

13. Can you my wallet? It's under your chair.

- A. pick up B. put on C. look up D. get off

14. My brother me home while he was returning from work.

- A. picked / up B. take / on C. take / off D. put / on

15. I the term "Digital literacy" in Oxford dictionary.

- A. picked up B. looked up C. took after D. put on

16. We the tree and there was a humming bird on the top branch.

- A. put on B. looked out C. looked up D. put off



17. You should your waterproof coat as it is raining.

- A. look into B. look up C. put on D. take after

18. Eating too much chocolate leads to a lot of weight.

- A. looking into B. putting on C. taking off D. looking up

19. Would you mind getting my car of the garage?

- A. out B. onto C. into D. on

20. The author his new novel last month.

- A. got / out B. got / down C. got / round D. put / on

21. The new edition of the book will be next month.

- A. put on B. come back C. picked up D. got out

22. My father deprived me from going out because I

- A. put him on B. came back at him
C. picked him up D. got him out

23. My car broke down yesterday, so my friend in his car to work.

- A. picked me up B. got me down
C. looked me after D. put me on

24. My mother asked me to tidy my room and my clothes from the floor.

- A. put / into B. come / down
C. got / round D. pick / up

25. The teacher asked us to the meaning of new words in the dictionary.

- A. take off B. look up C. get round D. put on

26. Dad, can I go out tonight? (Refuse permission)

- A. No problem. B. I'm afraid that's not possible.
C. Help yourself. D. Yes, of course.

27. You are in a railway carriage. It's crowded and hot. All the windows are closed. (Ask for permission)

- A. May I open the window? B. May I use your photocopier?
C. I'm sorry about that. D. Congratulations!

28. You have a dental appointment and you need the afternoon off. (Ask your boss for permission)

- A. Can I take the afternoon off? B. I'd go for black instead if I were you.
C. Are you serious? D. Oh, it's incredible.

29. You are invited to a party at 8 p.m. You know you can't arrive until 10 p.m. (What do you say?)

- A. You don't deserve it. B. Is it OK if I arrive late?
C. No, thank you. D. Are you serious?

30. There is only one copy of a reference book in the library. Your classmate has it at the moment. You need it urgently for a short time. (Ask for permission)

- A. I'm afraid that's not possible.
- B. Would you mind if I borrowed it for a minute?
- C. Are you serious?
- D. both A and B

31. Would you mind if I came in late to work tomorrow? (Refuse permission)

- A. I'm afraid that's not possible.
- B. Congratulations!
- C. Are you serious?
- D. It's incredible!

32. Would it be possible for me to have a few minutes to review before the quiz? (Accept permission)

- A. I'm afraid that's not possible.
- B. Please feel free
- C. Sorry I can't.
- D. You don't deserve it.

33. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking:

- We went to the hospital at eight o'clock.

- A. we went.
- B. at eight
- C. eight o'clock
- D. Both B & C

34. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- I have watched an interesting film at the cinema.

- A. have watched
- B. an interesting
- C. I have
- D. the cinema

35. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- Meet me as soon as possible.

- A. meet me
- B. as soon
- C. soon as
- D. as possible

36. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- He went into a car accident.

- A. he went
- B. a car
- C. car accident
- D. Both B & C

37. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- I am reading a book about history

- A. I am
- B. am reading
- C. reading a
- D. about history

38. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- The plane to London will take off at eleven o'clock.

- A. The plane
- B. to London
- C. will take
- D. eleven o'clock

39. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- First of all, I'm going to book a ticket

- A. First of
- B. I'm going
- C. going to
- D. a ticket

40. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- My father is an old man

- A. My father B. father is C. an old D. Both B & C

41. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- Ted is using a computer at the moment

- A. Ted is B. using a C. computer at D. All of them are correct

42. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- I'm interested in art and music

- A. I'm interested B. interested in C. art and D. All of them are correct

43. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- If I had enough money, I would travel around the world

- A. enough money B. would travel C. travel around D. the world

44. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- I read a story about a poor man who suddenly became rich.

- A. I read B. story about C. about a D. who suddenly

45. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- My mother is afraid of travelling by air, so we had to travel by train.

- A. My mother B. afraid of C. of travelling D. we had

46. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- Can I have a box of chocolate please?

- A. I have B. box of C. chocolate please D. All of them are correct

47. Look at the following phrase and choose the places that has a sound linking.

- Jane and Mary need a lot of experience to get a job.

- A. Jane and B. Mary need C. a lot D. a job

A. Check whether the sentence is correct or not (True for correct, False for incorrect)

1. There are some chocolate in the fridge. Can you get it out?

2. The plane to London will take of at eleven o'clock.

3. Not only did he speak English, he also speaks French.

4. Julia has to wake up early every day to run hers online course.

5. Rude people always come back to their parents.

Answers:

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-----------|
| 1 - B | 17 - C | 33 - D | A |
| 2 - C | 18 - B | 34 - B | 1 - False |
| 3 - A | 19 - A | 35 - C | 2 - False |
| 4 - B | 20 - A | 36 - C | 3 - False |
| 5 - C | 21 - D | 37 - C | 4 - False |
| 6 - B | 22 - B | 38 - D | 5 - False |
| 7 - A | 23 - A | 39 - A | |
| 8 - C | 24 - D | 40 - D | |
| 9 - B | 25 - B | 41 - D | |
| 10 - C | 26 - B | 42 - D | |
| 11 - A | 27 - A | 43 - C | |
| 12 - D | 28 - A | 44 - C | |
| 13 - A | 29 - B | 45 - B | |
| 14 - A | 30 - B | 46 - B | |
| 15 - B | 31 - A | 47 - A | |
| 16 - C | 32 - B | | |



Inversion



رابط شرح الدرس

Cases

ما الحالات التي نقلب بها بين الفعل المساعد والفاعل؟

1 – Direct question:

- **He is** going to visit his grandmother.
→ Where **is he** going?
- Yes, **I have** eaten 2 hours ago.
→ **Have you** eaten yet?

2 – With (So / Neither / nor):

- I didn't know the answer.
→ Neither **did I**.
- I knew the answer.
→ So **did I**.

وهذه الحالة تكون فقط في جمل الموافقة (أي لا علاقة لها بقاعدة الوحدة 10)

Note

نستخدم **So** عندما تكون الجملة الأساسية **مثبتة** ونستخدم **Neither** عندما تكون الجملة الأساسية **منفية**

2 – Question tag:

- We have to wear a uniform, **don't we**?
- I am very good at math, **aren't I**?

Note

Question tags

تذكر

- They **studied** hard, **didn't they**?
- She **studies** hard, **doesn't she**?
- We **have studied** hard, **haven't we**?
- He **had** his breakfast, **didn't he**?
- She is beautiful, **isn't she**?
- I'm not always late, **am I**?

النفي → الإثبات || الإثبات → نفي

3 – Here / There:

- **Waleed comes** at 9 AM.

1 **Here** + $\frac{come}{arrive}$ + Noun

- Here **comes Waleed** at 9 AM.
- Here **arrives Waleed** at 9 AM.

2 **There** + go + Noun

- There **goes Waleed** at 9 AM.

Note

هذه الصيغة تستخدم مع الحاضر

- Here arrived Waleed at 9 AM. ✗
- There went Waleed at 9 AM. ✗

Note

في هذه الحالة لا يوجد فعل مساعد بل يكون القلب بين الفعل الأساسي (Come مثلاً) والفاعل.

Note

إذا جاء الفاعل ضمير لا نقلب

- There goes he. ✗
- There he goes. ✓

4 – After the following adverbs:

بعد الظروف التالية في حال جاءت في بداية الجملة:

Rarely – Hardly – Seldom – Never

No sooner – No longer – Not only

Only + time (after – when – in ...)

- **Rarely do they** go shopping.
- **Never has he** arrived early.
- **No longer do I** go Homs, but **rarely do I** go to Damascus.

- Only after **he had** graduated, **did he** travel to London.

في المثال السابق لم نقم بقلب **he had** مع أننا قلبنا القسم الثاني من الجملة وذلك لأننا في قاعدة القلب نقوم فقط بقلب الجمل الأساسية أو الفعل الأساسي أو الـ **Main clause**

Note

الجملة الأساسية أو الـ **Main clause** هي الجملة التي تقوم فيها الجملة لوحدها، مثلاً في المثال السابق:

After he had graduated.

لم يكتمل المعنى مازال هناك معلومات ناقصة، أما بالنسبة للجملة الثانية:

He travelled to London.

فهي جملة كاملة الأركان لا ينقصها شيء ليتم المعنى

لفهم الموضوع أكثر تابع شرح الدرس على اليوتيوب

3 – A question with relative clause:

عندما يتداخل سؤال مع جملة وصلية (يمكنك اعتبارها نفس الحالة السابقة)

- I wondered why **he was** sad.

4 – Reported question:

- She asked me if **I had** been to Canada.

النكشات

1

في حالة قلب الجمل الشرطية لا يمكن اختصار النفي:

- Had we **not** spent all our money already. ✓

- Hadn't we spent all our money already. ✗

2

لا يشترط وجود الظروف أول كلمة لنقلب، بل يجب أن تكون في بداية الكلام:

- **No longer do I** go Homs, but **rarely do I** go to Damascus.

هنا الـ **Rarely** ليست أول كلمة لكنها جاءت في بداية الكلام لذلك نقلب بعدها، ونقصد في بداية الكلام ألا يكون قبلها فعل أو فاعل ويمكن بدء الجملة انطلاقاً منها دون أن يختل المعنى.

- **She rarely** watches TV on Sundays.

هنا الـ **Rarely** ليست أول كلمة وليست في بداية الكلام لذلك لم نقلب بعدها.

3

انتبه للمعنى والزمن إذا خيرت بين الظروف:

- ... have I been to London before.

A - Not only B - Hardly C - Never

- ... did he understand about the situation.

A - No sooner B - Hardly C - Not only

6 – Conditional inversion:

عند حذف الـ **if** من بداية الجملة الشرطية

- If I were you, I would leave early.

→ **Were I** you, I would leave early.

- If she had known the answer, she would have answered the teacher.

→ **Had she** known the answer, she would have answered the teacher.

والآن، ما الحالات التي لا نقلب فيها بها بين الفعل المساعد

والفاعل (أي حالات شاذة من الحالات السابقة)؟

1 – Merged questions:

عندما يتداخل سؤالين في نفس الجملة، نقلب الأول ولا نقلب الثاني

- **Have you** any idea where **my keys are**?

- Question 1: Have you any idea?

- Question 2: Where my keys are?

2 – A question with a sentence:

عندما يتداخل سؤال مع جملة عادية، لا نقلب

- I wonder what **his lifestyle like**.

- What **he is** talking about, I have no idea.

وتقدير الجملة السابقة هو:

- I have no idea what **he is** talking about.

**Choose the correct answer**

1. Seldom to the football match.

- A. they go B. did they go C. they did go D. did go they

2. Hardly.....when there was a disturbance in the audience.

- A. had the play started B. the play started C. start the play D. the play starts

3. Not only..... English, he speaks French.

- A. he speaks B. he spoke C. does he speak D. he has spoken

4., I would study more.

- A. Am I you B. Were I you C. had I been you D. I were you

5. have I been to London before.

- A. Ever B. Not only C. hardly D. Never

6. Never..... to such a fantastic restaurant.

- A. had Joe been B. Joe has been C. did Joe going D. have Joe been

7. Rarely to be associated with this project.

- A. I want B. I do want C. do I want D. I have wanted

8. No sooner..... dinner than the ceiling crashed into the dining table.

- A. have they been eating B. had they eaten
C. do they eat D. they would eat

9. Seldom my house so early.

- A. I leave B. leave I C. I do leave D. do I leave

10. did he understand about the situation.

- A. No sooner B. Hardly C. Seldom D. both B and C

11. Were I there, Ithem a hand.

- A. will give B. would have given C. would give D. will be giving

12. A: I didn't know there was a library here.

B: Neither

- A. I did B. did I C. didn't I D. I didn't

13. Here.....

- A. the professor comes B. comes the professor
C. the professor is coming D. the professor has come

14. Here

- A. they come B. they do come C. do they come D. come they



15. We have to wear formal clothes,?

- A. do we B. we don't C. don't we D. haven't we

16. Hardly ever to work on time.

- A. does he come B. he does come C. he comes D. does come he

17. Not only famous for helping people, but he was also the first man to establish the charity in his country.

- A. Jack were B. Jack was C. was Jack D. did jack.?

18. have you got any idea?

- A. Where are my glasses B. Where my glasses are
C. my glasses are where D. both A and C

19. I wonder what

- A. his lifestyle is like B. is his lifestyle like C. is like his lifestyle D. All of them

20. He asked me before.

- A. if I had been to Canada B. whether I had been to Canada
C. if had I been to Canada D. both A and B

21. Rarely anyone using carriages nowadays.

- A. you see B. will you see C. you will see D. you have been

22. Only after he had graduated, to London to study.

- A. he travelled B. he had travelled C. did he travel D. he has travelled

23. Have you got any idea where Sami?

- A. can I meet B. I can meet C. do I meet D. have I met

24. My mother asked me if my aunt.

- A. had I visited B. will I visit C. I will visit D. I had visited

25. There to hold a meeting.

- A. goes he B. he goes C. went he D. he go

26. Never such well-behaved children before.

- A. have I met B. I have met C. do I meet D. am I meeting

27. No sooner to dinner than there was a knock on the door.

- A. he sat down B. he did sit down C. had he sat down D. sat down he

28. Seldom newspapers nowadays.

- A. we read B. we do read C. have read D. do we read

29. Not only new products, but he also did experiments.

- A. he made B. makes he C. did he make D. he makes



30. on time.

- A. Here arrives the boss
C. Here the boss arrives

- B. The boss here arrive
D. both A and B

31. I wonder to solve the problem.

- A. what my sister do can
C. my sister what can do

- B. what my sister can do
D. what my sister does can

Answers:

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1 - B | 17 - C |
| 2 - A | 18 - B |
| 3 - C | 19 - A |
| 4 - B | 20 - D |
| 5 - D | 21 - B |
| 6 - A | 22 - C |
| 7 - C | 23 - B |
| 8 - B | 24 - D |
| 9 - D | 25 - B |
| 10 - D | 26 - A |
| 11 - C | 27 - C |
| 12 - B | 28 - D |
| 13 - B | 29 - C |
| 14 - A | 30 - A |
| 15 - C | 31 - B |
| 16 - A | |

✍ كلمتين بيني وبينك ...

” لا راحت عليك .. ولا ضاعت منك .. ولا اجيت متأخر ..

{وَفِي السَّمَاءِ رِزْقُكُمْ وَمَا تُوعَدُونَ}

تعبت كثير، بس ما شفت نتيجة ؟ .. بس انت مو مطالب بالنتيجة ..

{وَأَنْ لَّيْسَ لِلْإِنْسَانِ إِلَّا مَا سَعَىٰ (39) وَأَنْ سَعْيُهُ سَوْفَ يُرَىٰ}

بس أنا ما رضيت بهالنتيجة، ما عجبيني ..

{وَعَسَىٰ أَنْ تَكْرَهُوا شَيْئًا وَهُوَ خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ وَعَسَىٰ أَنْ تُحِبُّوا شَيْئًا وَهُوَ شَرٌّ لَّكُمْ}

فلا تحزن .. مهما درست وتعبت أكيد رح تحصل تعبك ولو بعد حين. “



Workbook

Reading

Body Language

Page 104

Communication between people can be **verbal** by using a language to speak to others, or non-verbal by using the body language such as **gestures** or **facial expressions**. People in different parts of the world use different gestures to communicate non-verbally and these gestures may have different meanings from one place to another. **Handshaking**, for instance, is considered common around the world. However, to shake hands with others while **greeting** is something **accepted** and **favourable** in Western culture and expresses confidence, while people in **the Far East**, in Japan for example, do not prefer shaking hands strongly. This **can be interpreted** as **aggressive**; they **bow** instead.

Talking about facial expressions, they are mostly considered to be **universal** and they are accepted and known **widely**. Expressing happiness, sadness, surprise, **fear**, **disgust** and anger are the same all over the world.

Eye contact is another non-verbal language. For example, looking away while a person is talking to you means that you are not interested. **Avoiding** eye contact is a **sign** of respect for bosses and **elders** in many parts of the world. Understanding even a few gestures from different cultures can make you a good communicator. So, next time when you travel, try to be **culturally sensitive**. Learn about the local gestures and let your body talk.

الكلمات الملونة هي كلمات مهمة، إذا كنت تعرفها فلا تُعَرِّه اهتماماً للتولين.

Translation

يمكن أن يكون **التواصل** بين الناس **لفظياً** باستخدام لغة ما للتحدث مع الآخرين، أو غير لفظي باستخدام لغة الجسد مثل **الإيماءات** أو **تعبيرات الوجه**. يستخدم الناس في أنحاء مختلفة من العالم إيماءات مختلفة للتواصل غير اللفظي وقد يكون لهذه الإيماءات معانٍ مختلفة من مكان إلى آخر. فعلى سبيل المثال، تعتبر **المصافحة بالأيدي** شائعة في جميع أنحاء العالم. ومع ذلك، فإن مصافحة الآخرين أثناء **التحية** أمر **مقبول ومحجب** في الثقافة الغربية ويعبر عن الثقة، بينما لا يفضل الناس في **الشرق الأقصى**، في اليابان على سبيل المثال، المصافحة بقوة. ويمكن تفسير ذلك على أنه أمر **عدواني**؛ فهم **ينحنون** بدلاً من ذلك.

وبالحديث عن تعابير الوجه، فإنها تعتبر في الغالب تعابير **عالمية** ومقبولة ومعروفة **على نطاق واسع**. التعبير عن السعادة والحزن والدهشة والخوف والاشمئزاز والغضب هو نفسه في جميع أنحاء العالم.

التواصل البصري هو لغة غير لفظية أخرى. على سبيل المثال، يعني النظر بعيداً أثناء حديث شخص ما معك أنك غير مهتم. ويُعد **تجنب** التواصل بالعينين **علامة** على احترام المدراء و**كبار السن** في أجزاء كثيرة من العالم. إن فهمك لبعض الإيماءات من ثقافات مختلفة قد يمكّنك من التواصل بشكل جيد. لذا، حاول في المرة القادمة عندما تسافر أن تكون **حساساً ثقافياً**. تعرّف على الإيماءات المحلية ودع جسدك يتحدث.



مفردات النص الأساسية

verbal	لفظي	expressed in spoken words
gestures	إيماءات	a motion of hand or body to express a thought or a feeling
aggressive	عدواني	behaving in an angry threatening way
widely	على نطاق واسع	To a large degree; a lot

Read the text and answer the following questions:

1. The Japanese don't like handshaking because they consider this as.....
A. aggressive
B. lovely
C. polite
D. beloved
2. To shake hands with others while greeting is something popular in.....
A. Western culture
B. Japan
C. Tokyo
D. both B and C
3. Facial expressions are considered to be universal and they are accepted.....
A. in a limited range
B. in a specific range
C. in a wide range
D. a little bit
4. Understanding a few gestures from different cultures can make one unable to communicate.
A. True
B. False
5. Looking at one's parents' eyes is a sign of disrespect.
A. True
B. False
6. The Japanese often bow instead of shaking hands.
A. True
B. False
7. The word "verbal" means:
A. a motion of hand or body to express a thought or a feeling
B. expressed in spoken words
C. behaving in an angry threatening way
D. to a large degree; a lot
8. The word "aggressive" means:
A. a motion of hand or body to express a thought or a feeling
B. expressed in spoken words
C. behaving in an angry threatening way
D. to a large degree; a lot



9. The word "gesture" means:

- A. a motion of hand or body to express a thought or a feeling
- B. expressed in spoken words
- C. behaving in an angry threatening way
- D. to a large degree; a lot

10. The word "widely" means:

- A. a motion of hand or body to express a thought or a feeling
- B. expressed in spoken words
- C. behaving in an angry threatening way
- D. to a large degree; a lot



Answers:

- 1 - A
- 2 - A
- 3 - C
- 4 - B
- 5 - A
- 6 - A
- 7 - B
- 8 - C
- 9 - A
- 10 - D

**Choose the correct answer**

1. I was surprised to know that my little brother has more many friends than I really do. In fact he has got a.....

- A. a wide face B. a round face C. circular face D. triangular face

2. Let me introduce you to Mr. Karam, my father's best friend. We many years ago.

- A. lost face B. broke bread with each other
C. had a round face D. gave each other a pumpkin

3. I don't have any difficulty going to school. A bus me up every day.

- A. books B. comes C. picks D. takes

4. Moscow is too cold especially in winter. You will need to a heavy coat there.

- A. put off B. put on C. pull down D. shore up

5. My neighbour is a great writer. His new book is about to be next month.

- A. got out B. got in C. got down D. got round

6. Your jacket is wet and get a dry one.

- A. Take it off B. Take of it C. Shore it up D. Get round to it

7. Suzan must be good French. She got a full mark in the exam.

- A. in B. at C. to D. for

8. Fadi has never learnt to swim because he's afraid water.

- A. with B. of C. off D. on

9. The of the sun's radiation can cause skin cancer.

- A. affect B. effective C. affection D. effect

10. At the end of the match all the players were out of

- A. breathe B. breathing C. breathed D. breath

11. Both Ali and Mary are today.

- A. absence B. absent C. more absence D. abstain

12. The government announced the island an invalid place to live on because of the volcanic

- A. action B. activity C. actively D. actor

13. My sister's children are remarkably polite. They always politely.

- A. behave B. behaviorism C. behavior D. misbehave

14. Who did you vote for in the last.....?

- A. elective B. election C. elect D. electively



15.mustn't waste work time chatting.

- A. Employment B. Employing C. Employees D. Employed

16. What are your classmates' ?

- A. nationalism B. nationalizes C. nationalist D. nationalities

17. You smoke here. Smoking is forbidden in this restaurant.

- A. shouldn't B. don't have to C. mustn't D. ought to

18. There is plenty of time. We be at the meeting until 9:00.

- A. mustn't B. don't have to C. must have D. had better not

19. We talk for too long. These calls are expensive.

- A. don't have to B. should C. must D. had better not

20. You see a doctor for that serious cut on your arms.

- A. don't have to B. should C. mustn't D. shouldn't

21. You about the party. Now it's not a surprise.

- A. must have told me B. didn't have to tell me
C. shouldn't have told me D. mustn't have told me

22. Each driver have health insurance. It's obligatory.

- A. should B. have to C. had better D. must

23. You harder for the exam last term. Your results are too bad.

- A. should study B. should have studied
C. must have studied D. mustn't study

24. These books are on the wrong shelf. They here.

- A. mustn't be B. shouldn't be C. doesn't have to be D. both A and C

25. Hind and Hasan enjoy swimming in the morning.

- A. Neither B. Both C. Not only D. Either

26. Neither Mona Waleed is in the class today.

- A. or B. and C. nor D. but also

27. Not only the panda but also the koala extinction.

- A. are facing B. face C. have faced D. has faced

28. Neither this website nor that one the topic I need.

- A. have B. has C. is having D. are having

29. wind power but also Solar power is renewable.

- A. Both B. Neither C. Either D. Not only

30. Neither Rayan nor Nadeem where Ali is.

- A. know B. knows C. have known D. is known



31. Both Sham and Hala to ask the teacher a question.

- A. want B. wants C. is wanting D. are wanting

32. She is either at the office at the airport.

- A. nor B. or C. and D. but also

33. The film was not only funny interesting.

- A. nor B. or C. but also D. and

34. Neither the English team nor the Scottish team well.

- A. played B. didn't play C. play D. have played

35. July bought both

- A. a jumper and a dress. B. a jumper or a dress.
C. a jumper nor a dress. D. a jumper but also a dress.

36. Khaled asked Sami

- A. how his exam had been. B. how had his exam been.
C. how his exam had been? D. how had been his exam.

37. "I ate all the cake yesterday."

The young boy admitted to his mother that

- A. he ate all the cake the day before. B. he had eaten all the cake yesterday.
C. he had eaten all the cake the day after. D. he had eaten all the cake the previous day.

38. "I am so proud of you."

Karen told Nancy that

- A. she was proud of you. B. she was proud of her.
C. she was proud of hers. D. she is proud of hers.

39. "Did someone ring you an hour ago?"

Janet asked Hala

- A. whether someone had rung her an hour before.
B. if someone rang her an hour before.
C. if someone had rung her an hour before.
D. both A and C

40. "Would you like to join me for lunch tomorrow?"

Judy asked Martin

- A. if he would like to joined her for lunch the day after.
B. if he will join her for lunch the following day.
C. if he wanted to join her for lunch the day after.
D. both A and B



41. "The teachers are working on the exam results."

Fuaad said to his friends

- A. the teachers work on the exam results.
- B. the teachers were working on the exam results.
- C. the teachers are working on the exam results.
- D. both A and B

42. "I arrived yesterday."

Ali said

- A. he had arrived the day before.
- B. he arrived the day before.
- C. he has arrived the day before.
- D. he had been arriving the previous day.

43. "How long are you going to stay?"

He asked me

- A. how long I was going to stay.
- B. how long was I going to stay.
- C. how long I was going to stay?
- D. how long was I going to stay?

44. " have you been to London before?"

She asked us.....

- A. if we had been to London before?
- B. if had we been to London before
- C. if had been we to London before
- D. if we had been to London before

45. do you see top- rate cameras which are also easy to use.

- A. Not only
- B. Rarely
- C. Sooner
- D. Both A and B

46. such a dramatic end to a football match.

- A. Never have I seen
- B. Never I have seen
- C. Never I see
- D. I see never

47., I have no idea.

- A. What is he talking about
- B. What talks he about
- C. What he is talking about
- D. both A and C

48. Only the two members of our school team to finish the race.

- A. did they managed
- B. did they manage
- C. managed
- D. they did manage



49. the alarm to ring, leave the building immediately.

- A. Should B. If C. Were D. Is

50. see elephants and tigers when we arrived in India.

- A. Only did we B. Did we only C. Only we did D. Only do we

51. my hotel room when my phone rang.

- A. Hardly had I unpacked in B. I hardly had unpacked
C. Hardly I had unpacked in D. Both A and C

52. illegal hunters.

- A. Seldom the reserve guards catch B. Seldom do the reserve guards catch
C. Seldom have been the reserve guards catch D. both A and C

53. such a wonderful waterfall before.

- A. Never I have seen B. I never have seen C. Never do I see D. Never have I seen

54. any tigers in the northern region.

- A. No longer there are B. there no longer are C. No longer are there D. all mentioned

55. Your friend's family is going on holiday next week. Your friend has invited you to join them. (Accept the offer)

- A. Thank you, that would be great. B. Congratulations!
C. No, thank you. D. That's terrible.

56. Your father tells you that you have passed the driving test. (Express your surprise)

- A. Oh, that's amazing. B. I'm sorry about that. C. Are you serious? D. both A and C

57. You are invited to attend a feast at your uncle's house, but you are too busy. (Apologize tactfully)

- A. It could have been a bit hotter.
B. Unfortunately, I can't attend because I'm busy.
C. No, thank you.
D. all mentioned

58. You want to leave work early because you are sick. (Ask for permission)

- A. Would you mind if I leave work early? B. I want to leave work early.
C. I will leave work early D. all mentioned.

59. You want to write down a telephone number.

- A. Can I borrow your pen? B. You have to give me your pen
C. You must give me your pen D. I want your pen.



60. You're feeling cold.

- A. May I close the window? B. Hey there, close the window
C. Could you close the window, please? D. both A and C

A. Check whether the sentence is correct or not (True for correct, False for incorrect)

1. I don't have any difficulty going to school. A bus picks mine up every day.
2. Hind enjoys swimming on the early morning every day.
3. They asked me why I arrived the day before?
4. She is either at the office or at her parents' house.
5. Never have I saw such a wonderful waterfall before.

Answers:

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|-----------|
| 1 - A | 18 - B | 35 - A | 52 - B | A |
| 2 - B | 19 - D | 36 - A | 53 - D | 1 - False |
| 3 - C | 20 - B | 37 - D | 54 - C | 2 - False |
| 4 - B | 21 - C | 38 - B | 55 - A | 3 - False |
| 5 - A | 22 - D | 39 - D | 56 - D | 4 - True |
| 6 - A | 23 - B | 40 - C | 57 - B | 5 - False |
| 7 - B | 24 - B | 41 - B | 58 - A | |
| 8 - B | 25 - B | 42 - A | 59 - A | |
| 9 - D | 26 - C | 43 - A | 60 - D | |
| 10 - D | 27 - D | 44 - D | | |
| 11 - B | 28 - B | 45 - B | | |
| 12 - B | 29 - D | 46 - A | | |
| 13 - A | 30 - B | 47 - C | | |
| 14 - B | 31 - A | 48 - C | | |
| 15 - C | 32 - B | 49 - C | | |
| 16 - D | 33 - C | 50 - A | | |
| 17 - C | 34 - A | 51 - A | | |

Common Irregular Verbs in English

Base Form V0	Past Simple V2	Past Participle V3
أفعال أساسية (ليس لها صيغة معينة)		
be	was / were	been
do	did	done
go	went	gone
have	had	had
deal	delt	dealt
أفعال لا تتغير بكل التصريفات		
read	read	read
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
hit	hit	hit
hurt	hurt	hurt
let	let	let
put	put	put
set	set	set
shut	shut	shut
burst	burst	burst
spread	spread	spread
أفعال لها صيغتين فقط (واحدة للحاضر وواحدة للماضي)		
dig	dug	dug
get	got	got / gotten
feed	fed	fed
find	found	found
bend	bent	bent
build	built	built
burn	burnt	burnt
lay	laid	laid
learn	learnt	learnt

make	made	made
pay	paid	paid
say	said	said
send	sent	sent
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt	spilt
smell	smelt	smelt
hang	hung	hung
lend	lent	lent
hold	held	held
lead	led	led
light	lit	lit
meet	met	met
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
sit	sat	sat
slide	slid	slid
speed	sped	sped
spit	spat	spat
stick	stuck	stuck
strike	struck	struck
swing	swung	swung
win	won	won
lose	lost	lost
wind	wound	wound
bleed	bled	bled
creep	crept	crept
dream	dreamt	dreamt
feel	felt	felt
flee	fled	fled
hear	heard	heard
keep	kept	kept

lean	leant	leant
leave	left	left
mean	meant	meant
sell	sold	sold
tell	told	told
understand	understood	understood
mean	meant	meant
stand	stood	stood
sweep	swept	swept

أفعال تبدل فيها الحروف الصوتية - عدا ال e - إلى حروف صوتية أخرى

become	became	become
begin	began	begun
come	came	come
drink	drank	drunk
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
swim	swam	swum

أفعال تصبح نهايتها -ought أو -aught-

bring	brought	brought
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
fight	fought	fought
teach	taught	taught
think	thought	thought

أفعال تصبح نهايتها -en أو -n-

bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
choose	chose	chosen

draw	drew	drawn
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
freeze	froze	frozen
give	gave	given
hide	hid	hidden
know	knew	known
lie	lay	lain
ride	rode	ridden
rise	rose	risen
see	saw	seen
shake	shook	shaken
speak	spoke	spoken
steal	stole	stolen
swear	swore	sworn
tear	tore	torn
throw	threw	thrown
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
write	wrote	written

المصادر – Sources

كما أسلفنا سابقاً، نحن لسنا أساتذة لذلك لم نقم بالاجتهاد بأي معلومة ضمن النوبة بل اجتبينا المحتوى من عدة مصادر أخرى منتشرة على الانترنت بشكل واسع وكل ما فعلناه أننا قمنا بتنسيقها بشكل مناسب مع توضيح المحتوى وتحسينه وصياغته بشكل مرتب لتسهيل الدراسة على الطالب وتوفير عليه عناء الاستقصاء بين مصادر الدراسة، لذلك قمنا بجمع كل ما وجدنا أنه مفيد ويناسب العملية التدريسية، اجتبيت المحتويات من العديد من المصادر وتم تدقيقها وتمحيصها على قدر استطاعتنا للتأكد بأن تكتب المعلومة بالشكل الأمثل

ملاحظة: كل الدفاتر والنوط والكتب التي تجدونها ضمن المصادر هي إما مجانية أو تم أخذ الإذن من أصحابها قبل استخدامها

Reading

ترجمت النصوص بشكل كامل من قبل أعضاء فريقنا يدوياً وتم اختيار الألفاظ المناسبة للسياق المناسب ليستطيع الطالب فهم النص فهماً عميقاً يفيد عملية التعلم، بالإضافة للاستفادة من نوبة اللغة الانكليزية لثانوية السعادة لاختيار الكلمات المهمة للحفظ وتزليلها للمساعدة على حفظ المفردات التي تهم الطالب للامتحان النهائي والمساعدة في اختيار أسئلة للنصوص

Grammar

- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Student's book
- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Teacher's book
- مقططات من دفتر القواعد للأستاذ القدير هيثم كامل
- مقططات من دفتر القواعد للأستاذ القدير عامر ربيع
- EF Education First <https://www.ef.edu>
- Cambridge dictionary <https://dictionary.cambridge.org>
- British Council <https://learnenglish.britishcouncil.org>
- Britannica dictionary <https://www.britannica.com/dictionary>

Vocabulary

- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Student's book
- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Teacher's book
- Cambridge dictionary <https://dictionary.cambridge.org>
- Britannica dictionary <https://www.britannica.com/dictionary>

Pronunciation

- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Student's book
- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Teacher's book

Everyday English

- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Student's book
- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Teacher's book

Listening

- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Student's book
- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Teacher's book

Speaking

- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Student's book
- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Teacher's book

Writing

- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Student's book
- Emar English Series: Scientific Section – Teacher's book